

Charles A. Ferguson with the assistance of
Moukhtar Ani and others

damascus arabic



1974/27

Reprinted by the Center for Applied Linguistics
of the Modern Language Association of America
Washington D.C. 1961

It is the policy of the Center for Applied Linguistics to make more widely available certain instructional and related materials in the language teaching field which have only limited accessibility. This policy calls for the republication of works which are out of print and of items which are normally limited in their distribution to members of the organization under whose sponsorship they were prepared, such as government agencies, special university programs, and private business concerns. The users of these reprints should bear in mind that in many instances they are incomplete or provisional in nature and that the Center has chosen to reproduce them either because, even in their present form, they are better than other available works, or because in some respect they may serve as supplemental to existing materials. Whenever appropriate, the authors' names are indicated. The kinds of prices set for the reprints vary considerably depending on the nature of the financing of the projects, but in every instance the price is determined in the light of the fact that the Modern Language Association is a non-profit professional association.

FD
1325

SPECIAL ACKNOWLEDGMENT: This work has been published with the permission of the Foreign Service Institute and under the provisions of a contract between the U.S. Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, and the Center for Applied Linguistics.

Published by the Center for Applied Linguistics
1755 Massachusetts Avenue, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20036

Price \$4.00

First printing June 1961
Second printing July 1965

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

This textbook was originally prepared for use in an intensive course in Arabic at the Foreign Service Institute of the Department of State during the years 1950-1952. The first twelve units, with a cumulative Arabic-English vocabulary, are in approximate final form, and constitute the major part of the book. The balance of the text consists of those units which, out of a planned total of thirty, exist in a form suitable for reproduction.

The book deals specifically with the spoken Arabic of Damascus, for which there is no other textbook in English. As a basic course in the spoken Arabic of the Syrian area, it contains more complete grammatical information and explanation than other texts, and will be a valuable supplement to them.

The pages have been reproduced directly from the mimeographed copy prepared for classroom use. Editorial attention has been limited to the correction of errors that might mislead or confuse the student; minor typographical errors in the English portion of the text have been allowed to stand. Different parts of the book were prepared at different times, and the user will note some discrepancies in the editorial treatment.

67294
2090

TABLE OF CONTENTS

UNITS

- 1. Do you speak Arabic? 001
- 2. Getting around 026
- 3. Meeting people 051
- 4. Hiring a maid 080
- 5. In a shop. 105
- 6. Review: Units 1-5 135
- 7. Keeping cool 149
- 8. Keeping clean 179
- 9. At the doctor's 201
- 10. The post office 223
- 11. A trip to Aleppo 248
- 12. Review: Units 1-11. 254
- Arabic-English vocabulary: Units 1-12 262
- 13. Dining out 285
- 14. Renting a house. 289
- 15. At the bank 293
- 17. Holiday 298
- 29. The Arab Renaissance 304
- Supplementary unit: Politics. 307
- Supplementary unit: In the classroom 313

PRONUNCIATION

- 1.1. The Arabic spelling in this book 006
- 1.2. Arabic stress 006
- 1.3. Arabic vowels 006
- 1.4. Arabic consonants. 008
- 2.1. Trills (r) 030

2.2.	The glottal stop (?)	030
2.3.	Double consonants	031
3.1.	Pharyngal spirants (h,ʃ)	056
3.2.	Three-consonant sequences and the 'helping vowel'. . .	057
4.1.	The velar spirants (x,ʒ)	082
4.2.	Mid front vowel (e,ee)	082
4.3.	Automatic word-stress	084
5.1.	Light and heavy consonants	110
5.2.	Mid back vowel (o,oo).	110
5.3.	The neutral vowel (ə).	111
7.1.	The vowel (a).	154
7.2.	The vowel (aa)	155
8.1.	The inserted vowel at the ends of words	183
8.2.	Question intonation	183
9.1.	Assimilation	205
10.1.	The post-velar stop (q).	227
10.2.	Velarization	227

ANALYSIS

1.1.	Formulas	010
1.2.	How to say 'is'	010
1.3.	Pronoun endings	011
1.4.	'And'	012
1.5.	'The'	012
1.6.	Numbers	012
2.1.	Masculine or feminine.	032
2.2.	'The'	032
2.3.	'This'	033
2.4.	Pronoun endings	034
2.5.	Verb forms: the prefix tense.	035
2.6.	The B- verb prefix	036
2.7.	Feminine T- nouns	039

3.1.	Prefix tense	058
3.2.	Plural <u>-u</u>	060
3.3.	Pronoun endings	063
3.4.	Alternants of the pronoun endings	063
3.5.	Independent use of simple prefix tense	064
3.6.	Prepositions	064
3.7.	Feminine T- nouns.	068
3.8.	Feminine of adjectives	069
3.9.	Numbers	071
4.1.	Pronoun endings	085
4.2.	Suffix alternants	086
4.3.	Prefix tense	086
4.4.	Verb stems ending in a vowel	088
4.5.	The suffix -l-	089
4.6.	Prefix meaning 'going to'.	092
4.7.	The word <u>šii</u> 'thing'	092
4.8.	Formulas	093
5.1.	Command forms	113
5.2.	Feminine T-nouns	115
5.3.	Collectives	117
5.4.	Roots	118
5.5.	Separate personal pronouns	119
5.6.	Plurals	120
5.7.	Numbers	121
5.8.	Relative clauses	123
7.1.	Comparatives	156
7.2.	Suffix tense	158
7.3.	Nisbes	163
8.1.	Verbs: primary and derivative	186
8.2.	Active participles	187
8.3.	CCV verbs	189
8.4.	Command forms	190
8.5.	M- nouns	191

9.1. Passive participles	207
9.2. <u>yaa-</u> and other verbal particles	208
9.3. The prefixes <u>bi-</u> and <u>fii-</u>	210
9.4. Connective <u>maa</u>	213
10.1. Occupation nouns	229
10.2. Ordinal numbers	232
10.3. Color adjectives	234
10.4. Agreement	236
10.5. Formulas and responses	239

DO YOU SPEAK ARABIC ?

Section A. Basic Sentences

the peace	ssaláam
on you	ʕaláykom
1. Greetings to you.	ssalaamu_ʕalaykom .
2. And greetings to you (<u>in reply</u>)	waʕalaykumu_ssalaam .
3. Hello.	máhaba .
4. Hello <u>or</u> welcome.	ʔahlan_wasahlan
how	kiif
your state	háalak
5. How are you?	kiif haalak ?
6. How are you? (<u>another way</u>)	šloonak ?
God willing	nšáalla
well	mabṣuut
7. I hope you're well?	nšaalla_mabṣuut ?
praise God	lhamdu_lellaa <u>or</u> lhamdella
good	mniin
8. Fine, thank you. ('Well, praise be to God.')	lhamdu_ellaa, mniin .
you	ʔente
9. How are <u>you</u> ?	šloonak_ʔente ?
you speak	bténki
Arabic	ʕarabi
10. Do you speak Arabic?	bténki_ʕarabi ?
11. A little.	šwayye .
did you understand	fhémt <u>or</u> fhémet
on me	ʕaliyyi
12. Did you understand me?	fhémt_ʕaliyyi ?
yes	náʕam
on you	ʕaléek

13. Yes, I understood you.
no
14. No, I didn't understand.
please
speak
slowly ('at your ease')
15. Please speak slowly.
do, make
favor
repeat
which
you said it
16. Please repeat what you said.
what
you say
this
17. How do you say this in Arabic?
direct me
the hotel
18. Direct me to the hotel.
I want
I go
19. I want to go to the hotel.
how much
20. (For) how much is this?
three
pounds
21. Three pounds.
a lot
- náŋam fhəmt_ŋaleek .
lá?
la? maa_fhəmt .
bətražžáak
ʔəhki
ŋala_máhlak
bətražžaak ʔəhki_ŋala_mahlak .
ŋméel
maŋruuf
ŋiid
yálli or hálli
ʔəlto
ŋmeel_maŋruuf ŋiid_yalli_ʔəlto .
šuu
bətʔuul
háada
šuu_bətʔuul_bəŋarabi haada ?
dəlni
lʔotéel
dəlni_ŋalʔoteel .
bəddi
ruuh
bəddi_ruuh_ŋalʔoteel or
bəddi_ruuh_ŋalʔoteel .
ʔaddéeš
bʔaddéeš_háada ?
tláate
leeráat or waraʔáat
tlət_leeraat .
ktíir

- it isn't
so
22. That's a lot, isn't it?
your need
two pounds
23. Two pounds will be enough.
24. All right.
25. What's this?
this (feminine)
cigarette
26. This is a cigarette.
these or those
27. What are these?
cigarettes
28. Those are cigarettes.
you want
29. Do you want a cigarette?
30. Thank you.
give me
matches
31. Give me matches.
where
there is or there are
restaurant
32. Where is there a restaurant?
movie theater
33. Where is there a movie theater?
the station
34. Where is the station?
- múu
héek
ktiir muu_heck ?
háažtak
leertéen or warʔtéen
maažtak_warʔteen.
táyyeb .
šuu_haada ?
háyye or háyy
siigáara
hayy_siigaara .
hadóol
šuu_hadool ?
sagáayer
hadool_sagaayer .
bəddak
bəddak_siigaara ?
mamnúun .
ŋaŋíini
kəbríit
ŋaŋíini_kəbriit .
féen or wéen
fii
mátŋam
feen_fii_mátŋam ?
siinama
feen_fii_siinama ?
ləmháttá
feen_ləmháttá ?

toilet	xáarež <u>or</u> bēet_lmāyy
35. Where's the toilet?	feen_lxaarež ?
36. Here.	hóon .
37. There.	hníik .
38. On your right.	ʔala_yamíinak .
39. On your left.	ʔala_šmáalak .
40. In front of you.	ʔeddáamak .
straight	déğri
41. Go straight ahead.	ruuh_déğri .
42. What do you want?	šuu_bəddak ?
I eat	ʔáakol
43. I want to eat.	bəddi_ʔaakol .
near you, at your place	ʔándak
fish	sámak
44. Do you have fish? ('Is there fish at your place?')	fii_ʔandak_samak ?
bring me	žəbli
rice	rəzz
45. Bring me rice.	žəbli rəzz .
meat	lámme
bread	xəbz <u>or</u> xəbəz
fruit	fawáaki
potatoes	bataata
46. I don't want potatoes.	maa_bəddi bataata .
I drink	ʔəšrab
coffee	ʔahwe
water	mayy <u>or</u> mayye
beer	bíira
47. I want to drink coffee.	bəddi_ʔəšrab ʔahwe .

two	tnéen
they make	byáʔmlu
48. How much are two and two? ('What do two and two make?')	tneen_wətnéen šuu_byaʔmlu ?
four	ʔərbʔa
49. Two and two are four.	tneen_wətnéen ʔarbʔa .
five	xámse
eight	tmáanye <u>or</u> tmáane
50. Three and five are eight.	tlaate_wamse tmaanye .
one	wáahed
six	sátte
seven	sábʔa
51. One and six are seven.	waahed_wsətte sabʔa .
the hour	ssáaʔa
52. What time is it?	ʔaddeš_ssaʔa ?
one (feminine)	wáande
53. It's one o'clock.	ssaʔa_waande .
nine	təʔʔa
ten	ʔáʔara
54. It's ten after nine. ('The hour is nine and ten.')	ssaʔa_təʔʔa_wʔaʔara .
55. Excuse me.	laa_tʔaaxəzni <u>or</u> laa_twaaxəzni .
56. Excuse me. (another way)	ʔáfwan .
57. Goodbye. (said by the person leaving)	xáatrak .
58. Goodbye. (in reply)	maf_ssaláame .
59. Goodbye.	ʔalla_ysalmak .

1. The Arabic spelling in this book.

When Arabs write they do not write down their Spoken Arabic but use quite a different form of Arabic, called Literary Arabic. This is written in a special alphabet usually referred to as the Arabic alphabet. Sometimes -- very rarely -- Arabs do write down their everyday Spoken Arabic; for example in certain humorous magazines or in collections of popular songs. This is also customarily written in the Arabic alphabet. For this reason, and because you may want to study Literary Arabic when you finish this course, the Arabic alphabet is explained in Part 5 of the Manual. But since the purpose of this course is to teach you to SPEAK AND UNDERSTAND Arabic, not to read and write it, the Arabic alphabet is not used throughout the Manual. Instead, the Arabic words and sentences are written down in the ordinary letters of our own alphabet plus a few additional characters used to represent sounds unfamiliar to English speakers.

It is important for you to bear in mind that this spelling is only an AID TO LISTENING. It will help you to follow the Arabic expressions as you hear them spoken, and to recall afterwards what they sound like, but it cannot take the place of the actual sounds. The real content of this course -- the part that you should concentrate on above everything else -- is the spoken Arabic that you hear from your Guide or on the phonograph records. Whenever you hear something from your Guide that seems different from what you find written in this book, follow your ear, not your eye.

The Arabic spelling in this book may seem queer to you at first, but you will quickly get used to it, and in a few days you will have no trouble in using it to follow the spoken sounds. Most of the letters are used with values similar to the ones they have in English spelling. The exceptions to this rule will be explained as you go along, and you will have a chance to practice the pronunciation of all the sounds in the language, with your Guide as a model. Until the value of a particular letter has been made clear to you, don't be disturbed if it seems to be used in a peculiar way, simply disregard anything in the spelling that bothers you, and concentrate on the sounds.

2. Arabic stress.

In Arabic as in English some syllables are pronounced more loudly, with greater stress, than others. Such syllables are called stressed syllables and are indicated by a mark over the vowel of the stressed syllable. For example -- 'forgét' 'lówely' ssaláam fárabi. Actually the position of stress is almost automatic in Arabic and you soon will be used to putting it in the right place.

3. Arabic vowels.

In English there are many vowels (think of the different vowels in pat, pet, pit, pot, put, putt, beat, boat, boot, etc.). but in Damascus Arabic there are only five basic vowels (written in our spelling a, e, i, o, u). For example, léera (pound), ?énte (you), délni (direct me), ?éltó (you said it), byásmu (they make). In Damascus Arabic there is also a vowel in between i and u (written e), as in rézz (rice).

These vowels (except e) are sometimes held longer, and in such cases are written double and will be called LONG VOWELS. For example -- háada (this), kíif (how), rúuH (go), tnéen (two), hoon (here).

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

a between 'e' of 'pet' and 'u' of 'but'	sámak	'fish'
	šlóonak	'how are you'
	?addééš	'how much'
i like the 'y' of 'many'	délni	'direct me'
	dəgri	'straight'
	?šbli	'bring me'
u like the 'u' of 'Hindu'	byásmu	'they make'

o like the 'ea' of 'great' but shorter	xáarež	'toilet'
	wáahed	'one'
	tláate	'three'
o like the 'oa' of 'boat' but shorter	?éltó	'you said it'
	?otéel	'hotel'
	?áakol	'I eat'
e between u and i, like 'i' of 'pit'	rézz	'rice'
	fhámt	'I understood'
	?eddáamak	'in front of you'

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

aa between the 'a' of 'had' and the 'a' of 'father'	háada	'this'
	ssaláam	'the peace'
	tmáanye	'eight'
ii like 'i' of 'machine'	kíif	'how'
	ktíir	'a lot'
	sínama	'movie theater'
uu like 'u' of 'flu'	rúuH	'go'
	šúu	'what'
	múu	'it's not'
ee like 'ey' of 'they' but without the y-glide on the end	héek	'so'
	tnéen	'two'
	léera	'pound'
oo like 'ow' of 'know' but without the w-glide	hóon	'here'

4. Arabic consonants.

In Arabic there are many consonant sounds. Some are very similar to English sounds, but a few are quite different from any English sounds, and will require a great deal of practice. All the consonants will be discussed in detail several at a time in the Pronunciation Sections of future Units. For the time being here is a check list of the letters used to represent the consonants of Arabic in our spelling. The following are fairly similar to English sounds --

<u>Arabic letter</u>	<u>Nearest English sound</u>		
b	'b' in 'bit'	béddak	'you want'
d	'd' in 'dip'	dəlhi	'direct me'
f	'f' in 'fit'	féen	'where'
g	'g' in 'get'	siigáara	'cigarette'
h	'h' in 'hit'	háada	'this'
k	'k' in 'kit'	kíif	'how'
l	'l' in 'lip'	léera	'pound'
m	'm' in 'met'	múu	'it isn't'
n	'n' in 'net'	náŕam	'yes'
s	's' in 'sip'	sétte	'six'
t	't' in 'tip'	tásŕa	'nine'
w	'w' in 'wit'	wáahed	'one'
y	'y' in 'yet'	yamíinak	'your right'
z	'z' in 'zip'	rézz	'rice'
š	'sh' in 'ship'	šúu	'what'
ž	's' in 'pleasure'	žábli	'bring me'

The following sounds are not very similar to English speech sounds, although you have probably at one time or another uttered every one of them, and you will soon learn to use them as speech sounds.

r	trilled -- like the sound children use to imitate airplanes
ʔ	like the little catch before each vowel in 'uh-oh'
h	like the sound of panting (this h must not be confused with h. For Arabs they are as different as 'p' and 'b' are to us).
ʕ	a kind of growling sound
x	a sound like clearing the throat
ǧ	a sound like gargling

All these will be explained thoroughly in coming units.

You may have noticed that there are also consonant letters with dots under them. In Arabic, consonants often come in pairs -- one 'light' and one 'heavy'. The heavy consonants are shown in our spelling by a dot under the letter, and light consonants are shown by ordinary, undotted letters.

The heavy (dotted-letter) sounds are lower in pitch than the corresponding light sounds, and usually have a characteristic 'hollow' sound made by raising the back of the tongue. They are described more fully in Unit 5. The following are the most common heavy consonants -- ٲ ڨ ڭ ڨ ڭ .

Finally, notice that double consonants are really double, that is, are held longer than single consonants. For example -- the double tt in sétte 'six' is pronounced like the English double 't' in 'sit-tight' not like the single 't' (spelled double) in 'sitting'.

Section C. Analysis

1.1. Formulas. In this unit you have learned a number of polite 'formulas' used in Arabic, for example -- *ssalāamu ʔalāykom, waʔalāykomu ssalāam, kīif hāalak, lhāmdella, xāatrak, maʔssalāame*. Similarly we have formulas in English used as greetings and polite expressions such as -- 'how do you do', 'you're welcome', etc. which don't have much meaning but are used more or less automatically in certain situations. Such formulas are very common in Arabic, more common than they are in English, and it is important for you to learn them. For example, in English we have only a few formulas of gratitude -- 'thank you', 'thank you very much', 'thanks pal', 'that's very good of you', etc. The use of these depends more on the social relationship of the speaker and hearer than on the nature of the action for which gratitude is being expressed. In Arabic, on the other hand, there are many formulas of this kind -- one used when the action has been performed by the hand, one if the action consists of offering part of one's possession, and so on.

Also, there is very often a regular, stereotyped formula of response to a given formula. For example, when one says *ssalāamu ʔalāykom*, the answer is almost always *waʔalāykomu ssalāam*. Or, when one says *mārhaba* the other usually says *mārhaba*. Or, *maʔssalāame* is the almost inevitable response to *xāatrak*.

New formulas will appear in every unit. Learn them -- learn when to use them, and use them whenever you get a chance. The abbreviation *fla* will be used to mark formulas in the Vocabularies.

1.2. How to say 'is'. Study the following sentences with their English equivalents --

<i>šūu_hāada ʔ</i>	What <u>is</u> this?
<i>hadool_sagāayer .</i>	These <u>are</u> cigarettes.
<i>kīif_hāalak ʔ</i>	How <u>is</u> your state?
<i>ktiir mūu_hēek ʔ</i>	That is a lot, isn't it?
<i>wēen_ləmhāṭṭa ʔ</i>	Where <u>is</u> the station?
<i>tnēen_wətnēen ʔarbʔa .</i>	2 plus 2 = 4

In Arabic there usually is no equivalent for English 'am', 'is', 'are'. If you want to say 'You are well', or 'The station is in front of you', you simply say 'You --- well' or 'The station --- in front of you'.

<i>ʔante mabṣūut .</i>	You are well.
<i>ləmhāṭṭa ʔaddāamak ,</i>	The station is in front of you.

1.3. Pronoun endings. Study carefully these words together with their English equivalents --

<i>hāalak</i>	<u>your</u> state
<i>šlōonak</i>	how are <u>you</u>
<i>kīifak</i>	how are <u>you</u>
<i>bāddak</i>	<u>your</u> wish
<i>yamīnak</i>	<u>your</u> right
<i>šmāalak</i>	<u>your</u> left
<i>ʔāndak</i>	with <u>you</u> , at <u>your</u> place
<i>ʔaddāamak</i>	in front of <u>you</u>
<i>hāažtak</i>	<u>your</u> need
<i>ʔalēek</i>	on <u>you</u>
<i>bāddi</i>	<u>my</u> wish
<i>dālni</i>	direct <u>me</u>
<i>ʔaṭīini</i>	give <u>me</u>

You can see from these words that -ak or -k at the end of a word often means 'your' or 'you' and that -i or -ni at the end of a word often means 'my' or 'me'. Here are seven more sentences showing these endings on other words --

<i>bēddi_rūuh ʔala_šmāali .</i>	I want to go to my left.
<i>šūu_hāada_yalli_ʔaddāamak ʔ</i>	What's this in front of you?
<i>māa_fii_ʔāndi baṭāaṭa .</i>	I don't have any potatoes.
<i>bēddi_dēllak ʔalʔotēel .</i>	I want to direct you to the hotel.
<i>bēddak_trūuh_ʔaddāami ʔ</i>	Do you want to go in front of me?
<i>ʔāhlan_wasāhlan_fiik .</i>	Welcome to <u>you</u> .
<i>māʔak_siigāara ʔ lāʔ,</i>	Do you have a cigarette with you?
<i>māa_mafi .</i>	No, I don't.

1.4. 'And.' Notice the forms for 'and' in the following expressions --

tnèen_wetnèen ?árbfa .	2 plus 2 = 4
wáahed_wsétte sábfá .	1 plus 6 = 7
tnèen_wetmáane. fášara .	2 plus 8 = 10
tnèen_wetnèen_wxámse tésfa .	2 plus 2 plus 5 = 9

Sometimes the Arabic equivalent of 'and' is w, sometimes wə. When the following word begins with two consonants it is wə, when it begins with one consonant it is w. Thus tneen, tmaanye, ktiiir begin with two consonants; on the other hand, xamse, sette, xəbz begin with a single consonant.

1.5. 'The.' Notice the Arabic for 'the' in the following expressions --

lḥámdu_ləlláa	The praise to God
l?otéel	the hotel
lxáarež	the toilet
ləmháṭṭa	the station
ssaláame	the peace, safety
ssáafa	the hour

Arabic has two ways of saying 'the' -- either putting l- at the beginning of a word or doubling the first consonant of a word. The use of these two ways depends on the consonant that begins the word. For example, if it is s you double it -- sáafa, ssáafa; but if it is m you use l- -- máyy, lḥáyy.

1.6. Numbers. In the Basic Sentences you learned that the Arabic word for 'three' is tlaate, but that if you want to say 'three pounds' you say tlát_leeràat. Arabic numbers from 'three' to 'ten' have one form when they are said by themselves and another when they are counting. Here is the complete list --

ALONE	WITH A NOUN
tláate	tlát_leeràat
?árbfa	?árbaḥ_leeràat
xámse	xáms_leeràat
sétte	sátt_leeràat
sábfá	sábf_leeràat

tmáanye	tmán_leeràat
tésfa	tésḥ_leeràat
fášara	fášr_leeràat

There are other ways in which the numbers you have learned differ in use from the corresponding English numbers. For example, the Arabic for 'one' usually follows its noun instead of preceding it like the other numbers. Also, it has two forms -- a masculine (wáahed) and a feminine (wáande), and you have to know when to use which form. You will learn more about this in later units. Here are two examples --

máṭṭam_wáahed	one restaurant
lèera_wáande	one pound

In special cases, however, the word for 'one' comes first, and then you always use waahed. For example --

fáṭṭini wáahed_?áhwe . Give me one coffee.

For saying 'two' of anything Arabic does not usually use tneen but instead adds an ending -een to the noun. For example --

lèera_(wáande)	one pound	siigàara_(wáande)	one cigarette
leertéen	two pounds	siigaartéen	two cigarettes
tlát_leeràat	three pounds	tlát_sagàayer	three cigarettes
?otéel_(wáahed)	one hotel	máṭṭam_(wáahed)	one restaurant
?oteeléen	two hotels	máṭṭaméen	two restaurants

Section D. Exercises

1. Questions and Answers. Here are some questions which you are able to answer in Arabic. Read each question aloud, be sure you understand it, and then answer it briefly in Arabic. Take turns asking one another the questions. Do not try to invent elaborate answers. Just use the phrases and sentences you have learned in the Basic Sentences. Go over the questions until you are able to answer each one promptly and relevantly in several ways.

1. btéḥki_ḥàrabi ?
2. wéen_ləmháṭṭa ?
3. kíif háalak ?
4. ?addéš_bəddak ?
5. šúu_bəddak ?

6. wéen_ssagáayer ?
7. ?addéesš_ssáaſa ?
8. wéen_bèet_lmáyy ?
9. ?addéesš_tnèen_wetnèen ?
10. šúu_hàada ?

2. Arithmetic. Read each question aloud, be sure you understand it, and then answer it in a complete Arabic sentence. For example --

?addéesš_tnèen_wetnèen ? Answer -- tnèen_wetnèen ?árbsa .

Take turns asking one another --

1. xámse_wetnèen šúu_byáſmlu ?
2. ?addéesš_sàtte_wetlâate ?
3. tlâate_wxámse šúu_byáſmlu ?
4. ?addéesš_tásſa_wwàahed ?
5. ?árbsaſ_leerâat wxáms_leerâat šúu_byáſmlu ?
6. ?addéesš_sábſa_wetlâate ?
7. ?árbsa_w?árbsa šúu_byáſmlu ?
8. ?addéesš_tlèt_leerâat_wleertèen ?
9. tnèen_wsátte šúu_byáſmlu ?
10. ?addéesš_tlâate_wetnèen_wwàahed ?

3. Yes or No. Read each question aloud, be sure you understand it, and then answer first affirmatively and then negatively, using complete, natural Arabic sentences. For example --

fii_ſándak_sámak ? náſam, fii . lá?, máa_fii .

bèddak_baſáaſa ? náſam, bèddi . lá?, máa_bèddi .

Take turns asking one another --

1. bèddak_láhme ?
2. fii_ſándak_ràzz ?
3. bèddak_siigáara ?
4. fhàmet ?

5. fii_mátſam_hoon ?
6. bèddak_?áhwe ?
7. bèddak_xébæz ?
8. fii_?otèel_mníih_hníik ?
9. fii_ſándak_bíira ?
10. btàhki_ſàrabi ?

4. Telling time. Say the following times in Arabic. You only know the numbers to ten so you are somewhat limited in telling time, but practice with one another on the times you can say.

1. 3:10
2. 9:00
3. 1:05
4. 3:06
5. 6:00
6. 7:03
7. 8:10
8. 5:05
9. 4:09
10. 3:08

Section E. Listening In

Go through the following conversations with your group. The Guide or the speaker on the phonograph records will read them to you, with a pause after each sentence to give you time to repeat it after him. Speak up loud and clear, and imitate the Guide's pronunciation as closely as you can.

The first time through, keep your book closed and see how much you can understand through the ear alone. The second time through, open your book and follow the printed version with your eye as you listen. Go through each conversation as often as you need to in order to understand it all.

The conversations in the Listening In contain no new words and no sentence types that you have not already learned. If you have memorized the Basic Sentences, you will have no trouble in understanding what you hear. The leader will discuss the meaning of the conversations with you, and the Guide, as usual, will tell you whether your pronunciation satisfies him.

Conversation 1. Jones, who has recently arrived in Damascus, tries to speak Arabic with Ahmad.

- Jones. ssalāamu_ʿalāykom .
 Ahmad (ʿahmad) waʿalāykomu_ssalāam .
 ʾahlan_wasāhlan_fiik .
 Šlōonak ?
 J. maḅṣūuṭ_lhāmdella, wʾante_kiifak ?
 Ah. lhāmdu_lollāa mniih . ʾafwan, šuu_btəhki_ʿarabi ?¹
 J. šwāyye mūu_ktiir .
 Ah. lá? . ʾante_btəhki_ʿarabi_mniih !
 J. mamnūunak, bətražžāak dālni_ʿalʾotēel .
 Ah. rūuḥ_māʾi dāğri .
 J. ʾāyyeb, mamnūun .
 Ah. háyy_lʾotēel ʾaddāamak .
 J. ʾmēel_maʾrūuf ʾiid_yalli_ʾəlto šwāyye_šwāyye .²
 Ah. šuu_māa_fhəmt_ʿaliyyi ?¹
 J. mūu_ktiir .
 Ah. háyy_lʾotēel ʾaddāamak .
 J. náʾam fhəmt . šuu_hāada_halli_ʿala_šmāali ?
 Ah. hāada māʾʿam_mniih .
 J. bəddi_ʾāakol_fii, rūuḥ_māʾi .
 Ah. lá? . mamnūunak . xāaṭrak .
 J. maʿ_ssalāame .

1 - Unaccented šuu at the beginning of a sentence is often equivalent to 'oh' or 'well'

2 - šwāyye_šwāyye ('little-little', also said šwāyye_šwāyye) means 'slowly', 'taking it easy'.

Conversation 2. Jones goes into a restaurant.

- Waiter. ʾahlan_wasāhlan .
 J. mārnaba . šuu_fii ʾandak ?
 Wa. fii_lānm_wrəzz wbaṭāaṭa .
 J. šuu_māa_fii_ʾandak_sāmak ?¹
 Wa. kiif_māa_fii !!
 J. ʾāyyeb žəbli_sāmak .
 Wa. bəddak_xəbəz ?
 J. náʾam bəddi .
 Wa. šuu_bəddak_fawāaki ?
 J. māa_bəddi_fawāaki . bəddi_rūuḥ . ʾaddēš_bəddak ?
 Wa. tlət_leerāat .
 J. hāada_ktiir, mūu_héek ?! mniih háyy_leertēen .
 Wa. ʾāyyeb leertēen .
 J. ʾaddēš_ssāafa ?
 Wa. ssāafa_wāande_wʾāšara .
 J. xāaṭrak .
 Wa. maʿ_ssalāame .

Conversation 3. In the coffee shop.

- Waiter. ʾahlan_wmārnaba .
 J. mārnabtēen, ʾaṭiini_wāahed_ʾahwe .
 Wa. háyy_lʾahwe .
 J. žəbli_bīira .
 Wa. ʾāyyeb .
 J. ʾmēel_maʾrūuf žəbli_sagāayer .
 Wa. láa_twaaxəzni . māa_fhəmt_ʿalēek mniih .
 J. ʾante_lāa_tʾaaxəzni, ʾāna_māa_bəhki_ʿarabi_ktiir .
 Wa. bəddi_sagāayer .
 Wa. háyy_sətt_siigaarāat .

- J. řáfwan . mářak_kəbríit ?
 Wa. nářam .
 J. řii_bēet_māyy_hōon ?
 Wa. lřáareř řala_yamřinak .
 J. bēddi_rūu_řassřinama . řēen_řii_wāande ?
 Wa. hñiik ?əddāam_l?āhwe wřala_řmāal_ləmhāřta .
 J. mamnúun . xāařrak .

Conversation 4. At the ticket window.

- Jones b?addēēř_řřinama_hōon ?
 Cashier řii_blēera wəbleertēen wətlēt_leerāat .
 J. řmēel_mařrūuf řřid_yalli_?ēlto řala_māhlak .
 Ca. řii_blēera wəbleertēen wətlāate .
 J. řhāmt řhāmt, řāyyeb, háyy_leertēen .

Conversation 5. Walking on the streets of Damascus.

- Jones řūu_hāada_halli_hñiik ?
 Ahmad hñiik_ləmhāřta whōon_l?otēel .
 J. nářam ? máa_řhēmt .
 Ah. hñiik_ləmhāřta whōon_l?otēel .
 J. bēddi_?āřrab_sii_řāarā, mářak_wāande ?
 Ah. nářam máři .
 J. řařřini_kəbríit .
 Ah. láa_twaaxēzni máa_řii_māři .
 J. ?addēēř_řřāafa ?
 Ah. řřāafa_xāmse_wxāmse .
 J. řāyyeb . bēddi_rūu_řal_?otēel, xāařrak .
 Ah. ?ālla_māřak, mář_řřalāame .

Section F. Free Conversation

This section is the pay-off. It is the goal toward which you have been working all through the rest of the Unit -- a chance to use the material in a real situation. If you have done all the work in the Unit up to this point, you should have no difficulty in rattling off the sentences you have learned.

First act out the Listening In, with different members of the group taking the parts of Jones, Ahmad, the waiter, etc. Run through each conversation several times, with different actors, until everybody in the group has played all three parts.

Now go on to conversations of your own, modeled on the Listening In but changed as much as you like. The Leader will assign parts, and ask various members of the group to carry on the conversations in pairs or threes. Put some spirit and imagination into your performance. Try to make each conversation as lively and lifelike as possible, and to rattle off the Arabic as naturally as you can.

The following conversation outlines are only suggestions. If you have better ideas, by all means follow them. But remember that it is more valuable for you to speak fluently over a narrow range of topics than to hem and haw trying to say things you haven't learned yet. Never mind if your conversations in the first few Units sound a little monotonous. The only way to arrive at the stage where you can talk about more interesting matters is to practice the simple things first.

Conversation 1. Asking for information.

A sees B on the street, they exchange greetings.
 A asks the way to a restaurant, a hotel, or a movie theater.
 B says it is to the right or left or straight ahead.
 A doesn't understand and asks B to repeat.
 B repeats the information, speaking more slowly.
 A says he understood, and thanks B.
 They say goodbye.

Conversation 2. At the restaurant.

C enters a restaurant and tells the waiter that he wants to eat.
 The waiter asks him what he wants.
 C asks for meat.
 The waiter says there isn't any, but he's got some fish.
 C asks for fish.
 C also wants some potatoes or rice.
 The waiter asks if he wants beer.
 C says no, he wants coffee.
 After his meal, C asks for cigarettes.
 C asks how much he owes.
 The waiter tells him.

Conversation 3. On the street.

E has just come to town. He goes up to F and greets him.
 E asks where there is a hotel.
 F gives him directions.
 E asks him to speak slowly.
 F does so, giving the same information in other words (if possible).
 E asks if this (building) isn't a hotel.
 F says no, this is a movie theater.
 E says he wants to eat.
 F says there's a restaurant over there.
 E says he didn't understand.
 F repeats.
 E thanks him.
 They say goodbye.

Section G. Vocabulary

This is a complete alphabetical list of all words and expressions used in this unit. It is for reference only, but you should know all of these before going on to the next unit.

ʔáakol	I eat	féen	where
ʔaddééš	how much	fíi	there is, there are
ʔáhlan_wasáhlan	hello, welcome	fhémt or fhémet	I understand, you understand
ʔáhwe	coffee, coffee house	háada	this (masc.)
ʔálla	God	hadóol	these
ʔárbŕa	four	hálli	which, who, that (=yálli)
ʔáŕki	speak	háyy	this (fem.), here is
ʔénte	you	háyy hék	here is, here are so
ʔaddám	in front (of)	hóon	here
ʔáhto	you said it	hníik	there
ʔéšrab	I drink	háažtak	your need, enough for you
ʔotéel	hotel	háalak	your state
b-	for (price), in, with	hámd	praise, thanks
betražžáak	I beg you, please	lhámdu_lálláa or lhámdélla (fla)	Praise be to God
béet_lmáyy	toilet	kəbríit	matches
bedd-	want	kíif	how
báddi	I want	ktíir	much, a lot
báddak	you want	l-	the (see Note 1.5)
batáata	potatoes	láʔ	no
bíira	beer	laa_tʔaaxəzni or laa_twaaxəzni	excuse me
btəŕki	you speak	láhme	meat
dáll	direct (verb)		
dəgri	straight		
fawáaki	fruit		

léera	pound	siigáara	cigarette
leertéen	two pounds	siigaartéen	two cigarettes
leeráat	pounds	sagáayer or siigaaráat	cigarettes
máa	not	síinama	movies (movie theater)
máyy	water	sétte	six (sátt ...)
mabsúut	glad, fine	sáafa	hour
máhəl	ease	ʔaddées_sáafa ?	What time is it?
ʔala_máhlak	slowly	saláam	peace
mamnúun	thankful, thank you	ssaláamu_ʔaláykom	'peace be on you'
márhaba	hello	waʔaláykumu_ssaláam	'and on you be peace' (see Note 1.1)
máʔam	restaurant	saláame	peace, safety
máʔ	with	máʔ_ssaláame	goodbye
maʔrúuf	favor	šlón	how
ʔméel_maʔrúuf	please	šmáal	left
mháʔta	station	šúu	what
mníih	good, well	šwáyye	a little
múu	it isn't	tésfa	nine (tésʔ ...)
náʔam	yes, well?, beg your pardon? (=what did you say?, what do you want?)	tláate	three (tlát ...)
nšáalla	God willing	tmáanye or tmáne	eight (tmén ...)
rúuh	go	tnéen	two
rázz	rice	ʔáyyeb	good, all right
sábfa	seven (sábʔ ...)	w-, wə-	and
sámak	fish	wáaned	one
		wáande	one (fém.)

wéen	where
xáarež	toilet
xaatrak	goodbye
xámse	five (xáms ...)
xábz or xébəz	bread
yállli	which
yamíin	right
žábli	bring me
ʔála_ or ʔa-	to, at, on
ʔarabi	Arabic
ʔášara	ten (ʔášr ...)
ʔiid	repeat
ʔánd	near, at the place of
ʔándak	at your place, you have
ʔméel	do, make
ʔáfwan	excuse me
ʔatíini	give me

1. kiif maalak ? How are you?
2. mabsuut, lhamdella . Fine, thank you.
3. ?ente btənki farabi mniin . You speak Arabic well.
4. ?ahlan wasahlan fiik . Welcome to you.
5. fhəmt faleek šwayye . I understood you a little.
6. haada maṣam mniin . This is a good restaurant.
7. bəddi ?aakol fii . I want to eat in it.
8. šuu haada halli hniik ? What's that over there? ("What that which there?")
9. ween fii maṣam fii samak ? Where is a restaurant that has fish?
10. lmaṣam halli fala šmaalak mniin . The restaurant that's on your left is good.
11. fiid yalli ?əlto šwayye šwayye . Repeat what you said slowly.
12. b?addeš lxəbz ? How much is bread?
13. faṭiini war?teen . Give me two pounds.
14. ssamak tayyeb . The fish is good.
15. fii fandak fawaaki ? Do you have fruit? ("Is-there at your- place fruit?")
16. naṣam fandi . Yes, I do. ("Yes, at-my-place.")
17. ?addeš bəddak ? How much do you want?
18. bəddi leerteen . I want two pounds.
19. haažtak leera waande . One pound is enough for you. ("Your need is one pound.")
20. žəbli waaned biira . Bring me one beer.
21. beet lmayy hniik fala yamiinak . The toilet is over there on your right.
22. bəddi ?əšrab siigaara . I want to smoke ("drink") a cigarette.
23. bəddi ?aakol ssaafa xamse . I want to eat at five o'clock.
24. hadool siigaaraatak . These are your cigarettes.
25. ruuḥ fala mahlak . Go slowly!
26. l?oteel muu mniin ktiir . The hotel isn't very good.
7. feen ssiinama ? Where's the movie theater?
28. lāa twaaxəzni . māa fhəmt mniin . Excuse me, I didn't quite understand. ("I didn't understand well.")

29. ssamak fandak mniin ? Is the fish you have good?
30. b?addeš llaḥme ? How much is meat?
31. bəddi ruuḥ ssaafa fašra . I want to go at ten o'clock.
32. bəddak maṣayy ?? Do you want water?
33. naṣam šwayye . Yes, a little.
34. faṭwan šuu hayy ? Excuse me, what's this?
35. hayy ləmhəṭṭa . This is the station.
36. fmeel maṣruuf žəbli baṭaata . Please bring me potatoes.
37. fandi sətt siigaaraat . I have six cigarettes
38. ssaāfa tmaane wxamse . It's five after eight.
39. bəddi ruuḥ, xaṭrak . I want to go, goodbye.
40. ?alla maṣak . maṣ ssalaame . Goodbye. ("God with you, with peace.")

Section A. Basic Sentences

he came	ʔáža or ʔáža
the bus	lbáaṣ or lbáṣṣ
1. Here comes the bus .	ʔeža_lbaaṣ .
let's	xallíina
we go up	náṭlaṯ
in it	fii
2. Let's get on it .	xalliina_nəṭlaṯ_fii .
it seems	byəḻhar
the tram	ttramwáay
delayed, late	mətʔáxxer
3. It looks as though the tram's late .	byəḻhar ttramwáay_mətʔaxxer .
crowded	maṯžúuʔ
4. No, the bus is crowded .	laʔ lbaaṣ_maṯžuuʔ .
we wait	nəstáanna
second	táani
5. Let's wait for the next tram .	xalliina_nəstanna ttramwáay_ttaani .
6. Give us two tickets .	ṯaṯiina_warʔteen .
class	dáraže
first (feminine)	ʔúula
or	yəmma
7. First class or second class ?	daraže_ʔuula yəmma_daraže_taanye ?
their value	háʔhon or háʔʔon
8. How much are they ?	ʔaddeeš_ḥaʔhon ?
piastres	ʔrúuš
9. Ten piastres .	ṯašr_ʔruuš .
we want	bédna
we go down	nənzəl

Marji Square	lmárže
10. We want to get off at Marji Square.	bədna_nənzəl bəlmarže .
when	lámma
we arrive	mnəṣal or mnúuṣal
information, news	xábar
11. Let's know when we get there .	lamma_mnəṣal ṯaṯiina_xabar .
the line	lxáṭṭ
it leads	biwáddi
12. Where does this line go ?	halxaṭṭ_laween_biwaddi ?
13. To the Assaa .	ṯalʔaṣṣáaṯ .
I go down	ʔənzəl
14. Stop, I want to get off here .	ṯala_mahlak bəddi_ʔənzəl hoon .
also	kamáan
15. So do I .	uʔana_kamaan .
16. Taxi .	táksi .
17. (The taxi driver says:)	ʔámr .
we go	nrúuḥ
18. We want to go to Marji .	bədna_nruuḥ_ṯalmarže .
19. Please get in .	ṯfáḻḻalu .
20. How much do you want ?	ʔaddeeš_btaaxod_manna ?
21. Four pounds .	ʔarbaṯ_leeraat .
22. What? That's a little steep .	šuu_haada ? šii_ktiir .
(not) at all	ʔábadan
bey	béek
23. That's not at all too much, sir .	ʔabadan muu_ktiir yaa_beek .
half	nəṣṣ
enough	kfáaye

24. Two and a half pounds is enough . war?teen_ unəşş kfaaye .
 sake šáan
25. All right, for you (" for your sake") tayyeb. mən šaankon bətlət_wara?aat .
 three pounds .
- you (pl) want bədkon
 I stop for you wa??əflkon
26. Where do you want me to stop ween bədkon_wa??əflkon ?
 (for you) ?
- seeing šaayef
 the building lbináaye
 the red (feminine) lhámra
27. Do you see the red building in šaayef_lbinaaye_lhamra yalli_?əddamak ?
 front of you ?
- in back of her waráaha
 a turn láfte
28. A little beyond it there's a turn waraaha_šwayye, fii_lafte šala_yamiinak .
 to the right .
- turn lféet
 in it fiiha
29. Turn in there . lfeet_fiiha .
- stop (for us) wa??əflna
 first ?áwwal
 door, gate báab
30. And stop at the first gate on uwa??əflna šala_?əwwal_baab šala_šmaalak.
 your left .
- please bálla
 with you mášak
 change kmáale
31. Do you have change for five pounds? balla mašak_kmaalet xams_leeraat ?
 stop, wait wá??ef

- I see for you šáflak
32. Wait a minute, I'll see . wa??ef_lašəflak .
33. Yes, I do . máfi .
34. Here. (Handing a note) tfađđal .
- we néhna
 we stay néb?a
 about hawáali
 two hours saastéen
35. We're going to stay here about nəhna rananəb?a_hoon hawaali_saašteén .
 two hours .
- you like bəthəbb
 you come back təržaf
 you take us taaxédna
36. Would you like to come back and bəthəbb_təržaf_taaxédna ssaafa_sette ?
 pick us up at six o'clock?
37. Yes sir (" on my eye "). šala_šéeni .
- if ?íza
 you got delayed t?axxárt
 from, than šán
 we take mnáaxod
 other than you ġéerak
38. And if you're later than six o'clock u?iza_t?axxart šan_ssaafa_sette,
 we'll take someone else . mnaaxod_ġéerak .
39. I won't be. (No, God willing). la? nšaaŋla .
- to you ?əlkon
 may I be kúun
 before, ahead of time šábl
 minutes da?áaye?
40. I promise you I'll be here ten ?əlkon_šaliyyi kuun_hoon
 minutes ahead of time . ?abl_bšašr_da?áaye? .

Section B. Pronunciation

UNIT 2

1. Trills (r)

The Arabic "r" is not made the same way as our English "r". In English we curl back our tongue and hold it there for the "r". In Arabic you make a trill with the tip of your tongue. You have undoubtedly heard this trilling sound, and have probably made it yourself. It is the sound many telephone operators use in saying "thur-ree" and that children often use to imitate the sound of motors. Sometimes the tip of the tongue makes one flap, often it makes two or three flaps in rapid succession. This sound is not at all difficult to learn, but it requires constant attention to remember always to make this "r" in Arabic instead of using the "r" you use in your English.

Here are some examples of Arabic "r":

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

ktíir	'much'	nrúuh	'we go'
sagáayer	'cigarettes'	léera	'pound'
dáraže	'step', 'class'	bíira	'beer'
rézz	'rice'	?rúuš	'piastres'

2. The glottal stop (?)

This sound occurs in both English and Arabic--in English it is a rare sound that occurs only in a few words or in saying certain sequences of words very carefully; in Arabic it is a full-fledged consonant that occurs in very many words. We have it in English for example in the expression of mild dismay "uh-oh!"--once before the "uh" and again before the "oh", so that if we write the sound with a ? we should write "?uh-?oh!" Or, as equivalent to "No, No! You mustn't do that", we sometimes say to a child "?ah-?ah" (ah = "a" in "cat"). We often use it in speaking carefully where one word ends with a vowel and the next one begins with a vowel, e.g. "Florida ?oranges", "India ?office" or in a phrase like "an ?ice man" as contrasted with "a nice man". In Arabic ? occurs at the beginning, middle or end of words, single and double.

Here are examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

?áakol	'I eat'	?rúuš	'piastres'
lá?	'no'	war?téen	'two tickets'
há?hon	'their value'	bet?úul	'you say'
met?áxxer	'delayed, late'	da?áaye?	'minutes'
?éža	'he came'	?otéel	'hotel'

The sound is called "glottal stop"--"stop" because the air is completely stopped (as with the stops t, d, k, g, b) and "glottal" because the closure takes place in the glottis.

3. Double Consonants

In English double consonants are not common. Often we write double consonants when we say single ones, e.g. "penny", "hammer", "bedding", etc. Here are some examples of real double consonants in English:

- penknife (double "n") cf. penny (single "n")
- ham-market (double "m") cf. hammer (single "m")
- mid-day (double "d") cf. bedding (single "d")

Here are examples of Arabic double consonants.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

Arabic words	Meaning	Consonant	Similar English Examples
1. béddek ?addéesš biwáddi	'you want' 'how much' 'leads, takes'	dd	bed-deck mid-day
2. néstánna ménnak šáanna	'we wait' 'from you' 'our sake'	nn	pen-knife thinness
3. lámma sétte ?áwwal ?aššáaš	'when' 'six' 'first' 'Qassaa'	mm tt ww ss	lamb-meat coat-tails how well Miss Sand
4. há??i há??ak wá??ef	'my right' 'your right' 'stop'		---
5. hálla? xallína yálli	'now' 'let us' 'which'		---

Section C. Analysis

Note 2.1 Masculine or feminine. You have learned two Arabic words for "this"; háada and háyy. Every noun in Arabic is either masculine or feminine, and the word "this" is háada when it refers to a masculine noun and háyy when it refers to a feminine noun. For example, máṭṣam 'restaurant' is masculine and "this" referring to máṭṣam is háada; siigáara 'cigarette' is feminine and "this" referring to siigáara is háyy. Most masculine nouns end in a consonant (e.g. máṭṣam, xábz, ?otéel, háal); most feminine nouns end in -a or -e (e.g. siigáara, mḥáṭṭa, láhme, kmáale, bíira).

The terms "masculine" and "feminine" are used because nouns denoting male beings are usually masculine and nouns denoting female beings are usually feminine. However, the fact that a noun is masculine has very little to do with the sex of the object it denotes. In English we may refer to a noun by using "he", "she", or "it"; in Arabic you must learn with each noun whether it is masculine or feminine so that you can use the right words in referring to it. For further details see Note 2.7.

Note 2.2 "The" As indicated in Note 1.5 the Arabic equivalent of "the" is either l- prefixed to a noun or the doubling of the first consonant of a noun. In the Basic Sentences of this Unit there are additional examples:

lbáas, lxáṭṭ, lwá?t, ttáani.

If a noun begins with one of the following consonants, that consonant is doubled for "the":

t d s z l n r š ž

ṭ ḍ ṣ ḏ ḷ

Here are further examples:

táani	'second'	ttáani	'the second'
ṭáyyeb	'good'	ṭṭáyyeb	'the good'
dáraže	'step'	ddáraže	'the step'
sámak	'fish'	ssámak	'the fish'
láhme	'meat'	lláhme	'the meat'
néṣṣ	'half'	nnéṣṣ	'the half'
rézz	'rice'	rrézz	'the rice'
šáayef	'seeing'	ššáayef	'the seeing'

If a noun begins with some other consonant (b f m w y k g x ġ ḥ ṣ h ?), l- is prefixed for 'the'. Here are further examples:

báab	'door'	lbáab	'the door'
fawáaki	'fruit'	lfawáaki	'the fruit'
máṭṣam	'restaurant'	lmáṭṣam	'the restaurant'
wára?a	'ticket'	lwára?a	'the ticket'
xábar	'piece of news'	lxábar	'the piece of news'
ġéer	'other'	lġéer	'the other'
há??	'right, value'	lhá??	'the right, the value'
ṣárabí	'Arabic'	lṣárabí	'the Arabic'
?áhwe	'coffee'	l?áhwe	'the coffee'

The word lmḥáṭṭa or lḥmḥáṭṭa of Unit 1 is mḥáṭṭa 'station' + l- 'the'. Whenever a noun begins with TWO consonants (of which the first is not one of the consonants that double) 'the' is l- or lə-. Here are two more examples:

?rúuš	'piastres'	l(ə)?rúuš	'the piastres'
kmáale	'(return) change'	l(ə)kmáale	'the (return) change'

But notice, as in a word like ttramwaay 'the train', that if the first of the two consonants is one that is doubled when alone, it is doubled here too. Examples:

tláate	'three'	ttláate	'the three'
šwáyye	'little'	ššwáyye	'the little'

Note 2.3 "This". Study the following sentences taken from the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2:

- 1.26 háyy_siigáara . This is a cigarette.
 1.25 šúu_háada ? What's this?
 2.15 halxáṭṭ_lawéen_biwáddi ? Where does this line go?

Notice that of these three equivalents for English 'this' the first two (háada, háyy) occur independently, and the third (hal-) is always prefixed to a noun. Thus:

háyy bináaye_hámra .	This is a red building.
halbináaye_hámra .	This building is red.
háada_rézz .	This is rice.
máa_bhább_harrèzz .	I don't like this rice.

Notice also that haada and hayy refer to masculine and feminine nouns respectively, but that hal- is used with either kind of noun (e.g. halxátt, hassigáara) The l- of hal- is the Arabic 'the' described in Note 2.2 and so is a doubling of the first consonant of the noun under the conditions described in Note 2.2.

Note 2.4 Pronoun endings. In Note 1.3 the endings -i, -ni, 'my, me' and -ak, -k 'your, you' were discussed. The following words taken from the Basic Sentences of this Unit show two more endings of this kind:

xallína	let <u>us</u>	bédkon	<u>your</u> (pl) wish
faṭfina	give <u>us</u>	waʔʔéflkon	I stop for <u>you</u> (pl)
bédna	<u>our</u> wish		
waʔʔéflna	stop for <u>us</u>		
taaxédna	you take <u>us</u>		

The ending -na means 'our, us'; the ending -kon means 'your, you' when referring to more than one person. Here are more examples of all these endings:

béddi	my wish - I want	háʔʔi	my right
béddak	your wish - you want	háʔʔak	your right
bédna	our wish - we want	háʔʔna	our right
bédkon	your (pl) wish - you (pl) want	háʔʔkon	your (pl) right
ʔala_šmáli	on my left	ʔala_yamíni	on my right
ʔala_šmáalak	on your left	ʔala_yamínak	on your right
ʔala_šmáalna	on our left	ʔala_yamínna	on our right
ʔala_šmáalkon	on your (pl) left	ʔala_yamínkon	on your (pl) right
ʔeddáami	in front of me	máʔi	with me
ʔeddáamak	in front of you	máʔak	with you
ʔeddáamma	in front of us	máʔna	with us
ʔeddáamkon	in front of you (pl)	máʔkon	with you (pl)
máʔi_háʔʔ	I'm right		
máʔak_háʔʔ	you're right		
máʔna_háʔʔ	we're right		
máʔkon_háʔʔ	you're (pl) right		

ʔáandi	at my place, in my possession
ʔándak	at your place, in your possession
ʔánna	at our place, in our possession
ʔándkon	at your(pl) place, in your(pl) possession

ʔatfíni	give me	nšúufak	we see you
ʔatfína	give us	nšúufkon	we see you(pl)
taaxédni	you'll take me	dállak	I direct you
taaxédna	you'll take us	dálkon	I direct you(pl)
waʔʔéfli	stop for me	waʔʔéflak	I stop for you
waʔʔéflna	stop for us	waʔʔéflkon	I stop for you(pl)
délni	direct me		
délna	direct us		

Note that with nouns (bèdd-, háʔʔ, šmaal, yamiin, ʔaddaam) and prepositions (ʔand, maʔ) the ending for 'my, me' is -i, but that with verbs (ʔati, dell, nšúuf, etc.) the ending is -ni. This is the only ending of this kind which has different forms for nouns and verbs; all the others, such as -ak, -na, -kon (and the others you will learn) are the same for both.

Note 2.5 Study the following verb forms which occurred in the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2:

nétlaʔ	we go up	térʔaʔ	you return	ʔénzal	I go down
néstanna	we wait	taaxédna	you take us	ʔéšrab	I drink
nénzel	we go down			ʔáakol	I eat
nrúuh	we go			wáʔʔéʔ	I stop
nšúuf	we see			rúuh	I go
nébʔa	we stay			kúun	may I be

In these forms prefixes correspond to English "I", "you", and "we". We will refer to forms of this kind as forms of the PREFIX TENSE. The prefix for "we" is nə- or n-, the prefix for "you" is tə- or t-, and the prefix for "I" is ʔə-, ʔ-, or nothing. The remainder of the word we will call the STEM. In general, the longer forms of the prefixes (nə-, tə-, ʔə-) are used when the verb begins with two or more consonants (-nzal, -tlaʔ, etc.); otherwise the shorter forms (n-, t-, ʔ- or nothing). Here are the forms of the prefix tense of the verbs of Units 1 and 2:

"I"	"you"	"we"	meaning
?áb?á	táb?á	náb?á	remain, stay
?áŋki	táŋki	néŋki	speak
?ánzel	tánzel	nénzel	go down, get off
?áržaf	táržaf	néržaf	return, go back
?əstánna	təstánna	nəstánna	wait
?əšrab	təšrab	nəšrab	drink
?ətlaŋ	tətlaŋ	nətlaŋ	go up, get on, go out
?áŋti	táŋti	náŋti	give
?úul	t?úul	n?úul	say, tell
dáll	ddáll *	ndáll	direct
həbb	thəbb	nhəbb	like, love
kúun	tkúun	nkúun	be
rúun	trúun	nrúun	go
šúuf	tšúuf	nšúuf	see
wá??ef	twá??ef	nwá??ef	stop, stand
wáddi	twáddi	nwáddi	lead, take, send
xállli	txállli	nxállli	let, have leave
žiiib	džiiib	nžiiib	bring
fiid	tfiid	nfiid	repeat
?áakol	táakol	náakol	eat
?áaxod	táaxod	náaxod	take
?əšal	təšal	nəšal	arrive, ready

* Note that t- plus -dáll is ddáll and t- plus -žiiib is džiiib which are easier to say than tdáll or tžiiib.

Note 2.6 the b- verb prefix. Study the following verb forms which have also occurred in the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2.

mnəšal	we arrive	bəthəbb	you like
mnáaxod	we take	btəŋki	you speak
		btáaxod	you take

Sometimes b-, bə-, m-, or mə- is prefixed to the forms of the prefix tense described in Note 2.5. These are all alternants of the same prefix, which will be called the B- PREFIX. The longer forms (bə-, mə-) occur before a stem beginning with two consonants and the shorter forms (b-, m-) otherwise. The form m(ə)- occurs only before the n(ə)- "we" prefix; everywhere else b(ə)- appears. Note that when b(ə)- is added to a form beginning with the ?(ə)- prefix, the ? of the prefix drops out (e.g. ?áakol, báakol). The following list gives the forms listed in Note 2.5 with the b- prefix added:

"I"	"you"	"we"
báb?á	btáb?á	mnéb?á
bəŋki	btəŋki	mnéŋki
bénzel	bténzel	mnénzel
béržaf	btéržaf	mnéržaf
bəstánna	btəstánna	mnəstánna
bəšrab	btəšrab	mnəšrab
bətlaŋ	btətlaŋ	mnətlaŋ
báŋti	btáŋti	mnáŋti
b?úul	bet?úul	mən?úul
bdáll	bəddáll	məndáll
bhəbb	bəthəbb	mənəhəbb
bkúun	bətkúun	mənkúun
brúun	bətrúun	mənrrúun
bšúuf	bəššúuf	mənššúuf
bwá??ef	bətwá??ef	mənwá??ef
bwáddi	bətwáddi	mənwáddi
bxállli	bətxállli	mənqxállli
bžiiib	bədžiiib	mənžžiiib
bfiid	bətfiid	mənfiid
báakol	btáakol	mnáakol
báaxod	btáaxod	mnáaxod
bəšal	btəšal	mnəšal

The following sentences, taken from the Basic Sentences of Units 1 and 2, give examples of the use of the forms of the prefix tense with and without the b- prefix.

2.2 xallina_nətlaŋ_fii .

2.5 xallina_nəstánna_ttramwáay_ttàani .

2.10 bədna_nénzel_bəlmárže .

2.18 bədna_nrúun_falmárže .

2.35 nəhna_ləhanəb?á_həon_nawáali_saaŋtəen .

2.22 wá??ef_lašəflak .

2.44 ?əlkon_faliyyi_kúun_həon ?əbl_bíšr_da?áaye? .

1.43 bəddi_?áakol .

1.10 btəhki_ʕārabi ?

2.11 lamma_mnəʕal ʕaʕiina_xābar .

2.20 ʔaddéəʕ_btāaxod_məna ?

2.36 bəthəbb_tərʕaʕ_tāaxədna_ssāaʕa_sətte ?

2.38 ... mnāaxod_ǧeerak .

In these sentences the simple forms of the Prefix Tense without the b- prefix are DEPENDENT on a preceding word (e.g. bəddi, xalliina, bəthəbb) or are used with the prefixes la-, la a-. Thus the forms of the Prefix Tense are very often to be translated by "to ___" in English. Arabic says "you like you go" or "let me I stay" where English says "you like to go" or "let me stay".

On the other hand the form with the b- prefix in these sentences are INDEPENDENT. For example "we go" or "we'll go" by itself is menrúuḥ, but "we go" in combinations like "we want we go" or "let us we go" is nrúuḥ.

Here are further examples of forms of the Prefix Tense with or without the b-prefix. Go over them until you are not only sure of the meaning of the Arabic and understand it but can also give the Arabic sentences for the English without hesitation:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. ʔaddéəʕ_bədna_nəstanna ? | How long shall we wait? |
| 2. baʕʕiikon ʕāʕr_leerāat . | I'll give you(pl) ten pounds. |
| 3. wəen_bəddak_tənzəl ? | Where do you want to get off? |
| 4. mənkuun_ʕāndkon ssāaʕa_wāaḥde_unəʕʕ . | We'll be at your place at one thirty. |
| 5. bəddak_trúuḥ_māʕi ? | Do you want to go with me? |
| 6. bəddak_təʕal_ʔābli ? | Do you want to get there ahead of me? |
| 7. máa_fii_māʕna kmāalet_xāms_leerāat . | We don't have change for five pounds. |
| 8. bətlaʕ ʔābl_bʕāʕr_daʔāaye ? | I'll go up ten minutes ahead of time. |
| 9. rananəhki_ʕārabi . | We'll speak Arabic. |
| 10. bədna_nərʕaʕ ssāaʕa_təsʕa . | We want to come back at nine o'clock. |
| 11. máa_fii_tāksi nrúuḥ_fii ? | Isn't there a taxi we can go in? |
| 12. bəthəbb_tərʕaʕ_tāakol_māʕna ? | Would you like to come back and eat with us? |

13. bərʕaʕ_māʕkon .

I'll go back with you.

14. xalliina_nʕūufak .

Let us see you.

15. baʕʕiik_hāʔʔon .

I'll give you the money to pay for the

16. šúu_bəddak_tāakol ?

What do you want to eat?

17. ʔiza_tʔaxxārt_ʕan_lxāmse bāaxod_ǧeerak .

If you're later than five I'll take someone else.

18. ʕaʕiina_xābar ssāaʕa_sətte .

Notify us at six o'clock.

19. ssāaʕa_ʔaddéəʕ_btərʕaʕ_tāaxədni ?

What time will you come back and pick me up?

20. mənwāʔʔef ʕāla_ʔāwwal_bāab ʕāla_yamīinna .

We'll stop at the first door on our left. right

Note 2.7 In Note 1.6 noun forms like léera, leertéen, leerāat were discussed. There are many nouns of this type in Arabic. They will be called FEMININE T-NOUNS. By itself such a noun ends in -e or -a but when a suffix is added or when the noun is in close connection with a following noun the -e or -a appears as -(e)t. The plural usually ends in -aat. Here are further examples:

singular

sāaʕa	sāaʕti	saaʕtéen	saaʕaat	hour, clock, watch
bināaye	bināayti	binaaytéen	binaayaat	building
dāraʕe	dārʕti	darʕtéen	daraʕaat	step, class
háaʕe	háaʕti	haaʕtéen	haaʕaat	need, thing

As you know some Feminine T-nouns have other plurals (e.g. siigāara - sagāayer). Here are examples

daʕʕiʔa	daʕʕiʕti	daʕʕiʕtéen	daʕʕāayeʕ	minute
siigāara	siigāarti	siigaartéen	sagāayer(or siigaaraat)	cigarette
wāraʔa	wārʕti	warʕtéen	waraʕaat (or urāaʕ)	leaf, paper, ticket

In the Vocabularies of this and following Units a Feminine T- Noun will be marked ft; if the plural, or any other form, is at all irregular the noun will be marked ft* and the irregular forms will usually be given. Most feminine nouns are Feminine T- Nouns. If a noun is feminine but it is not a Feminine T- Noun it will be marked f. If it behaves like a Feminine T- Noun but it is masculine it will be marked mt or mt*. All other nouns are masculine and will be left unmarked. Here are further examples of the use of Feminine T- Nouns. Go over the sentences and their English equivalents very carefully and make sure you understand the Arabic and can give it without hesitation when asked the English.

1. xalliina_nestanna da'ii'téen . Let's wait a couple of minutes.
2. betxalliini_?àaxod_wàra?a ? Will you let me take a ticket?
3. tfáddal háyy_xáms_uráa? . Here are five tickets.
4. btətlaf_?ášr_daražáat_?ála_yamiinak, You go up ten steps on the right
udaržtéen_?ala_šmáalak, btəšal_lafándo . and two steps on the left and you're
at his place.
5. ?ándkon_binaayáat_bel?aqšáaf ? Do you have any buildings at the Qass:
--?ánna binaaytéen . We have two buildings.
6. wéen_sáafet_xáaled ? Where's Khaled's watch?
7. máa_máfi sagáayer . I don't have any cigarettes.
8. ?atfiini_siigáara mən_siigaaráatak . Give me one of your cigarettes.
9. máa_bhəbb_?ahwet_xáaled ?ana . I don't like Khaled's coffee.
10. má?ak_kəbríit_yaa_béek ? Do you have matches, sir?

Section D. Exercises

1. Transformation sentences. Read each of the following sentences, be sure you understand it, then repeat it changing all the "I" forms to "we" forms.

Sample: beddi_rúu(н)_?al?otéel .

changed to: bedna_nrúu(н)_?al?otéel .

1. bəhki_?árabi mníin .
2. bəddi_?éržaf ssáafa_xámse .
3. baftik_leertéen .
4. máa_beddi_?ətlaf hálla? ?
5. bəddi_?ənzəl_hoon .
6. máa_bhəbb_lfawáakí .
7. bkúun_hníik ?ábl_bsáafa .
8. bəddi_déll_?ámmad_?al?otéel .

9. bšúufak ssáafa_xámse belmárže .
10. béržaf báaxdak máfi .
11. bhəbb_?áakol belmátšam .
12. lámma_bəsal_?atfiini_xábar .
13. ranawa??əflak_?əddám_lbáab .
14. bəb?a_hoon saaftéen .
15. bəddi_xálli_?ámmad_?ándi .
16. bəstánna_?ámmad belmhátta .
17. ranažíib_luráa? bel?áwwal .
18. ?ána_b?úul lá? .
19. béržaf bšúufak .
20. báaxod_lbáas_?almárže .

2. "This." Use each of the following words three times (a) This is (a) _____, (b) This is the _____, (c) This _____ is yours (?əlak). Don't forget to use the feminine hayy when the word is feminine.

Sample: baab

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| (a) háada_báab . | This is a door. |
| (b) háada_lbaab . | This is the door. |
| (c) halbáab_?əlak . | This door is yours. |

1. rézz
2. siigáara
3. báas
4. bináaye
5. ?otéel
6. sáafa
7. táksi
8. sámak
9. wàra?a
10. xəbz

3. Numbers. Give the Arabic equivalents of the following:

1. three hours
2. five minutes
3. six cigarettes
4. first class
5. four tickets
6. one o'clock
7. two clocks
8. nine piastres
9. one coffee
10. seven buildings
11. two steps
12. one pound
13. two pounds
14. second class
15. one hour
16. ten cigarettes
17. two minutes
18. one minute
19. the first door
20. two tickets

4. Questions and Answers. Follow the same procedure as in the questions and answers exercise of Unit 1.

1. šúu_bèddak_tàakol ?
2. fii_siinama_hoon ?
3. bèddak_tšúufni ?
4. ?addéesš_ssàafa ?
5. máfak_kmàalet_fàšr_leeràat ?
6. wéen_bèddak_tènzal ?
7. šlónak_yaa_?àhmad ?
8. bèddak_téržaf_taxèdna ?
9. ?addéesš_btàaxod_mènna ?
10. šúu_fii_fandak_ğèer_ssàmak ?
11. fèen_lmhaṭta ?
12. xàmse_wetnèen šúu_byàfmlu ?

13. lawéen_bèddak_trúuh ?
14. b?addéesš_hadòol ?
15. wéen_bèddak_testàanna ?
16. kíif_hàalak ?
17. halxàtt_lawéen_biwàddi ?
18. ?addéesš_hà??on ?
19. šúu_btàaxod_máfak ?
20. bethébb_tàakol_máfi ?

5. Substitution sentences. Repeat each of the following sentences aloud, then say it again substituting for the -i ending meaning 'my' or 'me' (a) -ak 'your, you' (h) -ha 'our, us' (o) kon 'your, you (pl)'. Practice saying all these sentences over and over until they all sound natural.

Sample:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| (a) ssiinama_?eddáamak . | The theater is in front of you. |
| (b) ssiinama_?eddáamna . | The theater is in front of us. |
| (c) ssiinama_?eddáamkon . | The theater is in front of you (pl). |
| 1. máfami mnih_ktíir . | My restaurant is very good. |
| 2. máa_?əža_ğèeri . | No one came but me. |
| 3. wéen_siigaaràati ? | Where are my cigarettes? |
| 4. ?àhmad ?əža máfi . | Ahmad came with me. |
| 5. fàndi_xàms_leeràat . | I have five pounds. |
| 6. lemhaṭta_fala_šmáli . | The station is on my right . <i>left</i> |
| 7. ?otéeli_?eddáam_ssiinama . | My hotel is in front of the movie theater. |
| 8. fii_láfte_fala_yamíini . | There's a turn on my right. |

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Jones and Hassan meet on the street.

Jones márnaba hásan_béek .

Hassan marnabtéen yaa_mèster_žoons . nšáalla_mabšúut ?

J. mníin_lhámdella u?ente_šlónak ?

H. lhámdella, ?ána mabšúut_fiik, wéen_bèddak_trúuh ?

J. rúuh_máši lanézel_?almárže .

H. táyyeb xallíina_náaxod_lbáaš .

J. féen_mnəstanna_lbàšš ?

H. šalyamíin_hniik .

J. šuu_byéžhar_lbàšš ktiir_mašžúu? !!

S. fii_xàtt_traamwáay šalmárže_kamāan .

J. lēeko ?šža_wáahed .

H. táyyeb rúuh_lanətlaš_fii, tfáddal ?eddáami .

J. ?addéš_mən_hoon_šalmárže ?

H. fii_dáraže_?úula bšášara ufii_dáraže_táanye bsábša .

J. mníin, mnáaxod_war?téen_dáraže_?úula .

H. táyyeb mníin .

J. šuu_byéžhar_rananéšal .

H. tfáddal ?eddáami .

Conversation 2. Jones and Ahmad decide what to do.

Jones uhálla? lawéen_merrúuh ?

Ahmad šal?aššáaš, ?ána_bèddi_šúuf_wáaned_hniik .

J. xallíina_rrúuhšal?áhwe_bəl?áwwal .

J. bèddi_?ššrab_šwáyyet_bíira .

A. u?ána_báaxod_?áhwe .

W. ?áhlán_wasáhlán, tfáddalu .

A. márnaba, bàlla_žéblna_wáaned_?áhwe_uwáaned_bíira .

W. hóon_máa_mnəšti_bíira .

J. táyyeb, žébli_?áhwe_?ána_kamāan .

Conversation 3. A little later.

J. uhálla? kiif_merrúuh_šal?aššáaš ?

A. fii_lbáaš_wətraa_mwáay_wəttáksi .

J. mnáaxod_táksi .

A. táksi ... táksi ...

Taxi driver ?ám_r_yaa_béek ?

A. bèdna_nrúuh_šal?aššáaš_šúu_btáaxod_məna ?

TD. tlét_leerəat .

A. háada_ktiir, mù_héek ?

TD. lá?. ?ábadan_mù_ktiir_yaa_béek .

A. lá?_ktiir, leertéen_kfáaye .

TD. mən_šáankon_báaxod_leertéen_unəšš .

A. táyyeb_tfáddal_yaa_mèster_žoons .

TD. wéen_bəthəbbu_wa??əflkon ?

A. rúuh_dəğri_latšúuf_lbináaye_lhámma .

TD. háyy_lbináaye .

A. hniik_šášməal_fii_láfte, lífēt_fíiha .

TD. hóon ?

A. wa??éflna_šala_?áwwal_báab_šala_yamíinak .

TD. ?ám_rak, bəthəbbu_?əžəš_?aaxədkon ?

- A. šúu_bətʔúul_yaa_məstər ʒðons ?
 J. ʔiʒa_btérʒaʔ_báʔd_sáaʔa bikúun_mniin .
 TD. ʔala_ʔéeni .
 A. máʔak_kmáalet_ʔáʂr_leeráat ?
 TD. wáʔʔef_lašúuf, máʔi, tʔáddal .

Conversation 4. In the Assaa.

- A. byéʒhar_xaliil múu_hðon !
 J. šúu_mnáʔmel_hálláʔ ?
 A. xalliina_nrúun_náakol .
 J. wéen_fii_máʔʔam_mniin_hðon ?
 A. šáayef_halbináaye_lhámra ?
 J. náʔam .
 A. waráaha .
 J. rúun_lanrúun .
 A. šúu_háada !! lmáʔʔam_máʔʒúuʔ_ktiir !!
 J. máa_fii_ǵèer_máʔʔam_hðon ?
 A. fii, háyy_wáaned_tàani .
 J. ʔiʒa_mniin mnáakol_fii .
 A. ʔáyyeb .
 Waiter ʔáhlán_wasáhlán . ʔámr !!
 A. šúu_fii_ʔándak_šii_mniin_ʔaʔʔiina ?
 W. ʔánna_lám urézz ubaʔáaʔa usámak .
 A. ʔána_bèddi_lámme_máʔ_lbaʔáaʔa .
 W. uʔénte_yaa_bèek šúu_bʒèblak ?
 J. ʒèbli_wáaned_biiira ubaʔdéen_bšúuf_šúu_bèddi_ʔáakol .

- W. ʔala_ʔéeni .
 A. llámme_mniina_ktiir_yaa_məstər_ʒðons .
 J. ʔáyyeb ʒèbli_ʔána_ttàani_lámme_ubaʔáaʔa .
 W. šúu_bèdkon_fawáaki ?
 A. báʔd_šwáyye menšúuf_šuu_bèdna .
 J. ʒèbli_ʔáhwe_máʔ_šwáyyet_máyy .
 A. ʔaddééš_byəʔtlaʔ_ʔalèena ?
 W. ʔárbaʔ_leeráat unéʂʂ .
 A. háyy_xámse wəlkmáale_ʔèlak .
 W. mamnúun .
 A. xáatrak .
 W. máʔ_ssaláame .

Section F. Free Conversation

The following conversation outlines are just suggestions; converse as freely as you can with what you know. It is important to remember, however, that it is much better at this stage of learning to be able to converse very fluently on just a few things than to converse very hesitantly on a larger range of topics. So don't be afraid to use the Basic Sentences in your conversation just as they are - the more of them you can work into your conversation the more fluent you will be, and the better prepared you will be to go on and learn more Arabic in succeeding units.

Conversation 1. Jones takes a taxi.

Jones hails a taxi.
 The driver asks Jones to get in.
 Jones says he is going to the Marjé and asks how much the driver wants.
 They agree on a price.
 When they reach the Marjé, Jones points out a turn on the right in back of a movie theater and tells the driver to turn in there.
 The driver asks where to stop.
 Jones tells him the first door on the left.
 They stop and Jones pays the driver, getting change for 5 pounds.
 They say goodbye.

Conversation 2. Jones and Ahmad get on a train.

Jones says he wants to go to the Qassaa. And asks where this line goes.
 Ahmad tells him this line goes to the Assaa and says he's going there too.
 Jones says, "Here comes a train!"
 Ahmad says it's crowded and he wants to wait for the next train.
 While waiting Jones says he would like to take a bus.
 Ahmad says there is no bus here.
 They get on the train and Jones asks about the fare.
 The conductor tells him the first and second class prices.
 Jones and Ahmad each get a first class ticket.
 Jones asks Ahmad to tell him when they reach the Assaa.
 Ahmad tells him, Jones thanks him, and they exchange goodbyes.

Section G. Vocabulary

-aaxod	take	báab	door, gate
taaxádna	you take us	báas or báss (pl baasáat or bassáat)	bus
?ábadan	never, ever, at all	bállá	please, if you don't mind
?ábl	before	béek	bey, gentleman (title of respect)
?ámr	order, command, yes sir	bináaye (ft)	building
?ána	I	dáraže (ft)	step, class
?aššáaʕ	Qassaa or Assaa (place name)	daʕiiʕa (ft pl daʕáayeʕ)	minute
?áwwal (f ?úula)	first	-ešal	arrive (la- at a place)
?el-	to, for, belonging to	fii	there is, there a in it
?élkon	to you, yours	fiiha	in it (fem)
?éža or ?áža	he came	ģeer	other, else, except
?íza	if	hállaʕ	now
?rúuš	piastres	háʕʕ	price, value, right
?úula	see ?awwal		
-bʕa	stay		

hámra (f)	red	néšš	half
hawáali	around, about	-nzal	go down, get off
-hább	like, love	raha-	going to
kamáan	also, too, still	-ruuh	go, leave
kfáaye (ft)	enough	-ržaʕ	go back, return
kmáale (ft)	change, rest	šáayef (adj)	seeing, having se
-kon	you (pl) your (pl)	šáan	sake
-kuun	be	mən_šáan	for the sake of for
-l-	to, for (suffix on verbs)	-stanna	wait
-li	for me	šéflak	I'll see (for you)
-lak	for you	šii	somewhat, thing, at all
-lna	for us	tʕaxxárt	I'm late, you're late
-lkon	for you (pl)	táni (f táanye)	second, other, ne
lamma	when	táksi	taxi
la-	to, until, so that	tfáddal (pl tfáddalu)	please (offering service)
láfte (ft)	a turn	tramwáay (pl tramwaayáat)	tram
léek	behold, here (is, come)	-tlaʕ	go up, get on, go out, amount to, become
lféet	turn (command)	-waʕʕef	stop, stand
lmárže	Marjeh (square in Damascus)	-waddi	lead, take, send
matʕáxxer (adj)	delayed, late	wáraʕa (ft pl waraʕaat or uráaʕ)	leaf, piece of paper, ticket
mén	from	waráaha	in back of it (feminine)
maʕžúuʕ (adj)	crowded		
néhna	we		

xábar	news, piece of information
-xalli	let, leave
xátt	line, handwriting
yaa_	oh (used in address)
yamma	or
-zhar	seem, appear
ʕan	from, than, about
ʕéen (f)	eye
ʕala_ʕéeni	yes, indeed! and how!

PART ONE

MEETING PEOPLE

UNIT 3

Section A. Basic Sentences

evening	mása
good	xéer
1. Good evening.	masa_lxeer .
2. Good evening (reply).	masa_lxeeráat .
hundred	míyye
3. Good evening (reply).	miit_masa .
health	ʕánna
4. How are you? (How's your health?)	kiif_ʕantak ?
5. Fine, thank you.	bxeer_lhamdu_ləllaa .
Khaled	xáaled
I like	bhəbb
I introduce you	ʕarfak
6. Khaled, I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Smith.	yaa_xaaled bhəbb_ʕarfak ʕala_ məster_smis .
7. Glad to meet you. (We're honored.)	tšarrafna .
8. (Reply)	stáǧfiru_llàa .
America	?améerka
9. Mr. Smith is from America.	məster_smis mən_?ameerka .
coming	žáaye
so that he'll visit	layzúur
our country	bláadna
10. He's here to visit our country.	žaaeye layzuur_blaadna .
11. Welcome.	?ahla_wsahla fiik .
how many	kám
day	yoom

Syria	suuriyya
12. How many days are you going to stay in Syria?	kam yoom lanatəb'a bisuuriyya ?
sorrow	'ásaf
necessary	láazem
I leave	'ətrek or 'ətrok
13. Unfortunately I have to leave in ten days.	maf_l'asaf laazem 'ətrok baŋd_ŋašr_tiyyaam .
it became for you	šárlak
Damascus	ššáam
14. How long have you been in Damascus?	'addéš_šarлак_bəššáam ?
week	žəmŋa
15. I've been here a week and a half.	šarli žəmŋa_wnəšš .
which	'ánu
ship	baabóor
you came	'žiiit
your presence	hádrtak
16. What ship did you come on, sir?	ŋala_'anu_baaboor 'žiiit_hádrtak ?
17. I came on the Khedive Ismail.	'žiiit ŋalxdeewi_smaŋiil .
trip	sáfra
18. How was your trip?	šloon_kaanet_safrtak ?
19. Fine, thank you.	mniina lŋamdella .
state	wiláaye
20. What state are you from?	mən_'anu_wilaaye hádrtak ?
21. From California.	mən_kalifóornya .
my brother	'áxi
do you know him	btáŋrfo

22. My brother's in California, do you know him?	'axi_bkalifoornya, btaŋrfo ?
city	bálad
present	mawžúud
your brother	'axúuk
23. What city's your brother in?	b'anu_balad mawžúud_'axuuk ?
24. In San Francisco.	bsáan_fraansiisko .
he works	byeštéŋel
25. What work does your brother do?	šuu_byeštéŋel_'axuuk ?
I think	bžénn
that he	'énnno
business man	táažer
26. I think he's in business.	bžənnəllak 'ənnno_taažer .
name	'ésm
27. What's his name?	šuu_'əsmo ?
28. His name is Ameen.	'əsmo 'amíin
he	húwwe
cloth	'máaš
29. I think I know him. Is he a cloth dealer?	bžənn baŋrfo, huwwe taažer_'maaš ?
you know for me	btaŋréfli
about him	ŋanno
30. Yes. What can you tell me about him? ("What do you know about him for me?")	'ee_nafam . šuu_btaŋréfli_ŋanno ?
man	rəžžáal
state	háale
31. He's a good man and he's well off.	huwwe_rəžžaal_ŋayyeb unaalto_mniina .
family	ŋéele

32. Do you know his family? btafref_ʒeelto ?
33. I know them all. baʒrafhon kəlhon .
- excuse me or please or beg your dáxlak
 pardon
- children uláad
34. And how are his children? daxlak kiif_ulaado ?
- fine ʒáal
35. Pretty good. ʒii ʒáal .
- son ʒében
- large, old kbíir
36. What work does his oldest son do? ʒuu_byəštəgəl ʒəbno_ləkbiir ?
- carpenter nažžáar
- still báʒd or léssa
- student təlmiiz
37. He's a carpenter and his other nažžaar . uʒəbno ttaani baʒdo_
 son's still a student. təlmiiz . or lessaa_təlmiiz .
- age ʒəmar
- it became ʒáar
38. How old have they gotten to be? ʒaddeəʒ_ʒaar_ʒemrhon ?
- twenty ʒəʒriin
- year səne
- small, young zǧiir
39. The old one is twenty years old ləkbiir_ʒəmro ʒəʒriin_səne
 and the young one eighteen. wəzzǧiir_tməntaʒʒ .
- they help bisáaʒdu or biʒáawnu
- their father ʒabuuhon
- they are bikúunu
- empty or free fáadi

40. Do they help their father when they bisaaʒdu ʒabuuhon_ʒii lamma_bikuunu_
 can? faadyiin ?
- everything kəlʒi
- they hənne or hennen
41. Yes, they help him in everything. ʒee_nafam . hənne bisaaʒduu bkelʒi .
- may he spare for him ixallfiilo
- them yáahon
42. God spare them. ʒalla_ixalliilo_yaahon .
- may he keep you yənfazak
43. God keep you. ʒalla_yənfazak .
- it happened to us həʒəlna
- honor ʒaraf
- acquaintance máʒrife or máʒrife
44. Very glad to have met you. həʒəlna ʒʒaraf bmaʒreftak . or
 (We were honored by your acquaintance.) ʒarlna ʒʒaraf bmaʒreftak .
45. The honor is ours. ʒʒaraf_ʒəlna .
- honor us ʒarfúuna
- house béet
46. Please come to see us. tfaddalu_ʒarfuuna_ʒalbeet .
47. We'd be delighted. (The honor will byəhʒalna_ʒʒaraf .
 happen to us.)
- may you reach morning təʒbhu
48. Good night. təʒbhu_ʒala_xeer .
49. Good night (reply). uʒəntu_bxeer .

Section B. Pronunciation

1. Pharyngal spirants (ح, ع)

The two consonant sounds represented in our spelling by ح and ع are among the most characteristic sounds of Arabic. When you are listening to people speaking a foreign language and you hear these sounds, you can be practically certain the language they are speaking is Arabic. Both sounds occur with great frequency in the language, and you must pronounce these sounds well if you want to speak Arabic so that you will be understood.

The ح is like a very strong "h"; it sounds like a sigh uttered with great force, or, even better like the sound of a panting dog. Don't be afraid of the amount of energy and air it takes to say ح; it just does, and you cannot pronounce it acceptably without using a lot more energy and air than you use for an English "h". It differs from our "h" also in that the muscles of the top part of the throat (the "pharynx") are tightened. If you put your fingers lightly on your throat while saying ح properly, you can feel this tightness of the muscles.

Here are some examples of Arabic ح:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

háal	'state, condition'
háʔʔ	'right, value'
rúuh	'I go'
hámra	'red (feminine)'
láhme	'meat'
lhámdu_lelláa	'praise to God'

The Arabic sound represented in our spelling by ع is similar to the ح sound in that the pharyngal muscles are tightened. The ع sound takes considerable effort to master, but careful imitation and intensive practice will make it second nature for you. The first trouble for an English speaker learning the ع is hearing and recognizing it. Often an English speaker does not hear a consonant at all in a word like عášara or báʔref. Have your Guide say the example in the Pronunciation Practice again and again until you hear and recognize the ع in every word. Remember that it is not a vowel like our "ah", and it is not an accidental growl that got into the word; it is a full-fledged and very common consonant of Spoken Arabic.

The sound is made by tightening the muscles of the pharynx; the sound of retching you make before vomiting is also made by tightening the pharyngal muscles. The two sounds are therefore very similar, and you can try to make a sort of retching noise as a first approximation to the ع. Another way to learn to produce this sound is to sing the lowest note you can then try to sing two tones lower; the resulting growl is very much the same as the ع sound. The best way to learn it, however, is to listen carefully until you hear and recognize it instantly in words, and then imitate as carefully as you can, trying to sound exactly like the Guide or the voice on the records.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

ʔiid	'repeat'	náʔam	'yes'
ʔándak	'with you'	mátʔam	'restaurant'
ʔárabi	'Arabic'	maʔrúuf	'favor'
ʔášara	'ten'	sáaʔa	'hour, watch'
ʔaʔfíni	'give me'	báʔref	'I know'

Both these sounds are called "pharyngal spirants"--"spirant" because the air passage is narrowed but not stopped, "pharyngal" because the narrowing is in the pharynx.

2. Three-consonant sequences and the "helping vowel".

In English we often have three, or even four or five, consonants in a row in a single word, e.g. desks, artful, sharkskin. In Arabic there are often two consonants in a row, e.g. nenzel, bédna, máhlak, but rarely three and practically never more than three. Whenever three consonants come together in an Arabic word, Arabic speakers tend to put in a very short "helping vowel" between the first and second consonants. Sometimes this vowel is very clear, sometimes you can hardly hear it. In the following examples the position of the helping vowel is shown by ^ə, but this will not be done elsewhere in the Units.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

ʔal ^ə mháʔta	'to the station'
btáʔ ^ə rfo	'you know him'
had ^ə rtak	'you (polite)'
téʔ ^ə bhu	'you (pl) reach morning'

An English word may begin with a vowel or with one, two, or three or more consonants (e.g. apt, rapt, trapped, strapped). Arabic words very rarely begin with vowels (never with a); they usually begin with a single consonant, sometimes with two consonants, rarely with three, and never with more than three (e.g. ulaad, raah, rtaah, straah). When an Arabic word begins with two consonants or the preceding word ends with a consonant, this same helping vowel is usually heard. Examples:

THREE	
PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TABLE (Cont'd.)	
?addées ^o ssáafa ?	What time is it?
bèddak ^o tláate ?	Do you want three?
ma ^o ssaláame .	Goodbye
mniih ^o ktiir .	Very good.

Section C. Analysis

Note 3.1 Prefix Tense. In Unit 2 you learned three of the prefixes of the Prefix Tense. You meet another one in this Unit. Here are examples of "he" forms which have appeared in the Basic Sentences of Units 2 and 3.

2.3 byézhār	it appears
2.12 biwáddi	it leads
3.10 layzúur	in order that he visit
3.25 byéštáǧel	he works
3.42 ixallíilo	he keeps for him
3.43 yéñfazak	he keeps you

The prefix for "he" is yə- or i-, just as the prefix for "you" is tə- or t- and for "we" is nə- or n-. The longer form yə- appears whenever the stem begins with two consonants (e.g. yéñzel, byézhār) and the shorter form i- appears when the stem begins with a single consonant (e.g. biwáddi, irúuḥ).

Notice that the shorter form of the prefix is y- instead of i- when preceded by a vowel, e.g. the prefix la- (layzúur, layšúuf) and when the stem begins with a vowel (e.g. yáakol, yéṣal).

The b- prefix is added to this yə (i-) form just as to the other forms of the prefix tense. Here are the forms for most of the verbs you have learned in Units 1, 2, and 3. For convenience of reference, the number of the Unit (1, 2, or 3) in which the verb first appears is given in parentheses after the verb:

yáṣmel	byáṣmel	(1)	make, do
yáṣref	byáṣref	(3)	know
yáṣti	byáṣti	(1)	give
yébʔa	byébʔa	(2)	stay
yéñfaz	byéñfaz	(3)	keep, preserve
yéñki	byéñki	(1)	speak
yélfet	byélfet	(2)	turn
yéñzel	byéñzel	(2)	go down, get off
yéržaṣ	byéržaṣ	(2)	go back, return
yəstánna	byəstánna	(2)	wait for
yéṣben	byéṣben	(3)	reach morning
yəštáǧel	byəštáǧel	(3)	work
yéṭlaṣ	byéṭlaṣ	(2)	go up, get on, get out
yézhār	byézhār	(2)	seem, appear
yáakol	byáakol	(1)	eat
yáaxod	byáaxod	(2)	take
yéṣal	byéṣal	(2)	arrive
iʔúul	biʔúul	(1)	say, tell
idéll	bidéll	(1)	direct
ihébb	bihébb	(2)	like, love
ikúun	bikúun	(2)	be

irúuH	birúuH	(1)	go
isáafed	bisáafed	(3)	help
išáarref	bišáarref	(3)	honor
išúuf	bišúuf	(2)	see
iwáddi	biwáddi	(2)	take, lead
iwáʔʔef	biwáʔʔef	(2)	stop
ixállí	bixállí	(2)	let, leave, keep
izúur	bizúur	(3)	visit
izénn	bizénn	(3)	think
ižíib	bižíib	(1)	bring
išáarref	bišáarref	(3)	introduce, cause to know
išíid	bišíid	(1)	repeat

Note 3.2 Plural -u The following forms of the Prefix Tense have appeared in Basic Sentences:

bikúunu	they will be	bisáafdu	they help
byámlu	they make	tášbu	you (pl) reach morning

The "they" form of the Prefix Tense consists of the "he" form plus the plural ending -u:

byétlaf	he goes up	byétlafu	they go up
birúuH	he goes	birúuHu	they go
bižíib	he brings	bižíibu	they bring

This plural ending is also added to forms having the t(a)- prefix:

btéržaf	you (sg) go back	btéržafu	you (pl) go back
betšúuf	you (sg) see	betšúufu	you (pl) see
betnébb	you (sg) like	betnébbu	you (pl) like

Here are additional examples:

byéHfaz	he keeps	byéHfazu	they keep
btéHfaz	you (sg) keep	btéHfazu	you (pl) keep
byénzal	he goes down	byénzalu	they go down
bténzal	you (sg) go down	bténzalu	you (pl) go down
byáakol	he eats	byáaklu	they eat
btáakol	you (sg) eat	btáaklu	you (pl) eat
biʔúul	he says	biʔúulu	they say
betʔúul	you (sg) say	betʔúulu	you (pl) say

The characteristic vowel, which usually appears before the last consonant of the stem in the Prefix Tense, is called the STEM VOWEL. Notice that when the stem vowel is -a- (e.g. byétlaf) the -a- remains when the -u is added. When the stem vowel is -e- or -o- (e.g. byénzal, byáakol) it is dropped when the -u is added (byénzalu, byáaklu). Here are the "you (pl)" and "they" forms of most of the verbs you have learned:

(1) Stem vowel -a- (which remains):

téHfaz	yéHfaz	keep
téržaf	yéržaf	return
téšrabu	yéšrabu	drink
tétlaf	yétlaf	go up
téžharu	yéžharu	appear, seem
tášalu	yášalu	arrive

(2) Stem vowel -e- (which is dropped)

támlu	yámlu	do
tárfu	yárfu	know

tálftu	yálftu	turn
ténzlu	yánzlu	go down
təštəǵlu	yeštəǵlu	work
təšbnu	yəšbnu	reach morning
tétrku	yétrku	leave
tsáafdu	isáafdu	help
tšárfu	isárfu	honor
twáʔfu	iwáʔfu	stop
tʃáawnu	iʃáawnu	help
tʃárfu	iʃárfu	introduce

(3) Stem vowel -o- (which is dropped)

táaklu	yáaklu	eat
táaxdu	yáaxdu	take
tétrku	yétrku	leave

(4) Other verbs:

tʔúulu	iʔúulu	say
ddéllu	idéllu	direct
tnébbu	inébbu	love
tkúunu	ikúunu	be
trúunu	irúunu	go
tšúufu	išúufu	see
dzúuru	izúuru	visit
džíibu	ižíibu	bring

Note 3.3 Pronoun endings. In Units 1 and 2 you learned the endings -i, -ni, -ak, -k; -na; -kon. In this Unit you meet two more such endings. Study the following examples which have appeared in Basic Sentences:

btárfu	do you know <u>him</u>
ʔésmo	<u>his</u> name
ʃáanno	about <u>him</u>
uláado	<u>his</u> children
ʔébnó	<u>his</u> son
báʃdo	<u>he</u> still
ʃémro	<u>his</u> age
ixallíilo	may he keep for <u>him</u>
ʃéelto	<u>his</u> family
kélhon	all of <u>them</u>
baʃréfhon	I know <u>them</u>
ʃémrhon	<u>their</u> age
ʔabúuhon	<u>their</u> father

The endings -o "his, him" and -hon "their, them" are used in the same way as the other suffixes of this kind you have learned.

Note 3.4 Alternants of the pronoun endings. Certain of the suffixes -i, -ak, etc., have alternant forms which are used under certain conditions. For example, the "you" suffix, as you know, has two forms: -ak, and -k. Study the following examples to see when each form is used:

háal	:	háalak	masa	:	masáak
bšúuf	:	bšúufak	ixállli	:	ixallíik
báʃref	:	báʃrfak	báʃti	:	baʃtíik

When a word ends in a consonant (háal, bšúuf, báʃref) the -ak form of the "you" suffix is used (háalak, bšúufak, báʃrfak). When the word ends in a vowel (masa, ixállli, báʃti) the vowel is doubled and the -k form of the suffix is

used (masáak, ixallíik, baṣṭíik). Other suffixes have alternant forms; be on the lookout for them and try to figure out the conditions under which the various alternants are used.

The words ?ax 'brother' and ?ab 'father' have a special stem ?axu, ?abu which is used when the word is followed by a pronoun ending or another noun, e.g. ?axúuk 'your brother' ?ábu_?ámad 'Ahmad's father'. The ending -i 'my' however is added to the shorter stem: ?axi 'my brother', ?abi 'my father'.

Note 3.5 In Unit 2 you learned that, in general, the b- prefix is added to the forms of the Prefix Tense when they are used independently. There is, however, one independent use of the Prefix Tense in which the b- prefix is not used. Here are examples taken from the Basic Sentences of Units 1 - 3:

- 2.40 ... kúun_hòon ?ábl_bṣáṣr_da?àaye . I'll be here ten minutes ahead of time. ("May I be here...")
- 3.42 ?álla_ixallíilo_yàahon . God keep them for him.
- 3.43 ?álla_yéhfazak . May God keep you.
- 3.48 tésbnu ṣála_xéer . Good night. ("May you reach morning well.")

The simple forms of the Prefix Tense are used independently with the meaning "may something happen", "let something happen". This use is very common in the third person ("he", "they") and very common in formulas, but you will also find it in other persons and in non-formulaic expressions.

Note 3.6 Prepositions. The preposition b- 'in, with, for, etc.' has occurred in various Basic Sentences and in Listening In conversations:

- 1.20 b?addéesḥ hàada ? (For how much is this?)
- 2.40 ... ?ábl_bṣáṣr_da?àaye ten minutes early ("ahead by ten minutes")
- 3.5 b_xéer_lhámdu_lèllàa . Fine ("in well-being"), praise God.
- 3.23 b?ánu_balad_mawḥúud_?axúuk ? What city's your brother in?
- 3.41 ... bisaaḥdúu bkélṣi they help him with everything.
- 3.44 neṣelna_šṣaraf_bmaṣreftak . We're honored by your acquaintance.
- 3.14 ... bisaaḥdúu bkélṣi they help him with everything.

- 2.2 xallíina_nèṭlaṣ_fii . Let's get on (it).
- 2(LI) ... mnáakol_fii we'll eat in it.
- 2(LI) ?ána_mabṣúut_fiik . I'm happy to see you ("I'm made happy by you").
- 3.11 ?áhla_wsáhla_fiik . Welcome to you.
- 2.29 lféet_fiiha . Turn into it (feminine).

The preposition b- is very common in Arabic and has a wide variety of meanings, such as 'in, at, with, by means of, for, per etc.' It has several alternants: bə-, fii-, bi-, b-. They are used as follows:

- bə- before a word beginning with two consonants
 fii- before a pronoun ending
 b- or bi- as used everywhere else, bi- only with the meaning 'in'

Examples:

bəṣárabí	in (the) Arabic	bséne	per year
bəššáam	in Damascus	bléera	for a pound, a pound's worth
bəlmátṣam	in the restaurant	b'améerka (or bi'améerka)	in America
bəsséne	by the year	bbéetak (or bibéetak)	in your house
bəlbéet	in the house	bxáms_leerâat	for five pounds
	fii		in you
	fiiina		in us
	fii		in it, in him
	fiiha		in her

Here are additional sentences containing examples of b- with various meanings:

1. báakol_bəlmátṣam . I'll eat in the restaurant.
2. btḥébb_táakol_fii_máṣi ? Would you like to eat there ("in it") with me?

3. bʔaddées̄ llānme_hàllaʔ ? How much is meat now?
 4. b̄suufak_bbeeto . I'll see you in his house.
 5. ʔāxi_mawzūud_hàllaʔ biʔaméerka . My brother's in America now.
 6. máa_fii_ḥii_mniin_bihalmátʔam . There isn't anything good in this restaurant.
 7. mnétlaʔ_ʔala_béet_ʔānmad_bēlbāas̄ . We'll go up to Ahmad's house by bus.
 8. ʔatīini_bʔāšr_ʔrūuš_xēbz . Give me ten piastres' worth of bread.
 9. bēštégel_yooméen_bēžžāmʔa . I work two days a ("the") week.
 10. mnàakol_bmátʔamo . We'll eat in his restaurant.

The preposition ʔala_ has a variety of meanings, such as 'on, on top of, to, toward, for, etc.' It has several alternants: ʔa-, ʔalee-, ʔala_.

ʔa- before l- 'the'

ʔalee- before pronoun endings

ʔala_ is used everywhere else

Many Arabic speakers, especially in Lebanon, use ʔa- almost always instead of ʔala_ even when there is no l- 'the' on the word.

Examples:

ʔalbéet	to the house	ʔaléena	on us
ʔaššāam	to Damascus	ʔaléekon	on you (pl)
ʔalbaabóor	on the ship	ʔaléehon	on them
ʔalʔoteel	to the hotel	ʔaléek	on you (sg)
ʔala_beerúut	to Beirut		
ʔala_máhlak	slowly		
ʔala_ʔānu_baabòor	on what ship		

ʔala_ plus -i 'me' is ʔaliyyi. (Many people, especially in Lebanon, say ʔaláyyi.) Here are additional sentences containing ʔala_:

1. bēddi_rúu_ʔaššāam . I want to go to Damascus.
 2. byétlaʔ_ʔaléek_ʔāšr_ʔrūuš . It'll cost you 10 piastres.
 3. ʔélak_ʔaliyyi_kúun_hdon_ʔabl_bsáafa . I promise you to be here an hour early.
 4. ʔante_tʔaxxárt . lḥāʔʔ_ʔaléek . You were late. It's your fault.
 5. ʔḥki_ʔala_máhlak . Speak slowly.
 6. rúuh_máfo_ʔassínama . Go with him to the movies.
 7. ʔžit_ʔalbaabóormen_ʔaméerka . I came by ("on the") ship from America.
 8. máa_fhèmt_ʔaléena ? Didn't you understand us?
 9. tēšben_ʔala_xéer . Good night.

The preposition men_ is usually equivalent to English 'from' or 'then', with expressions of time it is equivalent to 'ago'. It has several alternants: mnə-, mənn-, mən_.

mnə- before a word beginning with two consonants or with l- 'the'

mənn- before a pronoun ending beginning with a vowel (e.g. -i, -ak)

mən_ is used everywhere else

Examples:

mnəlbéet	from the house	mānni	from me
mnəššāam	from Damascus	mənnak	from you
mnəluláad	from the children	mənno	from him
	ménkon		from you (pl)
	mən_ʔaméerka		from America
	mən_béeti		from my house

Here are additional sentences containing men_:

1. bēddo_yáaxod_mənnā_sábʔ_leeráat . He's asking seven pounds.
 2. ʔéža_mən_béeto . He came from his house.

3. mən_hoon_bziib_lfawàaki . I'll get the fruit here. ("bring the fruit from here")
4. mnessiinama_labèeti fii_ṣábr_daʔàayeʔ_bəlbàas . From the movies to my house is ten minutes by bus.
5. hállaʔ_ʔziit_mən_ṣàndo ? Did you just come from his house?
6. ʔəža_mən_žəmstéen_ṣaššàam . He came to Damascus two weeks ago.

The preposition ṣan is usually equivalent to English 'about, on, concerning' but occasionally means 'from' or 'than'. Like mən it has a double -nn- before pronoun endings beginning with a vowel: ṣánni, ṣánnak, ṣánno. Everywhere else it is ṣan. Sample sentences:

1. šúu_byàṣref_ʔahmad_ṣánnak ? What does Ahmad know about you?
2. ʔána_máa_báṣref_ṣanhon_šii . I don't know anything about them.
3. ʔaxúuk_byəṅki_ṣánnak_mniin . Your brother speaks well of you.
4. šúu_btàṣref_ṣan_lháale_bəššàam ? What do you know about the situation in Damascus?

Note 3.7 Nine more Feminine -t nouns appear in the Basic Sentences of this Unit. Six of them are completely regular ft nouns; the others are ft* with various plural types. Here are the complete forms:

háale	háalti	haaltéen	haaláat	'condition, state'
hádra	hádrti	(hadrtéen)	hadráat	'presence'
sáfra	sáfrti	safrtéen	safráat	'voyage'
šánna	šánti	šantéen	šanháat	'health'
wiláaye	wiláayti	wilaaytéen	wilaayáat	'state'
máṣrfe	maṣréfti	(maṣreftéen)	maṣáaref	'acquaintance'
séne	sénti	sentéen	sníin <u>or</u> sanawáat	'year'
žəmfə	žəmfṣti	žəmfstéen	žəmaṣ	'week'
ṣéole	ṣéelti	ṣeeltéen	ṣeeláat <u>or</u> ṣiyal	'family'

After this Unit the forms of the new Feminine -t nouns will be given in the Vocabulary only.

Note 3.8 Feminine of adjectives. In Arabic adjectives are not a separate kind of word from nouns as they are in English. They are formed just like nouns and differ chiefly in having special feminine and plural forms. The feminine of an adjective consists of the masculine form plus the same feminine -t ending (-a or -e) that you have learned with nouns. Compare these Basic Sentences:

1.5 kiif_háalak ? How are you?

1.8 lhámdu_ləlláa, mniin . Thank you, fine.

3.18 šloon kaanet safrtak ? How was your trip?

3.19 mniina lhámdella . Fine, thank you.

In the first sentences mniin 'fine, good' refers either to háal which is masculine or to the man who is speaking; in the other sentences mniina 'fine, good' refers to sáfra which is feminine. So, you say

lmátṣam_mniin . The restaurant is good.

But lʔəhwe_mniina The coffee house is good.

Here are the masculine and feminine forms of adjectives that have appeared in Units 1-3:

	<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
(a)	kbíir	kbíire	large, old
	ktiir	ktiire	dense, much, a lot
	maṣṣúut	maṣṣúuta	well, happy
	mawžúud	mawžúude	present
	maṣžúuʔ	maṣžúuʔa	crowded
	mniin	mniina	good, fine
	zǧíir	zǧíire	small, young
(b)	láazem	láazme	necessary
	mətʔáxxer	mətʔáxra	delayed, late
	ṭayyeb	ṭaybe	good

<u>Masculine</u>	<u>Feminine</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
(c) fáadi	fáadye	empty, free
táni	tánye	second, other, next
(d) ?ámmar	hámra	red
?áwwal	?úula	first
žáaye	žáaye	coming, next

Notice that e or o before the last consonant drops out when the feminine -t suffix is added, just as e or o before the last consonant of a verb drops out when the plural -u is added. See group (b).

With some adjectives ending in -i, the -i is changed to -y- when the feminine -e is added. See group (c). A very few adjectives have changes in the stem when the feminine -t suffix is added. žáaye 'coming' is the same for masculine or feminine. See group (d).

From this Unit on, adjectives will be marked adj in the Vocabularies and any unusual feminine forms will be given.

Here are additional sentences with examples of adjectives:

1. halmháṭṭa kbíire . This station is large.
2. lmáyye_ktiire bihalbálad . Water is plentiful in this city.
3. ?ènte fáadi truuḥ máfi ? Are you free to go with me?
4. kàanet_mabṣúuṭa_hòon . She was happy here.
5. lmàṭṣam_mafžúu?_ktiir . The restaurant is very crowded.
6. bèddi_dàraže_?úula . I want first class.
7. ?atīini_wàra?a_hámra . Give me a red ticket.
8. halbináaye zḡiire . This building is small.
9. lmháṭṭa mawžúude ?eddáam_lmàṭṣam . The station is in front of the restaurant.
10. ?ándhon_lámme_táybe . They have good meat.

11. ?éža ?ala_baabòor_kbíir . He came on a large ship.
12. tfáḍḍal . háyy_lèera_tánye . Here's another pound.
13. bšúufak_žžəmfa_žžáaye . I'll see you next week.

3.9 Numbers. The numbers from 1-10 were discussed briefly in Note 1.6 and some differences between Arabic and English usage of numbers were noted. (a) Another important difference is the greater frequency of singular of nouns in number expressions:

- 3.3 mīit_māsa . A hundred evenings
- 3.12 kām_yòom ... How many days...
- 3.39 ...?əšrīin_səne twenty years...

With the numbers from three to ten, as you already know, nouns are in the plural. With the numbers from 11 to 100, however, nouns are in the singular. The singular is also used with kām which means 'how many' in a question and means 'several, a few' in a statement. Notice that normally the number has primary stress and the noun which follows it has secondary.

1. hadóol b?əšrīin_?ərs . These cost twenty piastres.
2. ?atīina mīit_lèera . Give us a hundred pounds.
3. kām_lèera_mafò ? How many pounds does he have (with him)?
4. bèddi_rúuḥ bàfd_kām_yòom . I want to go in a few days.

(b) In the Basic Sentences of this unit the expression ?ášr_tiyyám 'ten days' occurred (sentence 3-13). The plural of the word yóom is ?iyyám. However, when the plural comes after one of the numbers from three to ten it drops the ? and replaces it with t. This t is actually part of the feminine -t ending of the number (tlaate, ?arbfa, xamse, sette, sabfa, tmaanye, tessa, ?ášara are all feminine -t nouns) but is said with the following word. There are very few of these plurals which require the t, and they will always be listed in the Vocabularies like this: yóom (pl (t-)) ?iyyám). Here are all the forms: tlát_tiyyám, xáms_tiyyám, sét(t)_tiyyám, sábf_tiyyám, tmen_tiyyaam, tésf_tiyyám, ?ášr_tiyyaam, ?árbaf_tiyyám.

Section D. Exercises

1. Transformation Sentences. Follow the same procedure you used for the transformation sentences of Unit 2, changing the verb forms (and anything else required by the meaning) to the corresponding plural forms:

1. bəddo_izúur bláadna .
2. rana yənzəl_belmárže .
3. byəštáǵel_bəlbálad .
4. bəhább_?əšrab_?əhwe .
5. ranatšúuf_?amíin_ssáafa_wáandə ?
6. šúu_ranat?úul ?
7. máa_bəddo_izíib_luráa? .
8. byətlaf_bəlbáas .
9. bəthəbb_tərzaf_lafáanna ?
10. tfáddal . šarrəfna_falbèet .
11. nšáalla_bzúurak_žžəmfə_žžənye .
12. bəddo_yəlfet_bihalláfte .
13. bəddak_təštáǵel_fand_?áxi ?
14. máa_bíid_yalli_?əltə_?əntə .
15. láazem_tkúun_hníik_ssáafa_fášara .
16. šúu_bət?úul_fan_lháale ?
17. šúu_btáref_fanno ?
18. láazem_twá?ef_b?áwwal_láfte .
19. bəddo_isháref_lafáanna .
20. máa_ranayənfaz_yalli_?əltə_?ána .
21. bətrok_lbèet_ssáafa_təsfa .

22. bətsáafed_?abúuk_šii ?
23. ranayəsal_báid_žžəmfə .
24. báimel_halli_báirfo .
25. byəzhar_?əнно_byáakol_ktiir .

2. Completion sentences. Fill in the appropriate adjective forms in the following Arabic sentences. When you are sure of the form, repeat the sentence several times until it sounds natural.

Sample: samako (good).

Complete to sámake_táyyeb . His fish are good.

1. ssáfra_káanet_ (good) .
2. ?əntə_bətkúun_ (free)_ssáafa_tláate ?
3. ?əbnak_ləssáa_ (young) .
4. ?ána_ (well)_ktiir .
5. lháale_ (fine)_bəššáam .
6. sšinama_ (empty) .
7. bəddo_dáraže_ (first) .
8. ?axúuk_ (coming)_mnəššáam ?
9. ?əbno_nəžžáar_ (good) .
10. byəzhar_?əнно_lmháтта_ (crowded) .
11. ?amíin_rəžžáal_ (old) .
12. maf_l?ásaf_?ána_?žiit_ (late) .

3. Numbers. Give the Arabic equivalents of:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. three years | 8. eight piastres |
| 2. five families | 9. two buildings |
| 3. four weeks | 10. ten days |
| 4. six states | 11. a hundred evenings |
| 5. two years | 12. two weeks |
| 6. how many weeks | 13. three turns |
| 7. seven trips | 14. two cigarettes |

- 15. nine hours
- 16. twenty years
- 17. five minutes
- 18. two families
- 19. eighteen
- 20. how many days

- 21. a hundred pounds
- 22. two days
- 23. one year
- 24. several hours
- 25. twenty minutes

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Ahmad wants to take Mr. Jones to visit a friend.

- A m̄asa_lxéer m̄est̄er_ž̄oons
- J m̄asa_lxeeráat, kíifak_lyòom ?
- A lh̄amdella ş̄anti_mn̄ina u?ənte_šl̄oonak ?
- J řaal_lh̄amdella .
- A ?ž̄iit_?áaxdak lařand_wáaned ?əža_m̄en_yooméen_m̄en ?am̄erka .
- J máa_b?ùul_lá?, hálla?_m̄errùun ?
- A ?íza_k̄ent_f̄aadi !!
- J řáyyeb, wéen_bèeto ?
- A ttraamwáay biwaddfina la?əddáam_lb̄eet .
- J dáxlak rr̄ežžáal_halli_b̄edna_nz̄uro š̄úu_byešt̄égel ?
- A máa_bářef . h̄uwwē_řar̄lo_řář sn̄in_bi?am̄erka .
- J š̄úu_ž̄aaye_yařmel_h̄uwwē_h̄oon ?
- A bz̄enn̄ellak ?əža_layš̄uuf_řéelto .
- J řando_ul̄aad ?
- A halli_bářfo ?ənn̄o_řando_tl̄áate .
- J š̄úu_byešt̄églu ?
- A l̄ekb̄iir_h̄alla? mawž̄ùud_bi?am̄erka biřáawen_?ab̄uu .
- J w̄etn̄een_wéenhon ?
- A b̄ešš̄áam lw̄aaned_l̄ess̄aa_t̄el̄m̄iz w̄ett̄ani_byešt̄égel_nazž̄aar .
- J l̄éeš_m̄aa_byaax̄edhon_m̄ařo l̄amma_byerž̄ař ?
- A bz̄enn̄ellak_h̄éek_b̄èddo_yařmel .

Conversation 2. At the friend's house.

A ssal̄amu_řal̄áyk̄om

Hasan wařal̄áyk̄umu_ssal̄aam, řřáđđalu š̄arfu .

- A nšáalla ?axúuk_belbèet ?
 H náfam . ?áxi_hoon . šárfu .
 A ?ámrak, tfáddal_mèster_žòons .
 S ?àhlan_wasáhlán . šárfu .
 A háa márhaba . lhàmdella_řassaláame t¹
 S ?àlla_isálmak . šlóonak ? šlóon_uláadak ?
 A řaal_ktiir . bhèbb_řárfak řala_mèster_žòons .
 A mèster_žòons břárfak řala_saliim_béek .
 S tšarráfná_fiik .
 J u?ána_byeňšálli_ššáraf .
 S háđrtak_men_?anu_wiláaye_bi?amèerka ?
 J men_kalifóornya .
 S u?ána_mnehniik_kamàan .
 J btářref_sàan_fransiisko ?
 S béeti_fiia .
 J kám_sène_řárlak_bi?amèerka .
 S tmén_sniin .
 H tfáddalu_l?áhwe .
 J mamnúun, šúu_hal?áhwe!² táybe_ktiir !
 A šúu_bet?ùulu_nènzal_řalbàlad_hàlla? ?
 S mniin . brùun_mářkon .

¹ This formula (lhàmdella_řassaláame) is said to someone who has just returned from a long trip or occasionally to someone who has just passed through a dangerous time. Another formula of this kind is nšáalla_řala_saláame which is said to someone about to go on a long trip or about to undergo a serious operation. The usual response to either formula is ?àlla_isálmak.

² šúu_hal?áhwe! = What coffee!

Conversation 3. They go downtown.

- S uhàlla?_mnéen_merrùun ? men_hoon_yemma_mnehniik ?
 J ?àna_lassáani_maa_bařref_ššáam_mniin .
 A merrùun_men_hoon_la?èddám_ssina .
 S šuu_byeňšar_hàalt_lbàlad_mniina .
 J dáxlak_šlóon_lháale_hàlla?_bisàan_fransiisko ?
 S mniina_ktiir .
 J dáxlak_bařref_wàaned ?èsmo_xaliil_byeštègel_táažer_btářfo ?
 S wá?ef_řaliyyi_lašuuf .
 háa_háada_halli_byeštègel_bel?máš ?
 J ?ée_náfam_háada_hùwwe .
 S bařfo_táyyeb .
 J dáxlak_šlóon_hàalto ?
 S ktiir_mniina_uřàndò_uláad_bifaawnúu_bkèlři .
 J ?àlla_ixallíilo_yàahon .
 S ?àlla_yeňfáza .
 J dáxlak ?èbno_lèkbiir_lassáa_telmiiz ?
 S lá? . hùwwe_hàlla?_byeštègel_nažžáar .
 J u?èbno_žžgiir ?
 S bářdo_telmiiz .
 J bálla_xallina_rrùun_nàakol .
 S ?àna_bèddi_?eržar_řalbèet, šarréfná_kamàan .
 J byeňšálli_ššáraf
 S tšəbnu_řala_xéer
 J u?entu_bxèer

³ men_hoon and mnehniik in addition to meaning 'from here' and 'from there' also mean 'this way' or 'over here' and 'that way' or 'over there'.

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔáb (ʔabu-)	father (see Note 3.4)	béet	house
ʔaméerka	America	bláad (f)	country
ʔamiin	Amiin (pers name)	dáxlak	please, excuse me
ʔánu	which	fáadi (adj f fáadye)	empty, free (not busy)
ʔásaf	sorrow	hónne or hénne	they
maʔ_1ʔásaf	unfortunately	húwwe	he
ʔáx (ʔaxu-)	brother (see Note 3.4)	háale (ft)	condition, state
ʔée	yes	hádra (ft)	"presence"
ʔée_náʔam	yes	hádrtak	you, (your "presence")
ʔmáaš	cloth	hóšel	it happened (to someone)
ʔábən (ʔəbn-)	son	-hfaž	keep
ʔásəm (ʔəsm-)	name	-hšal	happen (to someone)
ʔənn-	that	káanet	she was
ʔəntu	you (pl)	kalifóornya	California
ʔəʔit	I came, you came	kám	how many
baabóor	(steam) ship	kbiir (adj)	large, old (of persons)
bálad (f)	city, community	káll	all, every
báʔd	after, later~still	kálši	everything
báʔd_sáaʔa	after an hour, in an hour's time	láazem (adj)	necessary
báʔd bsáaʔa	an hour later (afterwards by an hour)	lása	still, yet
		lásaak_hòon?	are you still here?
báʔdo_təlmiz	he's still a student	mása	evening

mawžúud	present, found	təlmiz	student
máʔrfe (ft pl maʔáaref)	acquaintance, knowledge	-trek or -trok	leave
miit	hundred of (+ sg noun)	tšarráfna	we're honored
méster	Mister	uláad	children
nažžáar	carpenter	wiláaye (ft)	state
režžáal	man	xáaled	Khaled (pr name)
saan fransiisko	San Francisco	xəəwi_smaʔiil	Khedine Ismail
-saafed	help	xéer (pl xeeráat)	well-being, good
afra (ft)	voyage, trip	yaa-	sign of object
sáne (ft pl sniin or sanawáat)	year	yoom (pl (t) ʔiyyáam)	day
stáğfiru_lla	reply to tšarrafna	lyoom	today, the day
suuriyya (f)	Syria	-zuur	visit
šáar	it happened, became	zğiir (adj)	small, young
šárlak	it happened to you	-zənn	think
šáħħa (ft)	health	žáaye (adj f also žáaye)	coming
-šəbən	reach morning, be- come in the morning	žəmʔa (ft pl žəmaʔ)	week
šáraf	honor	ʔáal	fine, excellent
-šarref	honor	-šarref (ʔála)	cause to know, introduce (to)
ššáam (f)	Damascus	ʔéele (ft pl -aat or ʔiyal)	family
-štəğel	work, be busy at	ʔəmr	age
táažer	business man	-ʔref (yaʔref)	know
tmanťáš	eighteen		

Section A. Basic Sentences

girl	bənt
she sits	btə'fod or btə'fod
maid	ʒaansa
1. Do you know a girl I could get for a maid?	hta'rafli_ʒii_bənt btə'fod_ʒaansa ?
2. How old do you want her to be?	'addeʒ_beddak ykuun_ʒəmra ?
between	bēen
3. Between fifteen and twenty.	been_lxamʒaʒ wəʒəʒriin .
she reads	tə'ra
she writes	təktob
4. Do you want her to [be able] to read and write?	beddak_yaaha tə'ra_wtəktob ?
it concerns	bihəmm
she speaks for herself	təkiilha
English	'əngliizi
5. She should speak a little English. (It concerns me that she speak her a little English!)	bihəmmi təkiilha_ʒwayyet_ʒəngliizi .
6. What do you want her to do?	ʒuu_beddak_yaaha_tafmel ?
7. Everything a maid has to do.	kəʒi_laazem tafmlo_ʒʒaansa .
she cooks	təʒbox
8. Do you want her to know how to cook?	beddak_yaaha_tafref_təʒbox ?
she irons	təkwi
she washes	təʒsel or təxsel
laundry	ʒasiil or xasiil
9. I want her to cook and iron and do the laundry.	bəddi_yaaha_təʒbox wtəkwi wtəʒsel_lʒasiil .
she	hiyye
always	dəayman or dəa'iman

clean	ndiif
10. And she'll have to keep the house clean all the time.	whiyye_daayman_laazem_txalli_lbeet_ndiif .
color	lōon
it is necessary	byəlzam
woman	māra
housekeeper	ʒaʒʒiyye
11. In that case, you'll need an older woman to be a housekeeper.	ʒala_halloon byəlzamak_mara_kbiire_wətkuun_ʒaʒʒiyye .
under	tānt
hand	'fid
12. I have one you couldn't beat. (Under my hand there is one than which there is none better!)	tant_ʒiidi waande maa_fii_mənha .
thing, need	ʒarad
work	ʒəʒel
exactly	tamaaman
13. Exactly what the work calls for.	ʒarad_ʒəʒel_tamaaman .
self or same	zāat
required	matluub
14. That's just what I need.	zaati, haada_matluubi .
I give back to you	rəddəllak
15. Fine. I'll see her and let you know.	tayyeb . ranaʒəflak_yaaha_wrəddəllak_xabar .
but	lāaken
she gets satisfied	bʒərda
cheap	rxiiʒ
16. But I don't think she'll take too little.	laaken_maa_bzənnəllak_yaaha_bʒərda_bərxiiʒ .
it means	yāʒni
approximately	ta'riiban
17. Well, about how much will she want?	yāʒni, 'addeʒ_bədhə_tə'riiban ?
until	hātta

Section B. Pronunciation

1. The velar spirants (x, ġ)

The consonant sounds represented in our spelling by x and ġ are not very similar to any English sounds. As briefly described in the Pronunciation Section of Unit 1, they sound like clearing the throat and gargling, respectively. To make them you raise the back part of the tongue as though you were going to make a k (as in "kit") or g (as in "get"), but instead of stopping off the air stream completely as for k and g, you just narrow the passage and let the air through. In other words k is a stop and x is the corresponding spirant. As with other speech sounds the best way to learn is to listen to the Guide and mimic him, practicing until you sound just like him. If you are listening to records, the x will sound more like the h than it is in actual speech so that you must be very careful to keep the two sounds quite distinct. Here are some examples of x:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

xébz	'bread'	txúut	'beds'
xátt	'line'	met'áxxer	'delayed, late'
xámse	'five'	táaxod	'you take'
xéer	'well-being'	'áx	'brother'

The ġ sound is not very common in Arabic. So far you have met only a few words with ġ. Here are some examples of words with ġ.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

ġárad	'thing, need'	dáġri	'straight'
ġasíil	'laundry'	šáġl or šáġel	'work'
ġéer	'other'	táġsel	'she washes'
byəštáġel	'he works'	zġíir	'small, young'

2. Mid front vowel (e, ee)

The vowel sound represented by e, ee in the spelling is similar to the vowel sound of English words like they, great, bay, etc. There are two major differences, however, between the Arabic e, ee and the similar English vowels: (1) the Arabic vowel is "pure", that is, without any y-glide at the end; and (2) the Arabic vowel comes both short and long, while the English vowel is always relatively long.

If you listen carefully while you say a word like they, bay, Wayne, you will notice that the position of your vocal apparatus changes while you are saying the vowel. Your tongue starts in a position somewhat like the position it is in for the e of bed and then shifts to the y-position which it has for the y of boy, high (really ha-y) etc. In Arabic words like falee 'on him', ween 'where' there is no shift like this; you make a sound with the tongue a little higher in the front of the mouth than for the e of bed and then you HOLD IT without allowing your tongue to slide up into the y-position. Listen to the following Arabic words and compare them with the English words given beside them which have a similar vowel sound. Notice that the English vowel is sometimes a little shorter than the Arabic vowel (e.g. lake, fate), sometimes as long as or longer than the Arabic ee (e.g. Wayne, male). The Arabic double ee is about the same length in all words. Pay attention to all the differences and imitate the Arabic ee carefully.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

Arabic	meeting	similar English word
ʕméel	'do'	a <u>ma</u> le
wéen	'where'	<u>Way</u> ne
ʔotéel	'hotel'	no <u>fa</u> il
léera	'pound'	sh <u>are</u> a
ʕaléek	'on you'	a <u>la</u> ke
hék	'so'	<u>ac</u> he
lféet	'turn'	ill <u>fa</u> te

In Damascus Arabic, in addition to the long (double) ee, there is also a very short single e. It is simply the Arabic ee cut very short. There is no sound like this in English and you will have to practice this a great deal in order not to hold it too long. Here are examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FOUR

sétte	'six'
kbíire	'old (fem)'
ʕaššíyye	'cook' (fem)
žáaye	'coming'
húwwe	'he'

lázem	'necessary'
wáahed	'one'
bisáafed	'he helps'
btáafref	'she knows'
btéğsel	'she washes'

This short e is especially hard at the end of a word where the English speaker has a tendency either to hold it too long (then it sounds like ee to the Arab) or have his tongue too high (then it sounds like i to the Arab). Here are some words ending in e, ee, and i for practice:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FIVE

sátte	'six'	ʕéele	'family'
sátti	'my grandmother'	ʕalée	'on him'
báddi	'I want'	ʔánte	'you (masc)'
*mádde	'period of time'	ʔánti	'you (fem)'

3. Automatic word-stress.

Whenever an Arabic word is said by itself one syllable is louder than the others, i.e. one syllable has primary stress (´). The position of this loudest syllable in an isolated word is almost completely automatic: you can almost always tell where the primary stress will fall from the combinations of consonants and vowels in the word.

(a) If a word consists of only one syllable, the primary stress falls on that syllable, no matter what consonants and vowels compose it. Examples: béet 'house', xébz 'bread', múu 'it is not', kbíir 'large'.

(b) For a word of more than one syllable, if there are no long vowels in the word, and no clusters of two or three consonants together after a vowel anywhere in the word, the primary stress is on the first syllable. Examples: séne 'year', wára 'behind', bálad 'city', ktébu 'write (pl)', *kátabu 'they wrote', *xádari 'grocer'.

(c) In all other words the automatic primary stress falls on the LONG VOWEL OR VOWEL FOLLOWED BY TWO OR THREE CONSONANTS NEAREST THE END OF THE WORD. Examples: maḥáll 'place', waráa 'behind him', baládna 'our city', baabóor 'ship', maḥrífak 'your acquaintance', bináam 'he sleeps', bišúufu 'they see', bišuuufúu 'they see him', bišuuufúuna 'they see us', raḥayesʔalúuki 'they're going to ask you (fem)'.

In words of the kinds described under (a) (b) (c) the word-stress is automatic. From Unit 7 on, automatic primary stress will not be marked when a word is cited alone, as in the build-up of new words before each Basic Sentence.

(d) In a few words the primary stress is on the next to the last syllable even though the vowel of that syllable is short and is followed by a single consonant. Examples: byəštégel 'he works', raḥanəṣal 'we're going to arrive', *saaafadəto 'she helped him', *yatára 'I wonder'.

In words of this kind the stress is non-automatic and will always be marked.

When a word occurs with other constituents in a phrase, it may have the primary stress on the same syllable as when the word is in isolation, or it may have a secondary stress (˘) on that syllable, or it may have no stressed syllable at all. This matter of PHRASE-STRESS will be discussed in Unit 11.

Section C. Analysis

Note 4.1 In Units 1, 2, and 3 you learned the endings -i, -ni; -ak, -k; -o; -na; -kon; -hon. In this Unit you learn the remaining endings of this kind. Study the following forms which occurred in the Basic Sentences of this Unit:

ʕémrḥa	her age	raḥatšúufḥa	you're going to see her
mənḥa	from her	tənkíilḥa	she speaks for her
bádḥa	she wants	yáaḥa	her
ʕánḥa	about her	fíiḥa	in it (fem)

The suffix for "her" is -ha. Now study the following forms which also occurred in the Basic Sentences of this Unit:

ʔəsmek	your (fem) name	ʔáhlek	your (fem) folks
--------	-----------------	--------	------------------

The suffix for "you, your" when speaking to a girl or woman is -ek. You now know all the suffixes. Here are several examples:

báddi	I want	ʔəddáami	in front of me
béddak	you want	ʔəddáamak	in front of you
báddek	you (fem) want	ʔəddáamek	in front of you (fem)
báddo	he wants	ʔəddáamo	in front of him

bédha	she wants	?eddáamha	in front of her
bédna	we want	?eddáamna	in front of us
bédkon	you (pl) want	?eddáamkon	in front of you (pl)
bédhon	they want	?eddáamhon	in front of them

Note 4.2 Suffix alternants. As mentioned in Note 3, some of the pronominal suffixes have alternant forms. Study the following examples:

masáayi	my evening	fiiyi (=fiiyi)	in me
masáak	your evening	fiiik	in you
masáaki	your (fem) evening	fiiiki	in you (fem)

You have learned that the "you" suffix is -ak after a consonant and -k after a vowel. Likewise the "my" and "your (fem)" suffixes have one alternant (-i, -ek) after a consonant, and another alternant (-yi, -ki) after a vowel. Notice that the vowel is always doubled before the ending is added. This is true in general: a word ending in a vowel doubles the vowel when any suffix is added. Here are further examples:

- (1) baŋtiik_leertéen . I'll give you two pounds.
 baŋtiiki_leertéen . I'll give you (fem) two pounds.
 baŋtiikon_leertéen . I'll give you (pl) two pounds;
- (2) lassáak_bəlbéet ? Are you still at home?
 lassáaki_bəlbéet ? Are you (fem) still at home?
- (3) bxalliiik_trúuh . I'll let you go.
 bxalliiiki_trúuhi . I'll let you (fem) go.

As mentioned in Note 3.6, the word "on me" is unusual: it is ʔaliyyi instead of the expected *ʔaléeyi (like ʔaléek, ʔaléeki).

Note 4.3 In previous Units you learned most of the prefixes of the Prefix Tense. In this unit you learn the last one. Study these forms which appeared in the Basic Sentences:

btéʔod	she sits, stays	tékwí	she irons, presses
tkáun	she will be	txálli	she keeps, leaves
téŋki	she speaks		
táɤmel	she does		
tétbox	she cooks		

The prefix for "she" is t(ə)-. As you know, the prefix for "you (masculine)" is also t(ə)-. This means that the second person masculine singular form and the third person feminine singular form of the Prefix Tense are always IDENTICAL.

The following second person feminine singular forms appeared in the Basic Sentences:

təštégli	you (fem) work
btáɤrfi	you (fem) know
tétboxi	you (fem) cook
trátbi	you (fem) arrange
tnáami	you (fem) sleep

The "you" forms of the Prefix Tense used when speaking to a girl or woman have the "you" masculine prefix t(ə)- plus a feminine ending -i added to the word. Note that the stem vowel in such forms behaves the same way it does in the plural forms described in Note 3.2, i.e. -a- remains, -e- and -o- are dropped. Here are the "he", "she", and "you" (fem) forms of the new verbs in this Unit. You will have no trouble making the corresponding forms of other verbs you know.

<u>he</u>	<u>she</u>	<u>you (fem)</u>	<u>meaning</u>
yéʔod	téʔod	téʔdi	sit, stay
yéktob	téktob	téktbi	write
yélzam	télzam	télzami	be needed, necessary
yémsah	témsah	témsahi	wipe
yéštégel	téštégel	téštégli	work
yéʔállém	téʔállém	téʔállami	learn
		tətʔállami	

<u>he</u>	<u>she</u>	<u>you (fem)</u>	<u>meaning</u>
yəṭbox	təṭbox	təṭbxi	cook
yəmken	-----	-----	be possible
yəḡsel	təḡsel	təḡsli	wash
yəs'al	təs'al	təs'ali	ask
yestriih	təstriih	təstriihi	rest, be seated
ihémm	thémm	thémmi	be important
ikátter	tkátter	tkátri	increase
ináam	tnáam	tnáami	sleep
irédd	trédd	tréddi	return, give back
irátteb	trátteb	trátbi	arrange

Note 4.4 Verb stems ending in a vowel. In Units 1-4 there have been a few examples of prefix tense verb stems ending in a vowel. For example:

	<u>word</u>	<u>meaning</u>	<u>stem</u>
2.5	...nestánna...	we wait	-stanna
4.4	...té'ra...	she reads	-'ra
4.9	...utəkwi...	and she irons	-kwi
4.10	...txállli...	she keeps, leaves	-xalli
4.33	...tsáawi...	she makes	-saawi
2.12	...biwáddi...	it leads	-waddi
3.35	...rahanəb'a...	we're going to stay	-b'a
1.10	...btəhki	you speak	-hki
4.16	...btərda	she gets	-rda

Verbs of this kind are fairly numerous in Arabic. The stem ends in -a or -i:

-'ra, -b'a, -rda, -stanna
-hki, -kwi, -xalli, waddi, saawi

When the -i for feminine or -u for plural is added to these stems the -a or -i of the stem is dropped. So, the forms are:

<u>he</u>	<u>they</u>	<u>you</u>	<u>you (fem)</u>	<u>you (pl)</u>
byə'ra	byə'ru	btə'ra	btə'ri	btə'ru
byəb'a	byəb'u	btəb'a	btəb'i	btəb'u
byərda	byərdu	btərda	btərđi	btərdu
byəstánna	byəstánnu	btəstánna	btəstánni	btəstánnu
byəhki	byəhku	btəhki	btəhki	btəhku
byəkwi	byəkwi	btəkwi	btəkwi	btəkwi
bixállli	bixálllu	bətxállli	bətxállli	bətxálllu
biwáddi	biwáddu	bətwáddi	bətwáddi	bətwáddu
bisáawi	bisáawu	bətsáawi	bətsáawi	bətsáawu

Notice that when the stem ends in -i the second person masculine and feminine are identical (e.g. btəhki).

The prefix tense stem of the verb "come" is -ži and the full set of forms is:

	m.	f.	p.
you	btəži	btəži	btəžu
he, she, they	byəži	btəži	byəžu
I, we	bəži	-	mnəži

Note 4.5 Study the -l- suffixes in the following forms which have appeared in Units 1-4:

wa'əflkon	I stop (for you)	ixallfilo	may he keep (for him)
bta'réfli	you know (for me)		
bəs'allak	I'll ask (for you)	təhkiilha	she speaks for her

The suffix -l- is added to verb forms and has the meaning 'to, for'. The pronominal suffixes -i, -ak, -ek, etc. are then added to the -l-. Note that although this is a verb the "me" ending is -i and not -ni. The -l- suffix is added to any verb form. In certain cases, however, either the verb form or the -l- suffix has a special alternant, as in the following examples:

Verb form	Verb form with -l-	Meaning
šáar	šárli	it happened to me
žíib	žébli	bring me
lašúuf	lašéflak	so that I see for you
bzénn	bzənnéllak	I think for you
rédđ	rəddéllak	I return to you

In verb forms having a long (double) vowel before the last consonant the vowel is shortened when the -l- suffix is added. If the vowel is aa (e.g. šáar) it is shortened to a (šárġak); if it is ii or uu (e.g. žíib, lašuuf) it is shortened to ə (žəbli, lašəflak).

With verb forms ending in a double consonant the -l- suffix has the alternant -all- (e.g. bzénn, bzənnéllak). Here are further examples of verb forms with the -l- suffix. Study them carefully until you are sure you can repeat the sentences without hesitation and until you understand the form with the -l- suffix.

- 1) ?éemta_bətšəfli_lbənt ? When will you see the girl for me?
- 2) ššàanfa_bətrat_təbġkon_ttxùut . The maid will make the beds for you (pl).
- 3) bədna_yáaha_təmsəhlna_l?árd . We want her to wash the floor.
- 4) šúu_bət?əllo ? What will you tell him?
- 5) šəflo_yáaha . See her for him.
- 6) btafréflo_šii_bənt ? Do you know a girl for him?
- 7) bařməllo_lmařrúuf . I'll do him the favor.
- 8) bžəblak_yáaha_bəkra ? Shall I bring it (fem) to you tomorrow?
- 9) bšəflak_yáaha . I'll see her for you.
- 10) šúu_bədkon_?ətbəxlkon ? What do you want me to cook for you?
- 11) bi?əllo_mərra_táanye . He'll tell him again.
- 12) b?əlha_hèek . I'll tell her so.

This -l- suffix on verbs is another form of the preposition or prefix la- 'to' which may be used with both nouns and verbs. This preposition has the following alternants:

lə - before l- 'the'

?əl - before pronoun endings

la - is used everywhere else

Examples:	labéeti	'to my house'
	ləlbéet	'to the house'
	la?áħmad	'to Ahmad'
	?əlo	'to him'
	lanšúuf	'to see = so that we see'
	lahniik	'(to) there'

Here are additional sentences:

1. ?əža_lablāadna_layzúurha . He came to our country to visit it.
2. bətrúuħ_māfi_ləlmātřam ? Will you go to the restaurant with me?
3. bəkra_řaħa_?əktob_la?əxi . Tomorrow I'm going to write to my brother.
4. lawéen_bədkon_trúuħu ? Where do you (pl) want to go?
5. ?əxi_byéřal_lahòon_bářd_bəkra . My brother will get here day after tomorrow.
6. rúuħ_dəğri_latšúuf_lbinaaye . Go straight ahead to see the building.
7. men_hoon_ləlməřze_fii_néřř_sāařa_bəlbāař . From here to the Marje is a half hour by bus.
8. laazəmni_kām_ğəřad_ləlbéet . I need a few things for the house.
9. halwāra?a_laméen ? ?əli . Whose ticket is this? Mine.
10. ?əlak_řaliyyi_kúun_hniik_bářd_sāařa . I promise you to be there in an hour.
11. ?áħmad_bəddo_yéži_lařanna . Ahmad wants to come to our house.
12. bářti_lakéll_wāħed_leertéen . I'll give everyone two pounds.

13. ʔálo_māfi ʔəšriin_lêera . I owe him twenty pounds.
14. šúu_bəthəbbu_təšrābu ? ʔáli_bīira What would you (pl) like to drink?
uʔálo_ʔāhwe . A beer for me and coffee for him.

Note 4.6 In Syrian Arabic there is a prefix meaning 'going to' which may be added to the forms of the Prefix Tense. Here are examples from Basic Sentences:

- 2.34 nāma_rahanəbʔa hoon_hawāali_ We're going to stay here about two
saaftéen . hours.
- 4.15 táyyeb . ranašəflak_yáaha Fine. I'm going to see her and let
urəddəllak_xábar . you know.
- 4.19 ʔéemta_ranašúufha ? When are you going to see her?

Notice that this prefix like la- 'to, in order to' is added directly to the forms of the Prefix Tense without the b- prefix, and is completely unstressed. The form of the prefix given in the sentences you have learned is rana-. This is not the only form of the "going to" prefix. You will hear ran-, lana-, lan-, and na- in Syrian Arabic. Sometimes the same speaker will one time say one and another time another. The use of the particular prefix may also depend on the place--people from Damascus more often use lana- or lan-, people from Beirut usually use ran-. Notice that, as in English, the prefix is not repeated for two verbs in a row (see sentence 4.15). Here are five more examples:

- 1) šúu_lanatašmel ? What are you going to do?
- 2) lanəhki_šarabi máfo . We're going to speak Arabic with him.
- 3) ʔéemta_lanayəsʔálha ? When's he going to ask her?
- 4) lanayəštəglu šando . They're going to work for him (at his place).
- 5) ʔabúu_lanayʔallo . His father's going to tell him.

Note 4.7 The Arabic word šii 'thing' has a variety of uses. Here are Basic Sentences with šii:

- 2.21 šúu_hāada ? šii_ktiir . What's that? It's a little steep.
- 3.33 šii_šaal . Pretty good.
- 3.38 bisaaʔdu_ʔabúuhon_šii ... ? Do they help their father ...?
- 4.1 btašrefli_šii_bént ... ? Do you know a girl ...?
- 4.7 kəlši_lāazem tāšmlo_ššaanfa . Everything a maid has to do.

When šii is used by itself or as a suffix (e.g. kəlši) it can often be translated 'thing'. It is often used before another word in the meaning 'some, somewhat, some ... or other' and may be translated in a variety of ways (e.g. pretty good, a little steep, a girl). Also, šii is sometimes used at the end of a question where it seems to "tone down" the question and make it a little less abrupt. In cases like that there is usually no English equivalent, (e.g. sentence 3.38). The following are additional examples of šii:

- 1) ʔatīni_šii_xáms_leerāt . Give me about five pounds.
- 2) ʔaddées_ʔəmro ? --šii_ʔəšriin_səne . How old is he? About twenty.
- 3) šii_rxiis . Pretty cheap.
- 4) lanaʔəsʔal_šii_bént šanno . I'm going to ask some girl about him.
- 5) btašref_ʔaxúuhon_šii ? Do you know their brother?
- 6) rahanəbʔa_šii_kám_yoom . We're going to stay a few days.

Note 4.8 Formulas. Several Arabic formulas correspond to English "please". Six such formulas have appeared in Basic Sentences:

- 1.15 betražžáak_ʔəhki_šala_máhlak . Please speak slowly.
- 1.16 šméel_mašrúuf_šiid_yalli_ʔəlto . Please repeat what you said.
- 2.19 tfáddalu . Please (get into the taxi).
- 2.31 bállā_máʔak_kmāalet_xáms_leerāt ? (Please) do you have change for five pounds?
- 2.34 tfáddal . Here (=please, handing the man the five pound note).
- 3.34 dáxlak_kiif_ulāado . (Please) how are his children?
- 3.46 tfáddalu_šarfúuna_šalbèet . Please come to see us.
- 4.23 tfáddalu_striimu . Please have a seat.

When you ask someone to do something the Arabic expression for please is usually šméel_mašrúuf or betražžáak. On the other hand, if you are offering someone else a service, the Arabic expression is tfáddal or, especially in Damascus, šárref. This is used, for example, whenever you hand someone something, offer someone something to eat, request someone to be seated or go ahead of you, etc. Finally dáxlak and bállā are used when you're asking for information, such as "How are their children?" "Where is his office?" etc. In addition, dáxlak and bállā are sometimes used as more informal equivalents of šméel_mašrúuf and betražžáak. Note that all these expressions have special forms for feminine and plural.

Sample sentences:

1. ʔméel_maʔrùuf ʔəbli_ʔwàyyet_xəbz . Please bring me some bread.
2. bətražžáak lféet_mən_hòon . Please turn this way.
3. ʔméel_maʔrùuf ʔəhki_ʔwáyye_ʔwáyye . Please speak slowly.
4. bətražžáak ʔiid_kəlši_ʔəlto . Please repeat everything you said.
5. ʔméel_maʔrùuf rúuh_màfo latšúufu_ʔáhhmad. Please go with him and see Ahmad.
6. tfáddal_ʔəddàami . Please (go) ahead of me.
7. šárréf . stríih . Please have a seat.
8. tfáddal_laʔándi . Please (come) to my house.
9. tfáddal_màʔna ʔassíinama . Please (come) with us to the movies.
10. tfáddal . háyy_luraaʔ . Here are the papers.
11. tfáddal šárréfna_ʔalbèet . Please come to see us.
12. tfáddal ʔəhki . Please (go ahead and) speak (it's your turn).
13. dáxlak šlóon_lhàale_hàllaʔ_bəššáam ? (Please) how's the situation in Damascus?
14. dáxlak féen_lmhaṭtaʔ ? And where's the station?
15. bálla ʔatíini_lwàraʔa . Would you mind giving me the paper, please.

Sometimes dáxlak or bálla may be translated simply 'and' or 'by the way' since we often don't say "please" in asking information in English.

In Note 1.1 it was pointed out that many formulas have a stereotyped response. Several important responses of this kind have appeared in Units 1-4. One of them is ʔàlla isálmak 'God keep you in safety'. This is used as a response to many formulas, chiefly to those containing the words saláam or saláame. The saláam(e) is echoed in the verb isálle. Responses of this kind will be called echoic and will be discussed with further examples in later Units. Examples:

1. maʔ_ssaláame . Goodbye (said by person staying).
--ʔàlla_isálmak . --Goodbye.
2. lhàmdella_ʔassaláame . I'm glad to see you're back safely.
--Thank you.

3. nšaalla_mənšuufak_bəssalaame .
--ʔàlla_isálmak .
4. šúu_šàrlo ? saláamto !
--ʔàlla_isálmak .

I hope you get back safely and we see you again. ("God willing we see you in safety.")
--Thank you.

What happened to him? I hope everything turns out all right ("His safety!")
--Thank you.

Section D. Exercises

1. Transformation sentences. The following sentences are all in the third person masculine, the "he" form. Read through them, make sure you understand them, and then go through them again changing all the forms to feminines, i.e. replacing "he" with "she".

1. byəʔra_ʔàrabí .
2. byəštáğel_maʔ_ʔaxùu .
3. byəktob_laʔabúu_uʔəmmo .
4. byəži_màʔna ʔassíinama .
5. bisáafed_ʔaxúu_nnažžàar .
6. byəkwi_lğasiil .
7. byéržaʔ_ʔalbèet .
8. byáakol_bəlmátʔam .
9. byəʔmel_kəlši_mniih .
10. byəšrab_bíira_bəlʔəhwe .
11. byəhki_ʔàrabí_ʔáyyeb .
12. byəʔlaʔ_máʔna .
13. byaʔʔíina_leertèen .
14. biʔúul_ʔəнно_ʔaxùu_múu_žàaye .
15. byəʔʔállam_lʔàrabí .
16. byənzəl_bəlmàrže .
17. bihəbb_ʔəhlo_ktíir .

18. biṣāawen_ʔabū lamma_bikūun_fāadi .
 19. biṣīib_ḡrāado men_ṣānd_xaliil .
 20. biṣūuf_ʔəmmo kēll_ḡəmfa .

2. Transformation sentences B. Change these questions from second person masculine to feminine, then answer them. Don't forget to use feminine forms of adjectives when appropriate.

1. btāṣref_təṭbox_tābx_ṣārabi ?
2. ʔéemta_bətkūun_fāadi ?
3. šūu_rana tāṣmel_bəkra ?
4. māṣ_mīin_bətrūun_ləhniik ?
5. šūu_ʔəsmak ?
6. kiif_hāalak ?
7. bəthəbb_təṣāllam_frənsāawi ?
8. šūu_bəddak_tsāawi ?
9. btāṣref_təʔra ?
10. bəthəbb_təbʔa_hoon ?
11. btəhki_ʔəngliizi_šii ?
12. nšāalla_mabṣūut ?
13. lawēen_bəddak_trūun ?
14. kām_yōom_ranātəʔod_ṣāndhon ?
15. ʔānu_sāafa_btəži ?
16. ṣānd_mīin_bəthəbb_təštəḡel ?

3. Questions and Answers.

1. wēen_btəštəḡel ?
2. ʔéemta_biṣīibu_ləḡrāad ?

3. šūu_bəddak_yāaha_tāṣmel ?
4. ʔənti wēen_tṣāllāmti_təʔri_utəktbi ?
5. ʔéemta_ranātərḡāfu ?
6. mīin_ranaysāawi_ttāxt ?
7. ʔéemta_ranātšūufha ?
8. kām_sāafa_btəbʔu_hoon ?
9. ʔaddéš_ṣəmrak ?
10. laʔānu_bəet_mərrūun ?
11. ʔənte ʔéemta ʔžiit ?
12. wēen_bəddak_tnāam ?
13. ʔéemta_ranātəži ?
14. ṣānd_mīin_bədkon_təštəḡlu ?
15. bʔaddéš_halḡrāad ?
16. šūu_bədo_yāahon_yāṣmlu ?
17. fhəmt_ṣalēena ?
18. ʔaxūuk wēen bəddo ināam ?
19. ʔānu_tābx_bəthəbb_ʔāktar ? lʔafrānži yəmma_lṣārabi ?
20. mīin_ʔāṣed_ṣāndkon ?

4. Sentence building. Make up five sentences containing each expression below, that is a total of twenty-five sentences:

1. ṣāla_halloon 'in that case'
2. taʔriiban 'about, approximately'
3. bāss 'only, but'
4. léek 'behold!, etc.'
5. yāṣni 'that is, well'

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Two friends meet.

J. márnaba_yaa_?ámmad .

A. marnabtéen . kiif_şşáanna ?

J. mníina . u?ènte_kiif_háalak ?

A. íaal . lawéen_bèddak_trúun_hállaa? ?

J. bèddi_şúuf_rəžžáal_rúun_máfo_şúuf_béet .

A. xéer_nşáalla ? şuu_bèddak_tètrok_l?otéel ?

J. ?ée_náfam . ?əžžani_xábar_mən_márti, lanatəşal_báfd_žəmfa .

A. íala_hallóon_byəlzamak_şşaanfa .

J. ?ée, dáxlak . btaírefli_şii_wáande_mníina ?

?ána_máa_báíref_báss_bžənnéllak_şaanéíti_btáíref .

J. láaken_bèddi_wáande_táíref_tənki_şwáyyet_?ənglíizi .

A. ?ána_b?élha_héek .

J. kátter_xéerak . hálla?_láazem_rúun . xáatrak .

A. maí_ssaláame .

J. ?állaa_íşálmak .

Conversation 2. They meet again later.

A. mása_lxéer .

J. mása_lxeeráat, şúu_şşaar_máíak ?

A. şaanéíti_bet?úul_fii_tánt_?íidha_wáande_mníina .

J. híyye_hállaa? ?áafde_şand_háada_şii ?

A. náfam . báss_lanatotrok_nnáas_hállaa_?áafde_şandhon .

fii_şandhon_uláad_ktiir .

J. ?éemta_bèddak_džíiba ?

A. yémken_yáa_békra_yáa_báífd_békra .

J. láa_twaaxəzni ?ána_ktiir_mamnúnak .

A. stáğfiru_lláa . ?ána_bèddi_ğárad_?əlak .¹

J. ?állaa_yənfazak .

Conversation 3. Jones interviews the maid.

A. háyy_lbənt_yalli_?əltéllak_íanha .

J. tfáddalu_stríinu, şúu_?əsmek_yaa_bənti ?

N. nabíiha_yaa_béek .

J. ?addééş_íəmmrek ?

N. íəşríin_səne .

J. btáíerfi_yaa_nabíiha ?ána_?amerkáani . bənki_íarabi_şwáyye_báss_márti_máa_btənki_íarabi_?ábadan .

N. háada_máa_bihəmm_yaa_béek ?ána_báíref_şwáyyet_?ənglíizi . ubé?ra_ubéktob_íarabi_táyyeb .

J. héek_íaal, wəşlóonek_bşəğl_lbéet ?

N. wálla_yaa_béek_máa_bèddi_?ənki_ían_háali . láaken_b?éllak_?ənni_báíref_kélşii_btáímló_şşaanfa .

A. yaa_nabíiha, márt_məstər_ždons_mára_ndíife_ktiir_ubəthəbb_ikúun_béetha_dáa?iman_ndíif .

N. m?ákkad, u?ána_?əlkon_íaliyyi_?əştáğel_mníin .

J. yaa_nabíiha_btáíerfi_təţbxi_təţbx_?afránzi ?

N. báíref_şwáyye, láaken_yaa_béek_təţbəx_múu_şəğl_şşaanfa . ?iza_bəthəbb_b?úul_la?əmmi_təži_təţbox .

la?ánha_híyye_íaşşíyye_mníina .

J. wəlgásiil ?

J. ?ána_yaa_béek_bəğsel_ubəkwi_ubəmsan_wəbsáawi_ttxúut . yáíni_káll_şəğl_lbéet .

¹?ána_bèddi_ğárad_?əlak . I want to do something for you.



- J. táyyeb mniiH . ?addées_bèddek_bəššàhr ?
 N. hálli_btaftii bikúun_mniiH .
 J. lá? . bèddi ?áref . láazem_t?úuli_?énti .
 N. xamsiin_lèera .
 J. mniiH, baftiiki káll ?áwwal_šàhr .²
 ?énti_bethèbbi_tnàami_šanna wèlla_šand_?àhlek ?
 N. šandkon_?ánsan bàss_brúunbšúuf_?ánli bəššàhr_màrra .
 J. šaal . ?àna_bèddi_yáakibàšd_šii žəmštèen .
 N. ?ámrak_yaa_bèek . xáatrak .
 J. maš_ssaláame .

²káll ?áwwal_šàhr 'the first of every month'.

		<u>Section G.</u>	<u>Vocabulary</u>	
?áafed (f ?áafde)	sitting	hiyye	she	
?afránži (adj)	Western, European, Occidental	háda	anyone	
?áhl	people	háтта	until	
?ánsan	better	-katter	increase	
?árd (f)	ground, floor	kénti	you (fem) were	
?éemta	when	-ktob	write	
?énti	you (fem)	-kwi	iron	
?íid (f; pl ?idéen, ?ayáadi)	hand	láaken	but	
?émm (f; pl ?émmáat or ?émmaháat)	mother	lakáan	therefore, then, of course	
?engliizi (adj)	English	lóon	color, form	
-?ra	read	šála_hallóon	according to that, in that case	
-?šod or šod	sit down, stay	-lzam	be necessary	
báss	only, but, when	m?ákkad (adj)	certain, certainly	
békra	tomorrow	mára (ft; pl nəs_wáan)	woman, wife	
bént (f; pl banáat)	girl, daughter, maid	márra (ft)	time	
dáayman or dáa?iman	always, frequently	maṭlúub	requested, required	
frənsáawi (adj)	French	-mbešet	be happy	
šárad	thing, need	míin or méen	who, whom	
šasiil or xasiil	laundry	-mken	be possible	
-šsel or -xsel	wash	yémken	it's possible, maybe	
-həmm	concern, be of importance to	-msah	wipe	
		-naam	sleep	

náas (pl)	people	yáa ... yáa	either ... or
nabíiha	Nabiha (pr. name)	záat	self, same
ndíif (adj)	clean	faššíyye (ft)	housekeeper, cook
-rda	be satisfied (b-with)	-fni	mean, signify
-redd	give back, bring back, return (something)	yáfni	it means, that is; well, mmm...
rxíiṣ (adj)	cheap, reasonable		
-saawi	do, make		
-striih	rest, be seated		
-s'al	ask		
ṣaanfa (ft; pl -aat or ṣennáaf)	maid		
šáhr	month		
šéḡl	work, job		
ta'riiban	approximately		
tánt	under, underneath, down		
tamáaman	perfectly, exactly		
táxt (pl txúut)	bed		
-tṣallam	learn		
ṭábx	cooking		
-ṭbox	cook		
wállā	(by God), indeed, certainly		
wállā	or		

UNIT 4 - Additional Sentences

1. benti zḡḡiire lessaaha telmiize || My little girl is still a student.
2. 'emmi betnaam ssaafa fašara lmasa. || My mother goes to sleep at ten p. m.
3. ṣaanṣ'atna maa btafref laa te'ra || Our maid doesn't know how to read or
wlaa tektob || write.
4. ba'fd šwayye beržaf baakol || I'll come back and eat in a little while.
5. xaliil beḏdo iwaddi lfawaaki faalbeet || Khalil wants to take the fruit home.
6. laazmak faššíyye ṭeṭbox ṭabx farabi || You need a housekeeper to cook Arabic
w'afrañzi || and European style.
7. lbeet lyoom muu ndiif || The house isn't clean today.
8. halla? ṣṣaanfa bteži wbetsaawii || The maid will come and do it right away.
9. byetlafabi'iidha ṭeṭbox ? || Will she be able to cook? (Will it go
up in her hand that she cook?)
10. lakaan, bteṭbox mniin || Sure, she cooks well.
11. stannaani tant halla? benzal || Wait for me downstairs, I'll be right
down.
12. 'emha mara kbiire maa bte'der || Her mother's an old woman. She can't
teṭbox || " cook.
13. šuu beḏzenn xaliil byeržaf yeži mafna || What do you think? Will Khalil be
willing to come with us?
14. nšalla beži webzuurak maf 'abi || I hope I can come and visit you with my
father.
15. 'iza bteržaf beššahr fešrin leera || If she'll be satisfied with 20 pounds a
b'kuun mniin || month, that'll be fine.
16. laa twaaxezni 'ana t'axxart ktiir || Excuse me, I'm quite late.
17. 'eemta beḏdo yeržaf men safirto || When will he come back from his trip?
18. mafak taṭtiini fašr leeraat ? || Can you give me ten pounds?
19. breḏellak yaahon ba'fd žemfa || I'll give it back to you in a week.
20. marto beḏha beet kbiir || His wife wants a large house.
21. bte'der taaxod halḡraad faalbeet ? || Can you take these things home?
22. nabiiha ndiife ktiir bšéḡlha || Nabiha is very clean in her work.
23. bass byelzam tafref tekwi mniin || But she'll have to know how to iron well.

24. m'akkad 'iza bta'raf 'engliizi
bikuun 'ansan || Of course if you know English it will
be better.
25. beddak taakol hoon wella hniik ? Do you want to eat here or over there?
26. zaat ššii hoon wella hniik || It's all the same - here or there.
27. byezhar bedha tetrok la'anno ššeg'el
kt'ir || It looks as though she wants to leave
because there's too much work.
28. ta'riiban kām yoom beddak tē'fod
bbeerut ? Approximately how many days do you want
to stay in Beirut?
29. 'addeš beddak ikuun f'emrha ? How old you want her to be?
30. bihemni ššeg'el 'aktar mn'el'emr || I'm more concerned about work than
about age.
31. 'ana daa'iman baakol bihal ma'f'am || I always eat in this restaurant.
32. hal'maaš loono muu mniir || The color of this cloth is no good.
33. kelši b'ellak yaa laazem ta'mlo || Everything I tell you, you have to do.
34. lbass byemro' men 'eddaam baabna || The bus passes in front of our door.
35. tfaddalu lafanna bekra || Come and see us tomorrow.
36. žebila waande tsaa'edha || Bring her someone (fem.) to help her.
37. hayy 'awwal marra beži fiha 'ala
hassinama || This is the first time I have gone to
this movie.

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | | |
|---|------------------------|---|
| | morning | šabáan |
| 1. Good morning, Abu Afif. | | šabaan_lxeer 'abu_fafif . |
| | light | núur |
| | sir | siidi |
| 2. Good morning, sir. | | šabaan_nnuur yaa_siidi . |
| | service | xédme |
| 3. What can I do for you? | | 'amr . xédme |
| | vegetables | xédra |
| | fresh | táaza |
| 4. Are your vegetables fresh today? | | taaza_xédrtak lyoom ? |
| | I contain | bəhwa |
| | shop | dəkkáan or dəkkáane |
| 5. You know I keep only fresh things
in my shop. | | bta'rafni yaa_beek maa_bəhwa_bdəkkaanti
'ella_ttaaza . |
| | from where | mnéen |
| 6. Where do you get your vegetables? | | mneen_bedžiib xédrtak ? |
| | places | mahalláat |
| 7. From the best places in town. | | men_'ansan_lmahallaat bihalbalad . |
| | prices | 'asfáar |
| 8. What are the prices today? | | šuu_l'asfaar lyoom ? |
| | kilo | kiilo |
| | beans | luubye |
| | fifty | xamsiin |
| | Italian squash (koosa) | kúusa |
| | seventy | sabfiin |
| 9. Beans are 50 a kilo and Italian
squash 70. | | kiilo_lluubye bxamsiin wəlkúusa_
bsabfiin . |

- expensive gáali
10. What's this? That's quite expensive. šuu_haada ? šii_gáali_ktiir .
- eggplants beetanzaan
- tomatoes banadoora
11. Do you have eggplants and tomatoes? fii_sandak beetanzaan wbanadoora ?
- command! ?móor
12. We have everything, sir. Just ask for it. fanna_kalši_yaa_beek . bass_?moor .
- choose ná?i
- two kilos killoyeen
- face wášš
13. Pick out about two kilos of tomatoes from on top for me. na?iili_menfalwəšš šii_killoyeen_banadoora .
14. Anything else, sir? geero_yaa_beek ?
- weigh zfin
15. And weigh me out about three kilos of Italian squash. wzənli_kamaan_šii_tlet_killoyaat kuusa .
- container wáafa
16. Do you have something to carry the things in? fii_sandak_waafa ?
- basket sálle
- seeing for you šaayəflak
- it has room for tásaŋ
17. I have this basket, but I don't think it's going to hold them. maŋi_hassalle bass_šaayəflak maa_lanatasəŋon .
18. It doesn't matter. maŋlee_šii .
- I put bhətt
- remaining báa?i
- bag kiis
- because they la?anhon
- light xaffif

19. I'll put the rest in a paper bag, because they're light. bhəttəllak_lbaa?i bkiis_wara? la?anhon xfaaf .
- I send ?əbfaŋ
- she buys təštəri
20. Tomorrow I'll send you the maid to buy a little fruit (for us). bəkra_lana?əbfaŋlak_ššaanaŋa lateštəriilna_šwayyet_fawaaki .
- you want bətrid
21. What fruit will you want? šuu_lfawaaki_yalli_bətriidha ?
- I order wášši
22. So I can order them for you today. lanatta_waššiilak_faleeha mnelyoom .
- watermelons battfix
- heavy t?iil
23. I want a heavy watermelon weighing about five kilos. beddi_battixa_t?iile_tətla? šii_xams_killoyaat .
- bananas móoz
- apples təffáan
24. And also four kilos of bananas and two of apples. wkamaan_?arba?_killoyaat_mooz wetneen_təffaah .
- you forget tənša
- over or above or up fəo?
25. Don't forget to put the bananas on top of the apples. laa_tənša_maa_tətt_lmoozaat foo? tteffaahaat .
- I pay ?ədfaŋ
- advance sálaf
26. Would you like me to pay for them in advance? bəthebb_?ədfaŋlak_ha?hon salaf ?
- why? léəš
- hurry fəžale
27. And why the hurry, sir? wleeš_halfəžale_yaa_beek ?
- whatever makáan
28. You can pay at any time. ?eemta_makaan_btədfaŋli .
- enter (on a list) ?əyyed
- account nsáab
29. All right. Put them on the account then. təyyeb . ?əyyedhon_lakaan_falhsaab .

fifteen	xámstáís
16 sixteen	səttáís
seventeen	səbatáís
eighteen	tməntáís
nineteen	təsətáís
twenty	ʔəšriin
thirty	tlaatiin
forty	ʔarbiin
fifty	xamsiin
sixty	səttiin
seventy	sabfiin
eighty	tmaanfiin
ninety	tasfiin
hundred	miyye
uqiya (200 gr.)	wʔiyye
stuffing	məhši
31. I want an uqiya of meat for stuffing.	bəddi_wʔiit_lahme ləlməhši .
you can	btəʔder <u>or</u> btəg̃der <u>or</u> btəhsen
you cut	təʔtaf
shank pieces	moozáat
soup	šooraba
32. Can you cut me an uqiya of soup meat?	btəʔder_təʔtafli šii_wʔiyyet_moozaat ləššoorabá ?
33. Yes, indeed.	ʔala_ʔeeni .
you remove	tʔim

aside	ʔála_žánab
steak	bəftéek
34. And put aside two uqiyas of steak for me, too.	wʔəmlɪ ʔála_žánab šii_wʔiiteen_bəfteek kamaan .
cattle	báʔar
sheep	g̃ánam
35. Do you want beef or lamb?	bəddak_yaahon_baʔar_wella_g̃ánam ?
36. Which do you think would be better?	ʔanu_bətšuu ^K f_biq ^K uun_ʔahsan ?
you (pl)	ʔəntu
Americans	ʔameerkáan
more	ʔáktar
37. You Americans like beef better.	ʔəntu_lʔameerkaan_bəthəbbu_lahm_lbaʔar ʔáktar .
he sells	bibiif
few <u>or</u> a little	ʔalfiil
38. But here they don't sell very much beef.	laəken_ʔanna_hoon_maa_bibiifu lahm_lbaʔar_ʔalla_ʔalfiil .
they prefer	bifádlu
39. And people prefer lamb.	wənnas_bifadlu_lahm_lg̃ánam .
40. Saturday	ssábt
Sunday	lʔáhad
Monday	ttanéen
Tuesday	ttaláata
Wednesday	lʔərbfa
Thursday	lxamfis
Friday	lžámfa

Section B. Pronunciation

1. Light and heavy consonants (t, d, s, l; ṭ, ḍ, ṣ, ḷ, etc.)

As you have learned, in Arabic most consonants come in pairs, light and heavy. The heavy (hooked letter) sounds, as you remember, are lower in pitch and usually have a characteristic "hollow" sound. The nearest parallel in English is the pair of sounds spelled "l". For example, the l of "Bill" is quite different from the l of "Billy". The l sound of "Billy" is similar to the Arabic light l (e.g. sālle 'basket'). Try to say the two English l sounds by themselves. Notice that the l of "Bill" sounds a little as though you were saying a "oo" or "w" at the same time; this is characteristic of most heavy consonants in Arabic. It is the result of raising the back part of the tongue while you are making the consonant sound; while the tip of your tongue is making the necessary stoppage or narrowing of the air passage to produce the consonant, the back of the tongue rises too, adding this "u-coloring" to the sound produced. The technical name for this process is velarization and heavy consonants may also be called velarized consonants. This action of the tongue and the resulting timbre of the voice often carries over into the vowel preceding or following a heavy consonant and modifies the sound of the vowel as well.

Here are pairs of words with light and heavy consonants; only t, d, s, and l examples are listed here; other light-heavy pairs are discussed in Unit 10.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

*ṭjīn	'figs'	*ṣāam	(pr. name)
*ṭiīn	'clay'	*ṣāam	'fasted'
bisṣīr	'goes'	*bāllaṣ	'began'
bisīr	'becomes'	bālla	'please'
*ḍāll	'directed'	*ṭāalet	'third'
*ḍāll	'stayed'	*ṭaaleṣ	'going up'

2. Mid back vowel (o, oo)

The vowel sound represented by o, oo in the spelling is similar to the vowel sound of English words like low, go, oh, etc. As in the case of e, ee, however, (see 3B) there are two major differences between Arabic o, oo and the similar English vowels: (1) the Arabic vowel is "pure", that is, without any w-glide at the end; and (2) the Arabic vowel comes both short and long, while the English vowel is always relatively long.

As in making the ee, you put your tongue in the right position and HOLD IT. For the oo you must also hold your lips steady; if they come together at the end of the w-sound, you are saying the English vowel and not the Arabic one. Compare the following Arabic and English words and practice the differences.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

<u>Arabic</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Similar English word</u>
lōon	color	loan
hadool	these	the <u>do</u> le
?mōor	order	a <u>mo</u> re
hōon	here	h <u>o</u> ne
yōom	day	ro <u>o</u> m
mōoz	bananas	kn <u>o</u> ws

In Damascus Arabic there is also a very short single o (i.e. o and oo parallel to e and ee). It is the Arabic oo cut very short. Examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

?otéel	hotel
yəṭbox	he cooks
?əsmo	his name
kīilo	kilo
bāakol	I eat
bté?od	she sits
kiiloyáat	kilos

This short o is especially hard at the end of a word where the English speaker has a tendency either to hold it too long (then it sounds like a long oo) or have his tongue too high (then it sounds like u). Here are words for practice:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FOUR

ṣīibo	'bring it'	biṣūufo	'he sees him'
ṣīibu	'bring (pl)'	biṣūufu	'they see'
bento	'his daughter'		
?əntu	'you (pl)'		

3. The neutral vowel ə.

The sound represented in the spelling by ə is very variable. It is always somewhere between i and u, but the exact value depends on the consonants on either side of it and on the vowel of the following syllable. Often this ə vowel sounds very much like the English vowel of "just now" as said in ordinary conversation--a sound unlike the i of "gist", the u of "put" or the u in "a just man". At other times it sounds like the i of "bit" said with rounded lips (i.e. about like the German ü in "Hütte"). The only way to master this sound is to listen to an Arabic speaker and imitate him.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FIVE

ʔəmmi	'my mother'	birúuḥ	'goes'
ʔəmmo	'his mother'	*zuhéer	'Zohair'
byálzam	'it's necessary'	tesáʃhon	'it holds them'
byətbox	'he cooks'		

In a large part of the Syrian area this ə vowel does not exist and instead there is either i or u. In many places (e.g. Beirut) there is i almost everywhere where there is ə in Damascus. For this reason it is usually better to err on the side of having your ə sound too much like i rather than too much like u.

The most important thing to note about this vowel is the appearance in stressed syllables. A statement that holds true almost without exception is: **WHENEVER (from related forms) YOU WOULD EXPECT A SHORT VOWEL OTHER THAN a (i.e., e, i, o, u) IN A STRESSED SYLLABLE, YOU FIND INSTEAD THE NEUTRAL VOWEL ə (in Beirut i).** You have seen some instances of this:

wáʔʔef + -lna	=	waʔʔəflna
btáaxod + -ni	=	btaaxédni
šáayef + -lak	=	šáayəflak
ziin + -li	=	zénli (for zinli see Note 4.5)
šúuf + -lak	=	šəflak (for šuflak see Note 4.5)

BUT

šáar + -lak	=	šárlak
btətlaʃ + -lha	=	btətlaʃlha

Note 5.1 Command forms. Scattered through the Basic Sentences of Units 1-5 have been about twenty Command Forms of verbs. The masculine singular Command Form of many verbs is identical with the stem of the Prefix Tense. This is true when the stem begins with a single consonant followed by a vowel. Examples from previous units:

1.41	rúuḥ-dəgri .	Go straight ahead.
1.16	ʔiid-yalli-ʔalto .	Repeat what you said.
2.32	wáʔʔef-lašəflak .	Wait till I see.
1.18	dəlni-ʃalʔotəel .	Direct me to the hotel.

In this unit ziiin 'weigh', náʔʔi 'choose', ʔáyyed 'charge' occurred.

For verbs of which the Prefix Tense stem begins with two consonants the masculine singular command form consists of the stem with the STEM VOWEL LENGTHENED. Examples from Basic Sentences:

1.16	ʃmēel-maʃrúuf .	Please.	(stem -ʃmel)
2.29	lféet-fiiha .	Turn into it.	(stem -lfet)
5.12	báss-ʔmóor .	Just ask for it.	(stem -ʔmor)

With the verbs "eat" or "take" the ʔ is dropped in the command forms: kool 'eat!', xood 'take!'

One command form was a little different:

1.15	ʔəḥki-ʃala-məhlak .	Speak slowly.
------	---------------------	---------------

Verbs with a stem consisting of two consonants plus a vowel such as -ki, -ra, etc. (see Note 4.4) have a command form consisting of - plus the stem. Examples:

ʔəʔra	read	ʔəḥki	speak
ʔəbʔa	stay	ʔəkwí	iron
ʔərda	be satisfied		

The command form of the verb "come" is irregular: táʔa or taʔaal

Several examples of plural Command Forms have appeared in Basic Sentences:

2.19	tfáddalu .	Please (get in).
3.46	šarfúuna-ʃalbèet .	Visit us.
4.23	striihu .	Be seated.

The -i and -u suffixes for feminine and plural are added to the Command Forms just as they are to the second person forms of the Prefix Tense. For example:

Masc. sing.	Fem. sing.	Pl.
rúuH	rúuHi	rúuHu
déll	délli	déllu
wá'ʔef	wá'ʔfi	wá'ʔfu
ziin	ziini	ziinu
náam	náami	náamu
sáafed	sáafdi	sáafdu
ʔmeel	ʔmeli	ʔmélú
ʔmóor	ʔméri	ʔméro
tláaf	tláfi	tláfu
kóol	kóli	kólu
xóod	xédi	xédu

Notice that in words like wá'ʔef, sáafed, etc. where the masculine singular Command Form is identical with the stem of the Prefix Tense, a stem vowel e drops when -i or -u is added. In the case of verbs of which the stem vowel is lengthened, such as ʔmeel, ʔmóor, tláaf, etc. the stem vowel is shortened when -i or -u is added. In such cases -aa- is shortened to -a-, making the stem of the Command Form identical with the stem of the Prefix Tense (e.g. tláfi, byé'tlaf). But -ee- and -oo- are shortened to -e- (e.g. ʔmeli but byá'mel, ʔméri but byé'mor) in accordance with the change described in the Pronunciation section of this Unit.

As in the prefix tense forms (see Note 4.4) verb stems ending in a vowel drop this final vowel when the -i for feminine or -u for plural is added. Examples:

ʔé'ra	ʔé'ri	ʔé'ru
ʔé'uki	ʔé'uki	ʔé'uku

The full imperatives for "come" are:

táʔa (taʔaal) táʔi (taʔaali) táʔu (taʔaalu)

The following sentences contain Command Forms:

- 1) nzəlu máʔna . Go down (pl) with us.
- 2) ʔmeli maʔrúuf ʔiidi yalli ʔəltii. Please repeat (fem) what you said.
- 3) bətražžáak wá'ʔef hóon . Please stop here.
- 4) rúuH žəbli ssagáʔyer . Go get me the cigarettes.
- 5) wáʔʔi ʔaléehon hállaʔ . Order them now.
- 6) tʔáddal, ʔʔóod¹. Please sit down.
- 7) həʔtʔ lkiis hniik . Put the bag over there.
- 8) msəni lʔárd . Wash (fem) the floor.
- 9) bʔaat ʔʔáanfa lʔando . Send the maid to his place.
- 10) saaʔadli ʔáxi ʔiza btéʔder . Help my brother for me if you can.
- 11) ʔuulha márra taanye. Say it again.
- 12) ʔayyed kəlši ʔalhsáab . Charge everything.
- 13) ʔʔədu waráahon¹. Sit (pl) in back of them.
- 14) ʔaʔiina yáahon . Give them to us.
- 15) ʔmeli maʔrúuf dfaʔuulna lyóom . Please pay us today.

Note 5.2 Feminine T-nouns. In previous Analysis sections (on Notes 2.6 and 3.7) Feminine T-nouns have been discussed, and it has been pointed out that they end sometimes in -e, sometimes in -a. The factor which determines whether the ending is -e or -a is the nature of the immediately preceding consonant. Familiar examples of both:

¹ the command forms of the verb "sit" are usually said without the ʔ at the beginning : ʔóod, ʔédi, ʔédu instead of ʔʔóod, ʔʔédi, ʔʔédu.

ʔáaʔde	séne	ʔarbʔa	sábʔa
ʔáhwe	šwáyy(e)	baʔáaʔa	sáfra
binaáye	táanye	battíixa	siigáara
dáraʔe	tláate	daʔiiʔa	šáanfa
háyye	tmáan(y)e	hádra	šáħħa
háale	uʔíyye	hámrá	tésfa
kbiire	wáħde	leera	wáaʔa
kfaáye	wilaaye	mara	
láfte	xámse	marra	wáraʔa
láħme	xédme	nabiiha	žémfa
máyye	ʔaššiyye	saaʔa	
saláame	ʔázale		
sálle	ʔéele		

When the immediately preceding consonant is a throat consonant (x, ǧ, H, ʔ, h, ʔ) or a heavy (velarized) consonant (t, d, s, z,) the Ft ending is -a. After r the ending is usually -a but sometimes (especially after -ii-) it is -e. After any other consonant (b, d, f, g, k, l, m, n, s, š, t, w, y, z,) is -e. Notice that after -ayy/the ending -e is often dropped in Damascus and other areas.

or -aay

There are a few ft nouns which do not fit the -e/-a statement above. For example:

ʔaméerka	siinama
ʔuula	šooraba
biira	

There are very few Ft nouns like this, and they are usually either foreign loan words (ʔaméerka, biira, siinama, šooraba) or else are irregular, in some other way too (ʔuula as feminine of ʔawwal instead of an expected ʔawwale).

Note 5.3 Collectives. Study the following phrases from Basic Sentences paying special attention to the underlined words:

kiis_wáraʔ	a paper bag
ʔaʔiina_warʔtèen	give us two tickets (= piece of paper)
battíix	watermelons
báddi_battíixa	I want a watermelon
láħm_lbáʔar	beef (cow-meat)
uʔíyyet_láħme ləlməħši	an uqiya of meat for stuffing

Notice that wáraʔ, láħm, and battíix denote 'paper (in general)', 'meat (in general)', watermelons (in general)' respectively and that the corresponding ft nouns wáraʔa, láħme, and battíixa denote 'a (single piece of) paper', '(a specific quantity of) meat', 'a watermelon'.

In English every noun is either singular or plural (e.g. book: books; man: men) and any given noun has only these two forms, although a few nouns are only plural (e.g. scissors, oats), a very few are only singular, and a handful have two plurals (e.g. brother: brothers, brethren).

- (1) sáʔr: ʔasʔar masculine singular with corresponding plural
- (2) sáaʔa: saasʔaat regular ft and plural
- (3) daʔiiʔa: daʔaayeʔ ft* with irregular plural
- (4) sálle: səlal or salláat ft* with irregular plural
- (5) wáraʔ: wáraʔa: waraʔaat, uráaʔ masculine singular with collective meaning and Feminine T-noun singular and plural.

Nouns of this last type are called COLLECTIVES and will be entered in the Vocabularies under the masculine singular form marked (coll). Irregular plurals of the Feminine-T noun will be given.

Here are further examples of (coll) nouns:

báʔar 'cattle': báʔara 'cow': baʔaráat 'cows'

beetnžáan, 'eggplant(s) (in general)': beetnžáane 'eggplant': beetnzaanaat 'eggplants'

battíix 'watermelons (in general)': battíixa 'a watermelon': battíixáat 'watermelons'

móoz 'bananas (in general)': móoze 'banana': moozáat 'bananas'

sáfar 'travelling': sáfra 'trip': safráat 'trips'

sámak 'fish (in general)': sámake '(one) fish': samakáat 'fishes'

təffáan apples (in general)': təffáana 'apple': təffaanaat 'apples'

xəbz 'bread': xəbze 'piece of bread':

Here are sample sentences containing collectives:

- (1) bəthəbbi_lbaṭṭiix ? Do you (fem) like watermelons?
 (2) máa fii_ṣanna wára? We have no paper.
 (3) byáaklu lahm_lba'ar ktiir . They eat beef a lot.
 (4) halbattiixa muu_ṭayybe . This watermelon is no good.
 (5) bṭaṣṭiini xams_moozaat bnəss_léera ? Will you give me five bananas for half a pound?
 (6) lwára?_rxiiṣ hoon . Paper is cheap here.
 (7) máa byáaklu təffaanaato . They don't eat his apples.

Note 5.4 Roots. Study the following groups of words you have learned:

(A) ṣárfak	(B) tšarráfná	(C) mabṣúuṭ	(D) t'axxart
byáṣref	ššáraf	btəmbəṣṭi	mət'axxer
máṣrfe	šárfuuna	(E) byəštəḡel	(F) btəḡsel
		ššəḡel	lḡasíil

Arabic words, as you have learned, often have prefixes and suffixes. The rest of the word, the STEM, may also be analyzed. The words in each group above have three consonants in common, e.g. ṣ,r,f in ṣárfat, byáṣref, máṣrfe. Notice also that all the words in each group have a certain meaning in common. Thus, all the words whose stem contains ṣ,r,f have something to do with "knowing": ṣárfak "I cause you to know", byáṣref 'he knows', máṣrfe 'knowledge, acquaintance'. This structure is characteristic of Arabic words. Most words in the language have a nucleus of this kind, usually consisting of three consonants, which has a fairly definite meaning. Such a nucleus will be called a ROOT and will be abbreviated ✓. Here are the roots and their meanings for the groups above:

A. ✓ ṣrf knowing	D. ✓ ?xr delay
B. ✓ šrf honor	E. ✓ ṣḡl work
C. ✓ bṣt happiness	F. ✓ ḡsl washing

Note 5.5 Separate Personal Pronouns. You have learned the personal pronoun endings -i, -ak, -o, etc. From time to time you have also learned personal pronouns which are used separately as full words. The following expressions have occurred in the Basic Sentences of Units 1-5:

- 2.15 u_?ána kamaan . I do too.
 3.49 u_?əntu bxéer . And (good night) to you (p.)
 3.29 húwwe taažer_?máaš ? Is he a cloth dealer?
 1.9 šlóonak_?ənte ? How are you?
 5.37 ?əntu_l?ameerkáan bəthəbbu_ You Americans like beef.
 lahm_lba'ar .
 2.35 náhna lahanəb'a_hoon... We're going to stay here...
 3.41 ?ée_náṣam hənne_bisaa'dúu bkélši . Yes they help him in everything.
 4.35 ?ənti bəthəbbi_tnáami_ṣanna ? Would you (fem) like to sleep in our house?

Here is the complete list:

húwwe	he	?ənte	you	?ána	I
hiyye	she	?ənti	you (fem)		
hənne	they	?əntu	you (pl)	nəhna	we

In Damascus the form hənne and láhna are often used instead of hənne and nəhna.

Notice that these separate personal pronouns are used in two different ways. They are used independently as in the first three sentences above and they are used to emphasize a personal pronoun ending a prefix of the Prefix tense as in the remaining three sentences. Here are further examples of both uses.

1. ?ána_nazžáar . I'm a carpenter.
 2. húwwe_mawžúud hálla? ? Is he here now?
 3. hənne_mnéen ? Where are they from?
 4. šúu_bədkon_?əntu ? What do you (pl) want?
 5. hiyye_?áa'ide_ṣándhon . She's staying with them.

Note 5.6 Plurals. The plural of feminine t-nouns has been discussed in various notes. The regular feminine plural ends in -aat although often some other plural forms exists, either in place of or in addition to this regular plural. The situation with masculine nouns is somewhat different. The kinds of plurals are so varied and hard to predict, that the best way to learn them is simply to find out the plural whenever you learn a new noun. Some nouns have no plural, some have one plural, some have several plurals. This is not quite as haphazard as it sounds ~~as~~ various aspects of the plural system will be described in following Units. For the time being, however, just try to learn the plurals as they come - there will be frequent exercises on them.

z/and

Adjectives have the most regular plurals. Most adjectives have a plural ending in -iin, for example:

m.	f.	pl.
1 mabsuut	mabsuuta	mabsuutiin
3 mawzuud	mawzuude	mawzuudiin
2 mamnuun	mamnuune	mamnuuniin
4 maʒʒuuʔ	maʒʒuuʔa	maʒʒuuʔiin
5 metʔaxxer	metʔaxra	metʔaxriin
1 laazem	laazme	laazmiin
2 šaayef	šaayfe	šaayfiin
3 žaaye	žaaye	žaayiin
3 taani	taanye	taanyiin
1 faadi	faadye	faadyiin
2 ġaali	ġaalye	ġaalyiin
1 frensaawi	frensaawiye	frensaawiyiin

Adjectives like kbiir (i.e. with -ii- between the second and third consonant of the root) have two plurals. Sometimes people say kbiiriin like other adjectives, but usually they say kbaar (i.e. with -aa- between the second and third consonants of the root). Examples:

kbiir	kbiire	kbaar
mniin	mniina	mnaah
ndiif	ndiife	ndaaf
rxiis	rxiisa	rxaaš
tʔiil	tʔiile	tʔaal
xafiif	xafiife	xfaaf
zgiir	zgiire	zgaar

(a) Some masculine nouns have a plural in -aat like the feminine noun:

maħall	place	maħalláat
xéer	goodness, well-being	xeeráat
báas	bus	baašáat
ʔotéel	hotel	ʔoteeláat

(b) Some have a plural in -iin like adjectives:

nažžáar	carpenter	nažžaaríin
---------	-----------	------------

(c) Probably the most frequent plural form contains a long vowel between the second and third consonant, most often -aa- (as with adjectives like kbiir), less often -uu-, rarely -ii-:

báab	door	bwáab
kiis	bag	kyáas
wálad	boy, child	uláad
lón	color	lwáan
rəžžáal	man	ržaal
sáar	price	ʔasʔaar
béet	house	byúut
xátt	line	xtúut

(d) Some nouns, like yoom have a plural form beginning with ʔ which takes a t with the numbers 3-10:

yóom	day	ʔiyyáam (xáms_tiiyyáam)
šáhr	month	ʔəšhor (xáms_təšhor)

(e) Two feminine nouns which have a root consisting of only two consonants, have unusual plurals:

səne	year	sníin or sanawáat
máara	woman	nəswáan

Note 5.7 Numbers. In this Unit the numbers from eleven to one hundred are presented. The numbers from eleven to nineteen all end in -aʃš, which corresponds to English -teen and like English -teen (cf. ten) resembles the full form of the number ten (ʔašara). This -aʃš has two special features which must be noted: (1) it velarizes the immediately preceding -t- (the feminine t) of the numbers 3 to 9 and sometimes other consonants as well, (2) it has a special alternant ending in -ar when the number is followed immediately by the noun. Examples:

xámštáʃš	15	xámštáʃšar_səne	15 years
tməntáʃš	18	tməntáʃšar_səne	18 years

Notice that the words for 14, 17, 19 usually are said with only one ʃ, i.e. the ʃ of the basic number is dropped and the ʃ of the -aʃš remains:

ʔərbataʃš	(less often ʔərbastáʃš)
sabataʃš	(less often sabaštáʃš)
təsaʃaʃš	(less often təsaštáʃš)

Also - these "teens", like English "teens" may have the primary stress on either the first syllable or on the -aʃš syllable. You may use xámštáʃš, which is more usual when reciting the numbers, say from 10 to 20, or xámstáʃš which is more usual when actually telling how many of something.

The numbers 20, 30, 40, etc. are listed in full in the Basic Sentences of this Unit. The numbers in between 21-29, 31-39, etc. are formed by the unit number first and then the ten joined by "and": five-and-twenty, seven-and-thirty, etc. In these combinations the feminine t- ending of the numbers 3-10 is lengthened to -aa- (no matter whether it is -e or -a is the simple number)

and this -aa- has the principle stress. Here are the thirties, for example:

wáahed_wetlaatiin
 tnéen_wetlaatiin
 tlaatáa_wetlaatiin
 ?arbáa_wetlaatiin
 xamsáa_wetlaatiin
 settáa_wetlaatiin
 tmaanáa_wetlaatiin (less often tmaanyáa_wetlaatiin)
 tasáa_wetlaatiin

In the numbers 21-29 the Arabic speakers of Damascus usually drop the w- 'and':

tlaatáa_ǧəšriin (less often tlaatán_ufəšriin)
 xamsáa_ǧəšriin (less often xamsáa_ufəšriin)

5.8 Relative Clauses. Study the following sentences carefully, paying special attention to the difference between the Arabic and English method of expressing "who, which, that", etc.,

4.1 btaʕrefli ʕii bant bteʕod ʕaanaʕa ? Do you know a girl who would be a maid?

4.22 hayy lbant yalli ?altellak ʕanha . This is the girl (that) I told you about.

4.12 taht ?iidi waakde maa fii menha . I have one (that) you couldn't beat.

5.21 ʕuu lfawaaki yalli batriidha . What fruit (is it that) you will want?

All these sentences consist of two parts or clauses of which one, the relative clause, is related to a word in the main clause. Thus, ?altellak ʕanha and "I told you about" are relative clauses relating to lbant and "the girl." Arabic and English differ in that the relative clause in English is often incomplete, i.e. could not stand alone as a full sentence (e.g. "I told you about") while in Arabic the relative clause is always independent, i.e. could stand alone as a full sentence (e.g. ?altellak ʕanha "I told you about her".) In other words Arabic relative clauses often contain pronouns referring back to the noun of the main clause; English relative clauses do not. Examples:

hayy lwaraʕa yalli ranaʕaʕtiik yaaha . This is the ticket I'm going to give you.

btaʕref lmaʕsam yalli byaaklu fii ? Do you know the restaurant they eat in?

hayy ?awwal marra baʕtaǧel fiiha . This is the first time I've worked.

Another difference between Arabic and English sentences with relative clauses lies in the use of yalli and "who, which, that", etc. In English we use "who, whose, whom" for people, "which" for things, and "that" for either; but we often don't put in any of these words at all. Most English sentences of this kind can be said in two or three ways:

... the girl I told you about
 ... the girl about whom I told you
 ... the girl that I told you about

and so on, all meaning about the same thing. In Arabic yalli is used for persons or things and is always used when the noun referred to is definite, i.e. has "the" with it. It is not used when the noun is indefinite, i.e. does not have "the." Read over the four examples at the beginning of the note again and be sure you understand this. The Arab says:

"... a girl I told you about her." or
 "... the girl yalli I told you about her."

Here are additional examples:

1. hayy lhalla? halli bəhle? fando .
2. haada lbeet yalli bəddak yaa ?
3. šuu lfawaaki yalli bəthəbha ?
4. šloon lmatfam yalli btaakol fii ?
5. baakol bəlmətfam halli fala žanab l'oteel .
6. haada lbəšš halli bənzəl fii falbalad .
7. ššaanafa halli bəfəttəlli yaaha mniina ktiir .
8. ššaayof halbinəaye halli ?əddaam ləmnəttə ?

Note that yalli and halli are used interchangeably in Damascus and that another form lli is widely used in Syrian Arabic. But all three of these have exactly the same meaning and are used in a sentence or not in accordance with the explanation given above.

Sometimes yalli is used in the sense of "he who, who(ever)" or "that which, what(ever)" as in the sentence:

fiid yalli ?əltə Repeat what ("that which") you said.

In this case there is a "him" pronoun ending referring back to the yalli itself. Here are further examples:

1. yalli maa byəzi mafak tafa mafa .
2. maa bsaawi ?əlla halli biriido ?abi .
3. halli binəbb iruun fassiinama, yənki .

SECTION D. Exercises

1. Completion sentences A. Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the command form of the verb given in parenthesis in English. Then repeat the same sentence as though you were speaking to a woman, then to more than one person.

Sample sentence: (go) labeeto.

Answers: rúuh_labèeto.
rúuhī_labeeto.
rúuhū_labeeto.

1. (write) la?abúuk..
2. (choose) fásr_kuusaayàat..
3. (drink) ?áhwe .
4. (say) šúu_sàar_màfak..
5. (pay) há??_ləğrəad .
6. (visit) ?ámmad bbéetc..
7. (come) máfi lanšúufo..
8. (give) hassáafa lanabiiha..
9. (repeat)_yalli_?əltə .
10. (put)_lxədra bessáalle..
11. (order) fala_baṭṭiixa .
12. (greet) fala_?axuuk .
13. (send) ššaanafa ladžlib_ləğrəad .
14. (see) halbinəaye ?əddáamak .
15. (cut) kíilo_ləhne .
16. (be) rəžžáal_mniin .
17. (wait) bəlməttə .
18. (take) halbaṭṭiixaát la?axúuk .
19. (read) lwára?a .
20. (bring) lfawaaki mən_fándo.

2. Completion Sentences B. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the appropriate forms of -l- 'to, for' as indicated by the English equivalent given in parenthesis, making any necessary changes in the preceding stem.

Sample sentence: zfin (for me) kíilo_məoz .

Answer: zənli kíilo_məoz .

1. naʔʔi (for me) kiiloyéen_teffàan .
2. ʂaar (him)_bəššàam ʔáʂr_təšhor .
3. žiibo_(to the) bēet .
4. waʂsi (her) ʔala_šwàyyet_sámak .
5. ʔtaaʔ (for us) uʔiitéen_lámme .
6. btəʔra (to me) šúu_fii_bəlwàraʔa ?
7. btəhki (to them)_hállaʔ yəmma_bəkra ?
8. bžiiib (to you) mən_ʔándo sámak ?
9. híyye btaaxod (to him) halbaṭṭiixáat .
10. šaayef (to you) rrəžžáal múu_žàaye .
11. šúu_rahətʔuul (to him) ?
12. byəktob (to me) káll_šàhr .
13. táʔa(Let's)_nruun(to) ʔándo .
14. byəbʔat (to us) ləğrāaḍ bəkra .
15. mnaɖfaʔ (him) naʔʔ_lxəbz .
16. bʔuul (you feminine) báʔd bəkra .
17. (whose)méen_hassiigaaràat ?
18. baʔtíihon (to) ʔahmad .
19. kəlhon (mine) .
20. (to him) mǎʔna xamsiin leera .

3. Completion Sentences C. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate form (collective, singular, plural) of the noun equivalent to the English given in parenthesis.

1. bʔaddéəš_l(eggplant)_lyðom ?
2. fii_ʔándak_(fish) ?
3. fii_ʔánna tmán (apples) . lakéll_waahed_məna (apple) .
4. láa_tənsa_təḥṭṭ l(bananas) fəoʔ_t(apples) .
5. laazəmni tlət_(fish) .
6. šəfli kam (ticket) fii_maʔak ?
7. bəddi_ʔəštəri šii_ʔəšriin_(pears) .
8. xood hal(two plums) .
9. zənli kíilo_(pears) .
10. ʔaʔiini xáms_(eggplants) .

4. Numbers. Give the Arabic equivalent of the following:

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. four houses | 26. several days |
| 2. two years | 27. six doors |
| 3. nine carpenters | 28. five prices |
| 4. a hundred men | 29. four hotels |
| 5. three lines | 30. a hundred years |
| 6. six watermelons | 31. one Kusa |
| 7. five kilos | 32. two places |
| 8. two uqiyas | 33. five bananas |
| 9. ten colors | 34. seven days |
| 10. two houses | 35. twenty fish |
| 11. six children | 36. one tomato |
| 12. ten baskets | 37. four uqiyas (see Vocab. for pl) |
| 13. three bags | 38. three years |
| 14. eight months | 39. two apples |
| 15. two months | 40. five women |
| 16. seventy-two days | 41. twenty-five times |
| 17. twenty-six cigarettes | 42. fifty-seven minutes |
| 18. forty-five hours | 43. twelve students |
| 19. eighty-nine men | 44. forty-one pears |
| 20. sixty-four tickets | 45. sixty-nine years |
| 21. ninety-three women | 46. two hundred piastres |
| 22. seventeen piastres | 47. thirteen girls |
| 23. fourteen kilos | 48. eighteen children |
| 24. thirty-three pounds | 49. fifty-eight fish |
| 25. nineteen tomatoes | 50. sixteen hours |

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1.

- A. ṣabàah_lxéer mæster_žóons
 J. ṣabàah_nnúur ?áhmád_béek , šlóonak_lyðom ?
 A. bxéer_lhámdella , u?énte kíif_háalak ?
 J. mniih_ktiir_lhámdella , lawéen_merrúuh_haṣṣabàah ?
 A. ?ábl_kálši láazem_?aštári šwáyyet_žráad_lalbéet .
 J. šúu_ləžráad_halli_laazəmtak ?
 A. šii_ktiir , xédra ufawáaki uláhme .
 J. mən_šánd_míin_bəđžilib_žráadək ?
 A. wálla_fii_?ábu_šafiif u?ábu_xaliil . halli_xédrtə_?áhsan beštəri_manno .
 J. wéen_dakakiinhon ?
 A. lwáaned šánd_bəeti wəttáni báfdo betmán_dakakiin .
 J. lakaan_rúuh_žiiib_halli_bəddək_džiiibo . u?ána_bəstannáak_hoon_lateržaf .
 A. lééš !! táfa_rúuh_məfi .
 ?ána_briidak tášref_mniih_kálši_bihəlbálad .
 J. mamnəunak_ktiir , nšáalla_btəži_la?améerka u?ána_kamāan bšárfak_šala_kálši_hniik .
 A. nšáalla_brúuh_ššəne_žžáaye wəbšúufak_hniik .
 A. hálla?_šárfak_məfi
 J. táyyeb . brúuh_məfak .

Conversation 2. They go to ^bAbu Khalil's shop.

ʔálla_yaštiiik. May God give it to you! Thi is a way of saying no, e.g. to a buyer making an offer or to a beggar asking for alms.

- A. ṣabàah_lxéer_?ábu_xaliil .
 A.K. ṣabàah_lxeránt . ?áhla_wsáhla , ?ámr xédme ?
 A. nšáalla_xəđertək_táaza_lyðom ?
 A.K. btašrefni_táyyeb_yaa_béek , ?ána_máa_bəhwa_bidəkkáanti_?álla_ttáaza .
 A. b?addééš_lkúusa ?
 A.K. bsabšáašəšriin_?ərs
 A. ?əff! . lééš_kəll_háada ?
 A.K. mən_?álla , mnəštəri_žáali umənbiif_žáali .
 A. btaštiiini_lšáara_bšəšriin ?
 A.K. ?álla_yaštiiik .¹
 A. táyyeb betlaatáa_šəšriin .
 A.K. ?ámrak , ná?i . užeéro_yaa_béek ?
 A. léssa beddi_žráad_ktiir ,
 A. . zənli_halbatšiiixa_lašúufha_kám_kiižo_btətlas ?
 A.K. sətte_kiilo .

- A. ná?iili šii_tlət_kilooyàat_mooz .
 A.K. ?ála_šéeni .
 A. dáxlak_hallúubye b?addééš ?
 A.K. yaa_?áhmád_béek , ?asšáari_dáa?iman_rxiiša . xood uláa_təš'al .
 A. táyyeb . hətšəlli_kilooyéen_lúubye_wətláate_beetənžaan .
 A.K. ?ámrak_siidi .
 A. šuu_byəzhar_lbanadðora_šándak_múu_ktiir_táaza !!
 A.K. ?háada?áhsan_šii_mawžúud_bəlbálad .
 A. ná?iili mən_šalwəšš_šii_tlət_banadooraayaat .
 A. ?addééš_ləhsáab ?
 A.K. kəll_haləžráad_bətlət_leerəat_usabšiiin_?ərs .
 A. hávy_šášr_leerəat .
 A.K. wálla_yaa_siidi_máa_məfi_kməale , ?éemta_makāan_btədfəfli .
 A. táyyeb_?ayyedhon_lakaan_šaləhsáab_xaətrak .
 A.K. btriidni_?əbšəthon_halla? ?
 A. lá? . hálla?_bəbšətlak_ššáan'ə_təaxədhon .
 A.K. raHa_təbšəat_məfa_wáafa ?
 A. nášam . u?iza_máa_btəšəšhon_hətšə_lbáa?i_bkiis_wára? .
 A.K. maš_šsaláame .
 A. ?álla_šisálmak .

Conversation 3. Ahmad and Jones speak.

- J. uhálla?_lawéen_merrúuh_žž?
 A. lašánd_?ábu_šafiif_bžəmnəllak_lámto_?áhsan .
 J. šanna_bi?améerkafii_mahalláat_btəštəri_mənha_kəlši_laazmak .
 A. uhóon_kamāan_héek_bəss_nnáas_hoon_wəhniik_bifádlu_yəštəri_l'áhsan .
 J. məfak_há?? .

Conversation 4. They go to ⁶Azu Afif's Shop.

A.A. ?ahla_umar_haba .

A. šuu_byəzhar dəkkaantak_maʔzuuʔa_ktiir .

A.A. lhamdella ššəgəl_mniik..

A. bállā yaa_ʔabu_ʔafiif bəddi_šwayyet_lahme_ləššoora .

A.A. yafni ʔaddəes ?

A. ʔarbaʔ_waaʔ .

A.A. šuu_btəʔmor_ğəero_yaa_bèek ?

A. ʔtəʔli šii_uʔiitēen ləlmənsi_wuʔiyye_unəşş_bəftèek .

A.A. hállāʔ_byəşaluk_ʔalbèet , šuu_bətwəşšini_labəkra ?

A. bšuuʔ_bəlbèet šuu_bədən_ubəʔatlak_xabar_maʔ_şşaanə..

A. ʔabəl_maa_ʔansa . nəttəlli šii_kilooyeen_xoox_wətláate_nžaaş .

A. ʔala_ʔeeni .

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔahad	Sunday	-nsen	be able (Damascene)
ʔaktar	more	-nətt	put
ʔaliil(adj pl ʔlaal)	little, a few	-hwa	contain, include
ʔameerkáan	Americans	kiilo (kiiloyéen,	
ʔarbatáʔš	fourteen	pl kiiloyáat)	kilo
ʔarba	Wednesday	kiis (pl kyáas)	bag
ʔarbiin	forty	kúusa (coll; sg	Italian squash
ʔasfáar	see séʔr	kuusáaye)	
-ʔayyed	register,	laʔann-	because
	charge (to someone's account)	láa	not
-ʔder (also -ğder)	be able, can	leeš	why
ʔšlla	but, except	luubve ft	string beans
ʔidaʔš	eleven	manáll (pl manalláat)	place, shop
-ʔiim	remove	makáan	-ever, whatever
-ʔmor	command	ʔéemta_makáan	at any time
-ʔtaʔ	cut	maʔlee_šii	never mind
báʔar (coll. sg		miyye (ft miit-)	hundred
báʔara)	cows, cattle	mnéen	from where
lám_báʔar	beef	móoz (coll)	bananas
báaʔi (adj baaʔy-)	remaining, (the rest)	moozáat	shank strips
banadoora (f coll; sg		mənši (pl manáaši)	stuffed dish (e.g.
banádoor	tomatoes		stuffed squash,
raaye pl -aat)			stuffed eggplant)
battix (coll)	watermelons	-naʔʔi	choose
beetnžáan (coll)	eggplants	-nsa	forget
-biif	sell	núur	light
bəftèek	steak	-riid	want
-bʔat	send	sabatáʔš	seventeen
-dfaʔ	pay (for) (-l- someone)	sábt	Saturday
dəkkaan(e) (m or ft; pl	shop, store	sabʔiin	seventy
dakakʔin)		sálaf	advance payment
-fađdel	prefer	-dfaʔ sálaf	pay in advance
fóoʔ	over, above, on top,	sálla (ft pl reg or	
	upstairs	sálal)	basket
ğáali (adj ġaaly-)	expensive		
ğánam (coll)	sheep		
lám_ğánam	lamb		
-ğder	see -ʔder		
nsáab	account, bill		

siid-	lord, sir	xédra (ft)	vegetables
síidi	sir	wáafa (ft pl waafaat 'container' pl ?awáafi 'clothes')	
səttíin	sixty		container (=bag, box, basket)
sáfir (pl ?asfáar)	price	wára? (coll)	paper
ṣabáan (pl ṣabaaháat)	morning	-wassí	order (not command, but place an order for something) ṣala
səttááš	sixteen	wéšš (pl ušúuh)	face
šóoraba (ft)	soup	-ziin	weigh
-šteri	buy	žámb or žánab (pl žnáab)	side
tʔíil (heavy	ṣala_žánab	aside
táaza	fresh	žémša (ft)	Friday
taláata	Tuesday	ṣafiif	Afif
tanéen	Monday	ṣážale (ft)	hurry
tlaatiin	thirty	ṣəšriin	twenty
tmaaniin	eighty		
tmentááš	eighteen		
teffáan (coll)	apples		
tesatááš	nineteen		
tesíin	ninety		
ṭləttááš	thirteen		
ṭnááš	twelve		
uʔiyye (ft pl waa?)	uqiya (=200 grams)		
-əsaʔ	have room for, contain		
xafiif (adj pl xfaaf)	right		
xamiis	Thursday		
xamsiin	fifty		
xamštááš	fifteen		
xédme (ft)	service		

UNIT 5 - Supplementary Sentences

1. xood hattlät leeraat šteriili fiihon . Take these three pounds and buy me something with them.
2. waʔʔef lašəflak ʔiza ʔabi belbeet . Wait till I see if my father's at home.
3. šarref kool mafi teffaah . Please have some apples with me.
4. ʔiza maa ʔaleeki šəgel, saaʔdi ʔəmmek bettabx . If you don't have any work, help your mother with the cooking.
5. btaʔref ʔaddeš rana yəbʔa ʔuxuuk beššaam ? Do you know how long your brother will stay in Damascus?
6. heṭṭelli yaahon bkiis ʔakbar men heek . Put them in a larger bag than this for me.
7. šuu sefr llaṃme lyoom ? What's the price of meat today?
8. llaṃme lemniina wʔiitha bfašara . The good meat is ten (piastres) an uqiya.
9. fhəmt menno ʔenno bedde ibiif beeto . I understand from him that he wants to sell his house.
10. laa truuh lafando xəđarto muu ktiir taaza . Don't go to him; his vegetables aren't very fresh.
11. byədfaʔuulo beššahr tmaaniin leera . They'll pay him eighty pounds a month.
12. laa tensa tʔuul laʔabu ʔafiif yəbʔatli kiilo teffaah . Don't forget to tell Abu Afif to send me a kilo of apples.
13. ʔana baaʔi belbeet bekra . I'm staying at home tomorrow.
14. ʔəmlí ṣala žanab šii ʔašr kuusaa-yaat taaza . Set aside for me about 10 fresh kusas.
15. ʔahmad fooʔ . ʔiza beddak ṭlaaʔ šuufo . Ahmad's upstairs; if you want, go up and see him.
16. bfaḍḍel lyoom nsaawi kuusa maṣši . I'd rather we'd make stuffed kusa today.
17. rana ʔəbʔatlak yaa ha bekra . I'm going to send it to you tomorrow.
18. xood hal xamsiin leera ṣalhsaab . Take these 50 pounds on account.
19. gaar nsaabak kbiir, ʔeemta lana tedfaʔli ? Your account has gotten large. When are you going to pay me?
20. betšarfu lafanna bekra ? Will you visit us tomorrow?
21. muu faadyiin; geer marra nšaalla, mamnuuniin . We won't be free. Another time I hope, thank you.
22. šuu beddak yaani ʔello ? What do you want me to tell him?
23. šarli settešhor bihalbeet . I've been in this house six months.
24. baʔd xamštáášar yoom ʔaxi beddo yeži . My brother wants to (will) come in 15 days.

25. fii sando sabef ganamaat wetlet ba'araat . He has seven sheep and three cows.
26. šuuf haada halli žaay, haada ?abu fafiif.. Look at that (man) coming - that's Abu Afif.
27. šuu byežhar maa sandak laham ba'ar ? Well, it looks as though you don't have any beef.
28. maa byešteri šii ?ella byedfaf ka'?'o salaf . He only buys things by paying in advance. ("He doesn't buy a thing except he pays for it in advance.")
29. treko ?abu fafiif ?asfaaro daa'iiman gaalye . Leave Abu Afif. His prices are always " high.
30. fala žanab beetna fii tmen dakakiin . Beside our house there are eight shops.
31. ?iimi halawraa? men been ?ideen lewlaad . Take these papers out of the children's " hands.
32. ?addeš femrha bentak ? ?idaššar sene. How old is your daughter? Eleven years " (old.).
33. ?asfaar lebyuut gaalye bihal?iyyaam . Prices of houses are high these days.
34. binaayetna ?elha ?arbaš bwaab . Our building has four doors.
35. lna?? mafak; nenna laazem nzuurak bel'awwal . You're right. We should visit you first.
36. ?ante btənki frēnsaawi ?ansan mēnni . You speak French better than I do.
37. zenli battiixa tkuun been lkiiloyeen wettlaate . Weigh me out a watermelon between two and three kilos.
38. ween nabiiha ? men šašr da'aaye? kaanet hoon . Where's Nabiha? She was here ten minutes ago.
39. ?uuli lahalwlaad inaamu . Tell those children to go to sleep.
40. miin halli ?ežu lašandak ? Who are the people who came to see you?
41. maa bzənn yerda ?alf leera na?? beeto. I don't think he'll be satisfied with 1000 pounds for his house.
42. hkiili šuu bišir mafak, wbašdeen ?ana bšuu . Tell me what happens with you, and then I'll see.
43. zenli tlaate kiilo mooz . Weight me out three kilos of bananas.
44. betkuun faadi bekra latenzel mafi falbalad ? Will you be free tomorrow to go downtown with me?
45. halegraad xfaaf , bte?der tnethon bkiis wara? ? These things are light; you can put them in a paper bag?
46. sando tmen mahallaat mnaah . He has eight good places (shops).
47. sefr tteffaah hoon wehnik zaat ššii . The price of apples is the same here and there.
48. ?ana beddi men zaat le'maaš . I want some of the same cloth.
49. ruuh lašand nnažžaar zaato . Go to the same carpenter's.
50. beddi šuufo bezzaat . I want to see him in person.
51. zaat šši sandi ?iza betneamā? šanna walla sand ?ahlek . It's all the same with me if you sleep at our house or with your own folks.
52. halli bihemni huwwe šeglek . What I care about is your work.

This Unit will furnish you with a thorough review of the work you have done so far, and enable you to test your understanding of the material you have studied. If you can work out all the problems in this Unit without getting stuck, and if your answers are mostly correct, you may assume that you have really mastered the first five Units. But if you have trouble, or if your answers turn out mostly wrong, you need more practice on the Units of Part One before going on to new material.

In this Unit, whenever you are called on to do any talking in Arabic, pay close attention to your pronunciation. Let the Guide act as critic of everything you say; if you have no Guide, the group as a whole should correct each man's mistakes. Go back to the phonograph records for authority whenever you are in doubt.

Section A. True-False Test

The purpose of this test is not to give you a grade on your work, but to let you see for yourself how well you can understand Arabic when you have no spelling to follow with your eye.

Each member of the group should take a sheet of paper and write down along the side the numbers from 1 through 20. Then the Guide or the speaker on the phonograph records will say twenty statements in Arabic. Each statement will be spoken twice, with a pause after it; and each statement will be identified by its number. When you hear a statement, decide whether it is usually true or usually false. Don't go into particular cases, but simply decide whether it is ORDINARILY true or false. If it is true, write down a capital T after number corresponding to the statement; if it is false, write down a capital F, if you understand the Arabic, you will have no trouble in deciding which letter to write.

After the first statement, the Leader will stop the Guide, or lift the needle from the phonograph record, and ask whether everyone understands what he is supposed to do. From that point on to the end of the test, there should be no interruptions.

After you have finished the test, the Leader will go through it with you and give you the answers. If you got 16 or more of the answers right, you have done well. If you got less than 16, you need more practice in listening to spoken Arabic.

Section B. Exercises

1. Word Review

These two exercises will give you a chance to test your understanding of the words you have learned. You should prepare each exercise by yourself, reading over the instructions and working out the answers alone. When all

members of the group have done this, the group should assemble under the Leader's direction to check up on the results. The Leader will take up one question at a time, and call on various members of the group to give their answers. As each man calls out his answer, the others should compare it with their own results, and should supply whatever corrections or criticisms are necessary. If there is any doubt about the answer to a particular problem, the Guide can act as judge, or the Leader can look it up in the Guide's Manual.

(a) Here are twelve groups of words. In each group, there is one word whose meaning does not fit in with the meaning of the other four. First decide which word should be crossed out in each group. Then make up a simple Arabic sentence in which the other four words can be used interchangeably. For instance, if the four words that belong together are móoz, teffáan, battíix, you can make up the sentence nnáas hníik byáaklu móoz (or teffáan, or battíix) ktíir. This will give you forty-eight sentences in all; practice them to yourself out loud, and be ready to rattle them off when the Leader calls on you.

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1.(a) mháṭṭa | 2.(a) nažžáar | 3.(a) sámak |
| (b) sáafa | (b) telmíiz | (b) lámme |
| (c) ?otéel | (c) bóoṣṭa | (c) báaṣ |
| (d) síinama | (d) táažer | (d) rézz |
| (e) máṭṭam | (e) ṣáanfa | (e) banadóora |
| 4.(a) ?addáam | 5.(a) bináaye | 6.(a) šlóonak ? |
| (b) wára | (b) uláad | (b) kíif_ṣántak ? |
| (c) tánt | (c) náas | (c) kíif_xèḍṛtak ? |
| (d) fío? | (d) mára | (d) kíif_hàalak ? |
| (e) mníih | (e) banáat | (e) šlóon_ṣṣàhna ? |
| 7.(a) néhna | 8.(a) békra | 9.(a) da?íi'a |
| (b) byúuṣal | (b) kbíir | (b) sáafa |
| (c) híyye | (c) zǧíir | (c) yóom |
| (d) ?ante | (d) t?íil | (d) žémfa |
| (e) ?ána | (e) xafiif | (e) saláame |

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|
| 10.(a) ?ábi | 11.(a) byeržaf | 12.(a) mašǧúul |
| (b) ḡaali | (b) birúun | (b) maṣžúu? |
| (c) márti | (c) byítrok | (c) mət?áxxer |
| (d) ?áxi | (d) bibéeto | (d) mamnúun |
| (e) ?abni | (e) byéži | (e) maháll |

(b) Here are two groups of words fifteen in each group. For every word in Group 1, there is a word in Group 2 that has an exactly opposite meaning. First match up the opposites. When you have done this, make up a sentence in Arabic for each pair of opposite words, in such a way that either of the two words could be used in the sentence. For instance, if the opposite words are ?addaam and wara, you can make up the sentence fii síinama mníiha ?addaam (or wara) lamḡaṭṭa. This will give you thirty sentences in all; practice them to yourself out loud, and be ready to rattle them off when the Leader calls on you.

- | <u>GROUP I</u> | <u>GROUP II</u> |
|----------------|-----------------|
| (a) ḡaali | (a) báfd |
| (b) t?íil | (b) hníik |
| (c) ?ábl | (c) bibíif |
| (d) ktíir | (d) zǧíir |
| (e) fío? | (e) xafiif |
| (f) fárabi | (f) šwáyye |
| (g) ?addáam | (g) yamíin |
| (h) byeštari | (h) ?afránži |
| (i) šmáal | (i) rxíiṣ |
| (j) hóon | (j) fátí |
| (k) byénzal | (k) ?émm |
| (l) ?áb | (l) byéṭlaṣ |
| (m) kbíir | (m) tánt |
| (n) xóod | (n) wára |

2. Sentence Review

Go through the following lists of English sentences by yourself and turn them into Arabic. Don't try to translate the English word for word; instead, make up Arabic sentences that will mean the same thing. DON'T WRITE ANYTHING DOWN, but practice your Arabic sentences out loud until you know them cold. Be ready to speak them without hesitation when the Leader calls on you.

After the members of the group have prepared equivalents of the first fifty sentences, the group should assemble under the Leader's direction for a check-up. The Leader will read out one English sentence at a time (not necessarily in the order in which they are printed) and will call on various members of the group to give the Arabic versions. As each man calls out his answer, the others should compare it with their own results, and should supply whatever corrections and criticisms are necessary. For some of these sentences, there are several possible Arabic equivalents, all equally good. The Guide will act as judge, or the Leader can look up the answers in the Guide's Manual.

When the group has worked through the first list of fifty sentences, follow the same procedure with the second list. Prepare your Arabic sentences alone, and check up on yourself when the group gets together.

List I

1. Please speak slowly.
2. How much are two and two?
3. I'll give you two pounds.
4. It's one o'clock.
5. What are these?
6. Where's the toilet?
7. Go straight ahead.
8. I don't want potatoes.
9. Do you have fish?
10. Please repeat what you said.
11. Wait, I want to get off here.
12. When do you (pl) want me to stop?

13. It's not at all too much, sir.
14. Do you have change for five pounds?
15. A little in back of it there's a turn on your right.
16. I promise you, I'll be here for you ten minutes ahead of time.
17. Let's get on it (mas), it looks as though the train's late.
18. Would you like to come back and pick me up at 5:30?
19. We'll be staying here about two and a half hours.
20. Let me introduce you to Mr. Smith.
21. What ship did you come on?
22. I hope you had a nice trip.
23. What does his oldest son do?
24. He's a carpenter, and his second one is still a student.
25. How old are they?
26. What city is your brother in?
27. I know all of them.
28. I've enjoyed meeting you.
29. What state are you from?
30. How long have you been here?
31. To tell you the truth, I don't care about her age.
32. Do you want her to know how to cook, too?
33. Do you (fem) want to sleep in our house or with your folks?
34. How many days a week do you (fem) want off?
35. This is the girl I spoke to you about.
36. It makes no difference to me - do what suits you.

37. It depends on when you can see her.
38. Well, about how much will she want?
39. All right, when shall I see you to tell you the result?
40. She'll certainly ask a lot.
41. All right, leave it (fem) here and take something light.
42. I only put fresh things in my shop.
43. We prefer lamb here.
44. Do you want to pay for them now?
45. Tomorrow I'll send the maid to you to buy fruit.
46. You can pay at any time.
47. Pick out some good ones for me from on top.
48. Where do you buy your vegetables?
49. I want 200 grams of meat for stuffing.
50. Do you have something to put the things in?

LIST II

1. He wants matches.
2. This restaurant is very good.
3. I don't speak Arabic well.
4. Direct him to the station.
5. I want to go to the movies.
6. The bread is in front of you.
7. We want to eat there.
8. I didn't understand what you said.

9. The hotel is on your left.
10. I don't have a cigarette.
11. The train is crowded.
12. They cost fifteen piastres.
13. Where does this line go?
14. Do you see the building there?
15. I want to go back to the hotel.
16. Let me know when I get there.
17. Give me five tickets.
18. Where does he want to get off?
19. Let's wait for the next bus.
20. Stop at the red door on your right.
21. I've been here $2\frac{1}{2}$ years.
22. We think he's a cloth dealer.
23. He doesn't want to help his father.
24. He does everything we tell him.
25. Let's take him with us.
26. He wants to introduce me to his oldest son.
27. My brother will let you know when he gets there.
28. I came on the best boat.
29. The children are busy today.
30. It seems they want to visit your country.
31. When shall we see him to tell him the result?
32. These are the children I spoke to him about.
33. You (fem) have to learn French.
34. She makes the beds before she leaves the house.
35. Who was she working for before?

36. Can you direct me to his house?
37. All right. Put them on the account then.
38. I hope they'll be easily (= cheaply) satisfied.
39. Then he'll need a maid older than that.
40. Do you (fem) know how to wash and iron?
41. Let me order the vegetables today.
42. Put (fem) the things in your basket.
43. I want a heavy watermelon weighing about five kilos.
44. They don't eat meat on Friday.
45. Weigh us out three kilos of tomatoes.
46. Give us two uqiya of meat for stuffing.
47. The people in the city prefer beef.
48. Charge everything, I'll pay you the day after tomorrow.
49. Pick out a nice eggplant for me.
50. I buy my meat from the best place in the city.

3. Transformation Sentences A. Following the usual procedure, change the sentences of Group I from "he" to "they"; sentences of Group II to "you (fem)" and "you (pl)"; Group III "we" to "I".

Group I.

1. láazem yáakol ?àbl_maa_yétrok_lbèet .
2. bèddo_ŷəštəgəl bbéeto .
3. máa_byáref yékwi_mniin .
4. bibiif_sagáayer_bdəkkáanto .
5. žáaye layzúur_ləpláad .
6. bixálli_uláado hoon .
7. byámel_kəlši_halli_mən?əllo_yaa .
8. byáakol ?áktar mən ?əbno .
9. láazem yəb'a_hoon layšúuf_ləgráad .
10. húwwe ?áafed_bəlbèet .

Group II

1. btəhki_frənsáawi_mniin .
2. btáaxod_mənnə_ktiir .
3. wá??ef ?àbl_maa_túusal_lahniik .
4. šéfli_yáaha urəddəlli_xàbar .
5. lawéen_bəddak_trúuh ?
6. bəthəbb_təštəri_lfawáaki_mən_ŷando ?
7. kíifak ukíif_ulaadak ?
8. ʔmél_máruuf_tláaf_máfi .
9. bəddak_t?əlli_kəlši ?
10. kool ?àbl_maa_trúuh .

Group III

1. mnəštəri_xədrətna_mən_ŷando .
2. ?iza_maa_mənnəbbo_mnəaxod_ģéero .
3. xalliina_nərzəf_laŷəndhon .
4. mənđəlhon_kəlhon_ŷal?otəel .
5. mnəaxdak_məŷna ?iza_bətriid .
6. žəblna_yáaha_lanšúufha .
7. mnəŷmel_kəlši_byətlaŷ_bi?iidna .
8. bədna_nzúuro_báŷd_bəkra .
9. nəhna_mənfáddel_láhm_lbə?ar .
10. ?iza_maa_fhəmt_ŷaləena_mənfiid_kəlši .

4. Transformation Sentences B. Following the usual procedure, change the sentences of Group I from masculine singular first to feminine, then to plural. To the sentences of Group II add -li 'for me', -lna 'for him', -lo 'for him', -lha 'for her', -lhon 'for them' to the command forms.

Group I

1. ʃaʃiini_nàʔʔ_lbattfiixa .
2. rúuH_maf_ʔaxúuk ʃalbéet .
3. bətražžáak ʔəhki_ʃala_máhlak .
4. ʃméel_maʃrúuf ʔəllo_yéži .
5. láa_tənsa_maa_dzúurna_bəkra .
6. nzéel_latánt betšúuf_ʔámrad .
7. ʔtáʃli_lámmeet_moozáat .
8. kóol ʔabl_maa_trúuH_ʃalmháʃta .
9. štáǵel_šəǵlak_mniH .
10. dfáʃlo nsáabo .

Group II

1. ziin uʔiitéen_lámme .
2. žiib_lkuusaayáat .
3. ʔúul_dəǵri .
4. šúuf ʔaddées_šsáafa .
5. tróok_halǵráad hóon .
6. wáʔʔef ʔəddáam_lbáab .
7. sʔáal ʃan_ʔaxúuk .
8. ʃméel_lənsáab .
9. xóod mən_ʃándo kiilo_mdoz .
10. háʃt halxədəra bəssáalle .

5. Substitution Sentences

(1) láazem	náakol šwáyye ʔabl maa_	nəʃlaʃ .
	nsáawi ttxuut	nruuH ʃassiinama .
	nəmsan lʔard	nətrok lbeet .

(2) bəddi	šúuf	ha baʃd saafa bəl	beet
bəbb		o	balad
bríid		ak	mháʃta
		ek	máʃam
		kon	ʔoteel
		hon	

6. Number Review (a) Read off the following numbers in Arabic, first going horizontally left to right, then vertically top to bottom, or other ways until you can rattle off the numbers with no hesitation.

64	21	37	58	16	2	49	73	95	80
57	13	5	92	41	69	86	20	74	38
35	62	56	24	97	10	71	48	89	3
12	77	68	83	25	39	50	1	46	94
40	55	22	17	64	98	4	36	31	79
8	96	43	75	32	84	27	59	60	11
91	88	64	30	54	26	42	14	7	52
83	49	70	69	9	33	15	54	28	47
29	100	19	41	78	51	33	8	99	66
76	34	91	6	0	47	68	65	18	23

(b) Practice counting from 2 to 100 by two's and from 1 to 99 by two's, then from 5 to 100 and from 100 to 5 by two's, and so on, until you have no hesitation using these numbers for counting.

Arithmetic

(c) Read the following additions in Arabic.

1. 13 + 7 = 20
2. 5 + 5 = 10

3. $3 + 6 = 9$
4. $14 + 4 = 18$
5. $21 + 5 = 26$
6. $9 + 6 = 15$
7. $1 + 2 + 3 = 6$
8. $7 + 7 + 2 = 16$
9. $8 + 12 = 20$
10. $30 + 50 = 80$

(d) Read the following questions and answer them.

1. $3 + 5 = ?$
2. $2 + 7 = ?$
3. $6 + 4 = ?$
4. $20 + 30 = ?$
5. $60 + 30 = ?$
6. $45 + 45 = ?$
7. $8 + 9 = ?$
8. $25 + 25 = ?$
9. $80 + 15 = ?$
10. $10 + 15 = ?$

7. Questions and Answers.

1. ?addeš ?əmrak ?
2. laween bəddak truun ?
3. ?ašara uxamse ?addeš ?
4. kam leera mafak ?

5. feen lmanaṭta ?
6. ?addeš btaaxod mənna ?
7. šuu byešteḡel ?əbno lkbiir ?
8. b?anu balad mawžuude ?əmmak ?

6.12

9. ?addeš šarikon hoon ?
10. šuu bəddak yaa yaʼmel ?
11. ?eemta btəži lanəstannaak ?
12. mneen bəđžiib lammtak ?
13. kam walad ʼandak ?
14. mneen tʼallamt lʼarabi ?
15. ?anu saafa btaakol ?
16. šuu fii ʼandak ḡeer ssamak ?
17. ʼala ?anu baaboor ?əža ?axuuk ?
18. šuu ?asʼaar lxədra ʼandak ?
19. ?anu fawaaki bətnəbb ?aktar ?
20. kiif lhaale bəššaam ?
21. kam daʼiiʼa fii bəssaafa ?
22. feen lmatʼsam yalli fii lanme mniina ?
23. ?eemta btəžu dzuuruuna ?
24. kam təlmiiz ?əntu ?
25. ?eemta ranayəržaʼ laʼanna ?abuuk ?
26. feen lbinaaye yalli ?əltelli ʼanha ?
27. šuu bətriid ?əbʼatlak ?
28. ?anu saafa bətkuun faadi bəkra ?
29. ?addeš bəddak lataaxədna ʼalmarže ?
30. miin žaaye laʼandak lyoom ?
31. laween bəddak yaani ?aaxədhon ?
32. ?eemta bəʼarrefni ʼala ?axuuk ?

6.13

33. šuu ?əsm ʼsaanʼa yalli ?aaʼde ʼandhon ?
34. miin ?əža mafak ʼaššaam ?
35. mneen btaʼref ?əsmo ?
36. šloon haalet ?axuu ?
37. kam yoom lanatəbʼa bəššaam ?
38. lameen halḡraad ?
39. šuu ranatəšteri mən ʼanna lyoom ?
40. ʼand meen kaanet təšteḡel mən ʼabl ?
41. kiif maa lanatəži maʼ ?axuuk tʼsuufna ?
42. kiif hənnen mətʼaxriin lyoom ?
43. miin biʼuul ?ənno ʼsaanʼa maa btaʼref tətbox ?
44. ?anu lanme bətfaddel ?aktar ?
45. ?eemta ranatəsʼalha ʼan ?axuuha ?
46. kam saafa ranatəbʼa bəssiinama ?
47. mneen btaʼref ?ənno ?abuuhon mawžuud bəššaam ?
48. ?eemta bəʼder ruun mafak ʼalmatʼsam ?
49. ?anu saafa bətkuun bəlbeet lanatta ?əži zuurak ?
50. ?addeš btaaxod ssaʼfra bəlbaaboor mən beeruut lanyoork ?

8. Formulas. Practice the following formulas aloud and be sure you know when each one is used. Then be prepared to give an appropriate response without hesitation.

- (1) ?álla ixalliilo yáahon .
- (2) tfáddal . (offering food)
- (3) tēṣben ṣalaxeer .
- (4) xaatrak .
- (5) ṣabaan_lxéer .
- (6) ssalàamu_ṣaláykom .
- (7) kiif_ṣàntak ?
- (8) maṣ_ssaláame .
- (9) ?álla_màṣak .
- (10) māsa_lxéer .
- (11) lhámdella_ṣassalàame .
- (12) kiif_hàalak ?
- (13) máṣnaba .
- (14) tṣarráfna .
- (15) nṣáalla_ṣala_salàame .

DEPARTMENT OF STATE
FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
SCHOOL OF LANGUAGES AND LINGUISTICS

Section A. Basic Sentences

KEEPING COOL

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Good morning, Rafiq. | ṣabaan_lxeer yaa_rafii? . |
| 2. Good morning. | ṣabaan_lxeeraat . |
| weather | ta'ṣ |
| sweet, nice | hēlu |
| 3. Isn't the weather nice today?
("Are you seeing on the nice
weather today?") | Ṣāayef (ṣala_) haṭṭa'ṣ lhēlu_lyoom ? |
| unusual, extraordinary | mahuul |
| as if we | ka'anna |
| spring | rabiif |
| 4. It's unusual! It's just though
it were spring. | Ṣii_mahuul . wallaahi ka'anna_berrabiif . |
| appearing | bāayen |
| school | mádrase |
| 5. Hey, it looks as though you're late
for school today. | Ṣuu baayentak_met'axxer_ṣala_madrastak
lyoom ? |
| professor | ?estāaz |
| comes | yēzi . |
| class, lesson | dárs |
| 6. Right. Because the professor
isn't coming to the first class. | ?ee_walla la'anno_l'estaaz maaraha_
yēzi ṣaddars_l'awwal . |
| occasion | munāasabe |
| past | māadi |
| 7. By the way where were you
last week? | wbiha_l_munaasabe ?ente_ween_kent
Ṣṣamṣa_lmaadye ? |
| I took | ?axátt or ?axádet |
| opportunity, leave, vacation | fērṣa |
| I went up | ṣáṣ |

I spent (time)	maḍḍeet
8. I took a vacation and spent it up in Bludan.	ʔaxatt_fersa wətləft maḍdeetha bəbluudaan .
mountains	ʔbāal
9. How was the weather where you were in the mountains?	kiif_kaan_ttaʔs ʔandkon_bəʔʔbaal ?
believe	sāddeʔ
cold	bārd
10. Believe me it wasn't very cold.	saddeʔni maa_kaan_fii_bard_ktiir .
oh that!	yaareet
11. I wish you could see the spring we have in Beirut.	yaareetak_tʃuuf_rrabiif ʔanna_bbeerur
sweeter, nicer	ʔahla
12. There's nothing nicer (than that).	ʔahla_mən_heck maa_fii .
you saw	ʃəft
13. You haven't seen anything yet.	ʔee_lakaan maa_ʃəft_ʃii .
thousand	ʔālf
14. It's a thousand times better here in Damascus.	ʔanna_bəʃʃaam ʔahla_bʔalf_marra .
humidity, moisture	rṯuube
15. And we don't have the humidity you get there.	wmāa_fii_rṯuube mətḷ_maa_bišiir_ʔandk
truth, fact	haʔfiʔa
wind, air	hāwa
Lebanon	ləbnāan
dry	nāaʃef
healthful	ʃəhni
16. But really (in truth) the air on Mount Lebanon is dry and healthful.	bass_bəlhaʔiiʔa lhawa_bizabal_ləbnaan naaʃef uʃəhni_tamaaman .
sun	ʃāms
early	bakkiir
heads	rṯus

17. And the sun comes up early over the mountains.	wəʃʃāms_btətləf_bakkiir ʔala_ruus_ʔʔbaal .
views	manāazer
valleys	wədyāan
enchants	btəsher
human being	ʔənsāan
18. And the views of the valleys are beautiful ("enchant mankind").	wmanaazer_lwədyaan btəsher_lʔənsaan .
I summered	ʃayyāft
Dhour Choueir	dhūur_ʃʃwēer
19. I spent the summer in Dhour Choueir once.	ʔana_ʃayyāft bədhuur_ʃʃwēer marra .
I was healthy	ʃahhēet
I had a good time, I was happy	mbaʃātt or mbaʃāttət
20. I was very healthy and happy there. ("How much I was healthy and happy.")	ʔaddeʃ_ʃahhēet_wambaʃātt
we became exhausted	hləkna
quantity	kətr
heat	ʃōob
21. But in Beirut we were exhausted from the heat and humidity.	laaken_nəna_bbeeruut hləkna_mən_kət. ʃʃoob_wərrṯuube .
sea, ocean	təsbahu bahar
22. But don't forget you have the sea.	bass_laa_tənsa ʔənnə_ʔandkon_lbahr .
you swim	təsbahu
you are refreshed	tətrāttabu
23. You can swim any time and get refreshed.	btəʔdru_təsbahu ʔeemta_maa_kaan wtətrāttabu .
if	laww
climate	manāax
drier	ʔānʃaf
24. Anyway if the climate were a little drier it would be much better.	ʔala_kəll_haal laww_kaan_lmanaax_ʔānʃaf_bəʃwayye bikuun_ʔahsan_bəkt

summer	ṣēef
fall	xariif
25. I prefer to spend the summer and fall in the Mountain.	?ana bfaddel maddi sseef wəlxariif bəʒʒabāi .
winter	šətwiyye
26. You're right. But there's nothing nicer than winter in Beirut.	mafak_ħa?? . bass ššətwiyye_bbeeruut maa_fii_?aħla_mən heek .
idea	fəkr
summer	ṣeefiyye
toward	šoob
north	šmāl
time, period of time	zamāan
27. This summer we think we'll go up north for about a month.	fəkrna haṣṣeefiyye nruuħ_šoob_ššmaal šii_šahr_zamaan .
return	rāʒʒa
pass by, stop at	mrōo? <u>or</u> mērr
way	ṭarii?
summer resorts	maṣāayef
south	žnuub
28. And on the way back stop at the summer resorts in the south.	wbərražʒa mre?u (<u>or</u> mērru) biṭarii?kon ʔala_maṣaayef_žžnuub .
29. Have you (pl) ever gone to Alay? ("Your life have you gone to Alay?")	ʔəmṛkon_rəntu_laʔaaləe ?
30. Yes, we went last year and stayed a week.	naʔam rəħna_bəssəne_lmaadye eʔafadna_ žəmʔa .
father's brother	ʔamm
spending the summer	mṣāyyef
31. Our cousins were spending the summer there.	wlaad_ʔanna kaanu_mṣayfiin hniik .
lady	sātt
32. Did the ladies go with you?	wraamu_maʔkon_ššəttaat ?
natural	ṭabiifi

without	bāla
33. Naturally, we don't go without them.	ṭabiifi . maa_mənruuħ_balaahon .
I find	blāaʔi
it began	bāda
it changes	yəṭṭāyyar
34. What's this! I see the weather's changing.	šuu haada ? blaaʔi_ṭṭaʔs_bada_ yətṭāyyar .
clouds	ḡeem
suddenly	ʔāla_ḡafle
35. And where did all these clouds come from so suddenly?	whalḡeem mneen_ʔəža_kəllə_ʔala_ḡafle ?
rain	māṭar
strong	ʔāwi
36. It looks as though there's going to be a heavy rain.	byəžhar_lahatənzəl maṭar_ʔawiyye .
outside	bārra
inside	žūwwa
37. We can't stay outside; let's go in.	maa_mneʔder nəʔʔod barra xalliina nruuħ_lažūwwa .
come	tāʔa
together	sāwa
room	ʔūda
38. Come on, let's go to my room together.	tāʔa_māʔi lanruuħ_sawa_ʔala_ʔuṭṭi .

Section B. Pronunciation1. The vowel a.

The short a vowel in Arabic varies considerably depending on the kind of consonants around it. The best way to understand this variation is in terms of two tendencies (1) the BACKING tendency of velarized consonants, and (2) the LOWERING tendency of the pharyngeal consonants.

(1) Backing. What might be called the normal or basic sound of Arabic a is a sound between English e of bet and u of but. When a velarized consonant is near it, however, the sound is made further back, i.e., much nearer to the u of but or even a little further back. Here are many examples, most of them words you don't know, just for practice:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

(towards <u>e</u> of <u>bet</u>)		(towards <u>u</u> of <u>but</u>)	
bass	only	baṣṣ	bus
*mass	he touched	*maṣṣ	he sucked
*fazz	he got up	*faṣṣ	nude
*dabb	he knocked down	*daḅḅ	he packed
dall	he guided	*daḷḷ	he stayed
*damm	blood	*daḿḿ	he threaded
*taxx	he spit	*taḵḵ	he hit
*taff	he spit	*taḩḩ	it overflowed
*tall	hill	*taḷḷ	he looked
*mayyez	distinguish	maḩḩe	water
*ballaṣ	he began	baḷḷa	please

In Damascus r is midway between the plain velarized consonants in its effect on the sound a. In a large part of the Syrian Arabic area there are two "r" sounds, plain and velarized, and a word may have one or the other e.g. ḩaari 'flowing' but ḩaari 'my neighbor'. In Damascus, however, this is not the case. Just listen to the vowel sounds (especially a and aa) around r and imitate the Guide you are working with.

(2) Lowering. When a pharyngeal sound (ḩ or ʕ) comes next to short a the sound of the a is made with the tongue a little lower. In other words, it sounds a little more a in the direction of the English a in bat, or if in addition to the ḩ or ʕ next to the a there is also a velarized consonant in the vicinity, it is more in the direction of the a of father or the usual American o of not. This sounds complicated but actually is very easy to get used to. In fact you will find that all this variation in vowel sounds offers a good set of clues as to the neighboring consonants, since for the speaker of English it is usually easier to hear these vowel differences than to tell the plain and velarized consonants apart. But don't forget that the Arabic speaker usually doesn't hear these vowel differences at all--what he notices is the difference in the consonants.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

(towards <u>a</u> of <u>bat</u>)		(towards <u>o</u> of <u>not</u>)	
baʕd	after, still	*baʕd	some
*byesmaʕ	he hears	*byeṣraʕ	it strikes
baḩḩ	'sea'	ṣaḩḩ	he was healthy
*byeḩtaḩ	he opens	*byeṩraḩ	he subtracts

2. The vowel aa.

The long aa vowel in Arabic also varies considerably depending on the kind of consonants around it. The exact sound of this aa varies also from place to place in the Arab world. One thing that just about all dialects have in common is the difference of sound in the long aa depending on whether a velarized consonant is near it or not. In Damascus the "normal" aa, i.e. aa with no velarized consonant nearby, sounds something like the English a of bat but stretched out a little longer. The aa near a velarized consonant on the other hand sounds more like the a of father. With the long a the presence of ḩ or ʕ has no special effect in Damascus.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

*baas	he kissed	baaṣ	bus, passport
*faad	he benefited	*faaḩ	it was left over
*taab	he repented	*taaḅ	it became good
*saar	he went	ṣaar	he became
*daam	it lasted	*daaḿ	he injured

There is one other tendency worth noting: if there is no velarized consonant nearby and the vowel aa is followed by l, or to a lesser extent e, in the next syllable the sound of the aa is usually made somewhat higher in the mouth, i.e. it sounds a little more like the e of bet, but stretched out a little bit.

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE FOUR

(towards a of bat)

smaal	left, North
kaan	he was
baab	door

(towards e of bet)

smaali	northern
taani	second
baabi	my door

The best way to master these vowel variations, as with everything else in language learning, is to imitate the native speaker and practice incessantly.

Section C. Analysis

Note 7.1 Comparatives. The following three forms have appeared in the Basic Sentences of Units 1-7:

?anšaf	drier
?ahsan	better
?ahla	sweeter, nicer

This is the regular Arabic equivalent of English adjective forms in "-er". Such forms will be called COMPARATIVES. A comparative consists of a root (e.g. √nšf, √hsn, √hlv, etc.) plus ?a- prefixed and -a- inserted between the second and third consonants of the root. This could be abbreviated ?áCCaC where each C indicates a place for one consonant of the root.

A set of vowels of this kind which interlocks with a root and has a special grammatical meaning (e.g. "comparative") will be called a PATTERN.

Here is a list of comparatives:

<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Root</u>	<u>Noun of Same Root</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
?ábkar	earlier	bkr	bakkiir	early
?ábrad	colder, cooler	brd	bárd báared bardáan	coldness cold (things) cold (people)

<u>Comparative</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Root</u>	<u>Noun of Same Root</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
?ákbar	larger, older	kbr	kbiir	large, old
?áktar	more	ktr	ktiir	a lot, much
?ánšaf	drier	nšf	náašef	dry
?árxaş	cheaper	rxş	rxiiş	cheap
?áşwab	hotter	şvb	şóob	heat
?át'al	heavier	t'l	t'íil	heavy
?átyab	better, more delicious	tVb	táyzeb	good, good-tasting
?ázğar	smaller, younger	zğr	zğiir	small, young
?áhla	sweeter, nicer	hlv	hálu	sweet, nice
?áğla	more expensive	ğlv	ğáli	expensive

Notice that there is usually a corresponding adjective (or even several adjectives) of the same root, but sometimes the only corresponding form is non-adjectival noun of the same root (e.g. šóob). In other words, an Arabic comparative is usually not a comparative of a particular adjective as in English, but is the comparative for a particular root.

Notice also that ?áhsan 'better' serves as a comparative for miih 'good' although the roots (hsn, miih) are different; no form like *?ámmah is in use.

The Arabic equivalent of English "than" after a comparative is men. For example:

?ahmad ?akbar men ?axuuk . Ahmad is older than your brother.

When a pronoun follows, it is added to men as a pronoun ending and the separate pronoun is used, if at all, only for additional emphasis (cf Note 5).

?ahmad ?akbar menni . Ahmad is older than me (I).

Sample Sentences:

- ?axi ?azğar mennak bšaşr sniin . My brother is 10 years younger than you.
- manaax ššaam ?anšaf men manaax beeruut . The climate of Damascus is drier than the climate of Beirut.

3. lbataata ?arxaş mnəlxəbz . Potatoes are cheaper than bread.
4. zənli baṭṭiixa ?at?al mən hayye , Weigh me a watermelon heavier than this one.
5. l?əstaaz ?əža ʔalmadrəse ?abkər mnettala miiz . The professor came to school earlier than the students.
6. ššaam ?abrad mən beeruut beššete . Damascus is colder than Beirut in winter.
7. lmooz ?ağla mnetteffaah . Bananas are more expensive than apples.
8. ?ahsanlak ?iza btəb?a ʔanna . It will be better for you if you stay with us.
9. šuu haṭṭa?s ?ahla mən heek maa bišiiir . There can't be anything nicer than this weather.
10. ʔaalee ?akbar mən dhuur ššweer . Aley is larger than Dhour Choueir.

Note 7.2 Suffix Tense. Study the underlined verb forms in the following Basic Sentences of this and preceding Units:

- 7.9 kiif_kāan_tṭā?s_ʔāndkon_bəzzbaal ? How was the weather where you were in the mountains?
- 7.10 ...māa_kāan_fii bārd_kṭiirIt wasn't very cold.
- 2.1 léeko ?əža_lbāas . Here comes the bus! ("Behold the bus has come.")
- 3.38 ?addéeš_sāar_ʔəmrhon ? How old have they gotten to be? (How much has their age become?)
- 3.18 šlōon_kāanet_sāfrtak ? How was your trip?
- 4.32 ...kāanet ?āaʔdeshe was staying ...
- 7.31 ulāad_ʔamma kāanu_msáyfiin hniik . Our cousins were spending the summer there.
- 7.32 urāahu_māʔkon_ssəttāat ? Did the ladies go with you?

- 7.7 ... ?ənte wéen_kənt_žžəmʔa_lmāadye ? ...where were you last week ?
- 1.12 fhəmt_ʔaliyyi ? Do you understand? ("Did you understand on me?")
- 2.38 u?iza_t?axxārt ʔan_ssāaʔa_sətte... ...And if you're later than six o'clock...
- 3.16 ʔala_?ānu_baabōor_?žiit_hādrtak ? What boat did you come on?
- 7.13 ʔe_lakāan māa_šəft_šii . You haven't seen anything yet.
- 4.26 ʔānd_mīn_kənti_təštəgli_mən_ʔabl ? Who were you (fem) working for before?
- 4.31 wéen_tʔallāmti ? Where did you (fem.) learn it?
- 7.29 ʔəmrkon_rəhtu laʔaalée ? Did you ever go to Alay?
- 4.27 māa_kənt_?əštəgel ʔand_hāda . I haven't worked for anyone.
- 1.13 nāʔam, fhəmt_ʔalèek . Yes, I understood you.
- 3.13 ?žiit ʔalxdeewi_smaʔiil . I came on the Khedive Ismail.
- 7.19 ?āna_ṣayyāft bəddhúur mārra . I once spent the summer in Dhour.
- 7.8 ?axatt fərsa wəṭləʔt maddeetha bebluudaan . I took a vacation and spent it up in Bludan.
- 3.7 tšarrāfna . I'm glad to meet you. ("We've been honored.")
- 7.21 láaken nəhna_bbeerúut hlékna... But in Beirut we were exhausted.
- 7.30 rəhna bessène_lmāadye u?aʔādna_žžəmʔa . We went last year and stayed a week.

In addition to the forms of the Prefix Tense, there is one other set of verb forms in Arabic, characterized by suffixes (-et, -u, -t, etc.), which will be called the SUFFIX TENSE.

Here are sample third person forms:

káan	he was	káanet	she was	káanu	they were
táleŕ	he went up	ʔážet	she came	ráanu	they went
máraʔ	he passed	fáhmet	she understood	ğásalu	they washed
šáar	he became				

The third person singular masculine, the "he" form, consists of the stem (root plus pattern) with no prefixes or suffixes. This is the simplest form of the verb, and from this Unit on verbs will be entered in the Vocabularies under this form. The suffix -et is added to the masculine form for the feminine singular, and the -u plural ending already familiar from the Prefix Tense is added for the plural. Notice that stem vowel -e- is always dropped when -et or -u is added (nézel: nézlet: nézlu). Stem vowel -a- generally remains, but there is some variation. In Damascus the -a- is dropped before -et but kept before -u in verbs like kátab (kátbet: kátabu) and kept before both in verbs like saafad (saafadet: saafadu).

Here are further examples of third person forms of the Suffix Tense:

táleŕ	he went up	tálfet	she went up	tálfu	they went up
nézel	he went down	nézlet	she went down	nézlu	they went down
fáhem	he understood	fáhmet	she understood	fáhmu	they understood
ŕáref	he knew	ŕárfet	she knew	ŕárfu	they knew
ʔáxad	he took	ʔáxdet	she took	ʔáxadu	they took
kátab	he wrote	kátbet	she wrote	kátabu	they wrote
káan	he was	káanet	she was	káanu	they were
šáaf	he saw	šáafet	she saw	šáafu	they saw
žáab	he brought	žáabet	she brought	žáabu	they brought
náam	he slept	náamet	she slept	náamu	they slept
dáll	he directed	dálllet	she directed	dállu	they directed
hább	he loved	hábbet	she loved	hábbu	they loved
sáafad	he helped	sáafadet	she helped	sáafadu	they helped
ʔéža	he came	ʔéžet	she came	ʔéžu	they came

Here are sample second person forms:

fhémt	you understood	kánti	you (fem) were
ʔélt	you said	tšallámti	you " learned
tʔaxxárt	you became delayed	réhtu	you (pl) went
ʔžíit	you came	maráʔtu	you " passed

The second person suffix is -t, to which are added the feminine ending -i or the plural ending -u, both familiar from the forms of the Prefix Tense. Notice that the stem of the second person is not always the same as the stem of the third person, e.g. káan: kánti; ʔéža: ʔžíit.

Here are further examples of second person forms:

fhémt	you understood	fhémti	you (fem) understood	fhémtu	you (pl) understood
tléŕt	you went up	tléŕti	you " went up	tléŕtu	you (pl) went up
nzélt	you went down	nzélti	you " went down	nzéltu	you (pl) went down
katábt	you wrote	katábtí	you " wrote	katábtu	you (pl) wrote
maráʔt	you passed	maráʔti	you " passed	maráʔtu	you (pl) passed
ğásált	you washed	ğásálti	you " washed	ğásáltu	you (pl) washed
kent	you were	kánti	you " were	kántu	you (pl) were
ʔélt	you said	ʔélti	you " said	ʔéltu	you (pl) said
šéft	you saw	šéfti	you " saw	šéftu	you (pl) saw
ʔžíit	you came	ʔžíiti	you " came	ʔžíitu	you (pl) came
šayyáft	you summered	šayyáfti	you " summered	šayyáftu	you (pl) summered
habbéet	you loved	habbeeti	you " loved	habbéetu	you (pl) loved

Here are sample first person forms:

fhémt	I understood	tšarráfná	we were honored
tléŕt	I went up	rénna	we went

maráʔt	I passed	rǔéʔna	we returned
ʔǔiit	I came	hlákna	we were exhausted
maddéet	I spent (time)	tabáxna	we cooked

The first person singular suffix is -t. This means that the first singular and second masculine singular (the "I" and "you"-masc.) forms of the Suffix Tense are always identical. The first person plural suffix is -na. Notice that this suffix is identical with the first person plural ending -na 'us, our', and is the only instance of similarity between these two different sets of suffixes. The stem of the first person forms is always the same as the stem of the second person forms, i.e. if there are more than one stem in the Suffix Tense of a verb, there are only two - one for the third person (kaan, -et, -u) and one for the second and first (kan-t, -ti, -tu, -t, -na).

Here are further examples of first person forms:

nzélt	I went down	nzélna	we went down
fhémt	I understood	fhémna	we understood
rǔéʔt	I returned	rǔéʔna	we returned
réht	I went	rémna	we went
žébt	I brought	žébnna	we brought
maddéet	I spent (time)	maddéena	we spent (time)
habbéet	I loved	habbéena	we loved
ṣayyáft	I summered	ṣayyáfnna	we summered
ǧasált	I washed	ǧasálnna	we washed

All these suffixes are the same for all verbs. There is some variation however in the stem structure of verbs, and this will gradually be explained in succeeding Units.

The Arabic verb system is fairly complex, but it is REGULAR. This means that you have a lot of facts to learn about stem variation, but once you learn the system any new verb that comes up will fit into the system: there are practically NO IRREGULAR VERBS in Arabic. The only verb that is irregular in the Suffix Tense is ʔəža.

Here are the full lists of Suffix Tense forms for typical verbs. For the time being accept the stems as they are and concentrate on mastering the suffixes. Gradually you will get to understand the stems:

kátab	'write'	názel	'go down'	káan	'be'
kátbet		názlet		káanet	
kátabu		nézlu		káanu	
katábt		nzélt		ként	
katábtí		nzéltí		kéntí	
katábtu		nzéltu		kéntu	
katábt		nzélt		ként	
katábna		nzélna		kénna	

Like kátab are: ǧásal, láfat, ʔáʕad, háfaz, másah, dáfaʔ, and others.

Like názel are: ʔámel, ʔáref, fáhem, réžeʔ, and others.

Like káan are: žáab, náam, záan, šáar, ráad, and others.

Note 7.3 Nisbes. Many adjectives in Arabic end in -i. In some cases (like faadi) the -i is part of the root. In most cases, however, this -i is a special adjective suffix which is added to nouns very much as -y or -ish is added in English (fish: fishy; man: mannish). The meaning of this Arabic -i suffix is 'pertaining to, relating to, connected with' and adjectives of this kind are sometimes called RELATIVE ADJECTIVES. The Arabic name of this adjective is násbe (it 'relation, proportion'), and in this manual they will be called NISBES, the English form of this word. Several examples have occurred in Units 1 - 7:

<u>nisbe</u>	<u>meaning</u>	<u>basic noun</u>	<u>meaning</u>
ʔárabi	Arabic, Arabian	ʔárab	Arabs
ṭabíiʔi	natural	ṭabíiʔa	nature
ṣéhhi	healthful	ṣáhhna	health
šátwi	winter (adj)	šáte	winter

Notice that a feminine t- ending is dropped before adding the -i nisbe suffix. Here are further examples:

mahálli	local	maháll	place
beerúuti	Beirut, from Beirut	beerúut	Beirut
báladi	municipal	bálad	city
šáami	Damascene	ššáam	Damascus

šnáali	northern	šnáal	North
žnúubi	southern	žnúub	South
šéefi	summer (adj)	šéef	summer
šáhri	monthly	šáhr	month
báhri	sea (adj), sailor	báhr	sea
šámsi	solar	šáms	sun
teffáani	apple-colored (= pale golden yellow, not red like most American apples)	teffáan	apples
nəswáani	women's, feminine	nəswáan	women
ləbnáani	Lebanese	ləbnáan	Lebanon

Notice that if the basic noun regularly has l- 'the' this is dropped (ššáam: ššáami) and that sometimes the nisbe is formed from the plural (nəswáan: nəswáani).

The feminine of a nisbe always ends in -iyye. Sometimes this feminine form of the nisbe is used as a noun itself, e.g.:

šetwiyye	winter season
baladiyye	municipality
šamsiyye	parasol, umbrella

The plural of a nisbe usually ends in -iyyiin, but other plurals also occur, especially if the nisbe is being used as a noun in its own right. Occupation names often have a plural just like the feminine singular in -iyye; nationality names often use the basic noun on which the nisbe is formed as a plural or have a quite unpredictable plural. Examples:

<u>nisbe</u>	<u>feminine</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>meaning</u>
frənsáawi	frənsaawiyye	frənsaawiiyyiin	French
tabiiši	tabiišiyye	tabiišiyyiin	natural, Naturalist
báhri	(bahriyye)	bahriyye	sailor

<u>nisbe</u>	<u>feminine</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>meaning</u>
?amerkáani	?amerkiyye or ?amerkaaniyye	?amerkáan	American
?engliizi	?engliiziiyye	?engliiz	English
?afránži	?afranžiyye	?afránž	Western, European
beerúuti	beeruutiyye	bayáarte or bawáarte	Beirut
šáami	šaamiyye	šwáam	Damascene

Nisbe

1. btaʔrʔi tətəbxi təbx ?afranži ? Do you know how to cook European style?
2. ?ahmad ?axad waande frənsaawiiyye . Ahmad married ("took") a French woman.
3. ?axi bihebb lbiira l?amerkaaniyye. My brother likes American beer.
4. šəft marra waaned ?engliizi hnik . I once saw an Englishman there.
5. bədfaʔ šahri xamsiin leera ləl?oteel . I pay 50 pounds monthly at the hotel.
6. fii baas yoomi mnəššáam labluudaan . There's a daily bus from Damascus to Bludan.
7. marti raahet təštəri ?maaš šeeʔi . My wife went to buy some summer cloth.
8. bəddi maddi ššetwiyye žžaaye bbeeruut . I want to spend the coming winter in Beirut.
9. ?eelti maddet sseefiyye lmaadye bəlžabal. My family spent last summer in the mountains.
10. hal?maaš nəswaani muu režžaali . This is women's cloth not men's.
11. maʔi baas ləbnaani . I have a Lebanese passport.
12. ?ana bhebb ssamak lbahri . I like salt-water fish.
13. lhawa lžabali naašef . The mountain breeze is dry.
14. hayy blaad žabaliyye . This is mountainous country.

15. ?axad fərša seefiyye . He took a summer vacation.
16. ššwaam biruuhu labeeruut layəsbahu bəlbahr . The people of Damascus go to Beirut to swim in the sea.
17. bəddi kiilo beetənžaan baladi . I want a kilo of local eggplant.
18. ttaʔs hoon muu səhhi . The weather is unhealthful.
19. xood ?əʔra halxabar lmaħalli . Here! Read this local news item.
20. fii řandak ?maaš řetwi ? Do you have winter cloth?
21. bařref režžaal beeruuti mniin ktiir . I know this Beirut man very well.
22. lxəbz lbeeruuti řayyeb . Beirut bread is good.
23. btənki řarabi ? Do you speak Arabic?
24. ?əža zaarna waħed řarabi . An Arab came to see us.
25. marti řtaret ?maaš loono teffaani . My wife bought some yellowish material.
26. manaax beeruut manaax bahri . The climate of Beirut is a maritime climate.
27. fii bəlxdeewi smařiiil miit bahri . There are 100 sailors on the Khedine Ismail.
28. ssəne ššamsiyye tnařřar řahr . The solar year consists of twelve months.
29. řaayef halbinaaye ? hayy lbaladiyye . See that building? It's the city hall.
30. ?žiit řala baaboer ?ameerkaani . I came on an American ship.
31. marto řaamiyye . His wife is from Damascus.
32. l?amerkaan bifadlu lamm lbaʔar . Americans prefer beef.
33. třallamt ?əngliizi bəlmadrəse . I learned English in school.
34. ?aktar lbayaarte byařrfu yəsbahu . Most Beirutis know how to swim.

Section D. Exercises

1. Completion Sentences. Read the following sentences aloud filling in the appropriate Arabic comparative for the English work in parentheses.

- manaax řabal ləbnaan (drier) mən manaax beeruut .
- lmooz (more expensive) mne_tteffaah .
- bluudaan (colder) mne_šřaam .
- beeruut (hotter) mendħuur_šřweer .
- btəži (earlier) mne_l?əstaaz .
- bəddi battiixa (heavier) mən_hayye .
- řaar lhawa (colder) mən ?abl .
- tteffaah (more delicious) mne_lxoox .
- biħəbb lřanam (more) mne_lbaʔar .
- m?akkad ?ammad (better) menni_bəřarabi .
- ?iza bətbiiřni (cheaper) mən_ħeek, bəřtari .
- ħħuur_šřweer (smaller) mən_řalee .
- bmaddi (most) ?aw?aatii bəbbeet .
- ?ammad (younger) mən xaliil .
- šřaam (larger) mən bluudaan .
- řaar ttaʔs (better) mən_?abl .
- nnžaař (sweeter) mne_ttfaah .
- bento ləkbiire (nicer) mne_zžgiire .
- ?ənte (stronger) mənno bəř?əngliizi .
- halbinaaye (largest) binaaye biħalbalad .
- ?ammad (better) waħed bəlmadrəse .
- (most) nnaas byaaklu bəbbeet .

2. Transformation Sentences I: Change the sentences of Group I to plural "I" to "we". Change sentences of Group II and III to feminine and to plural.

Group I

saaʔatt ʔabi .	I helped my father.
ʔakalt maʔ ʔemmi .	I ate with my mother.
šrebt ʔahwe .	I drank coffee.
ʔaʔatt belbeet .	I stayed at home.
rənt ʔassiinama .	I went to the movies.
žəbt ləğraad .	I brought the things.
saʔalt ʔsaanfa ʔanno .	I asked the maid about him.
sabant belbahr .	I swam in the ocean.
Group II	Were you in Beirut?
kent bbeeruut ?	
nəmt bakkiir ?	Did you go to bed early?
tləʔt ʔalmaʔyaf ?	Did you go up to the summer resort?
habbeet beeruut .	You liked Beirut.
fhəmt kəlši .	You understood everything.
ʔaawant ʔaxi .	You helped my brother.
ʔayyaft bžabal ləbnaan ?	Did you spend the summer in Mt. Lebanon?
leeš tarakt lmadrəse ?	Why did you leave school?
Group III	He sold the house.
baaʔ lbeet .	
ʔaar mniin .	He turned out well.
ʔaxad fərʔa .	He took a vacation.
štağal šəğlo .	He did his work.
ʔaal lhaʔiiʔa .	He told the truth.

zaan llaħme .	He weighed the meat.
ħaʔt lħədar bəssalle .	He put the vegetables in the basket.
lafat ʔand lbinaaye .	He turned at the building.
nəzel bʔoteel mniin .	He stopped at a good hotel.

3. Transformation Sentences II. Change the verb forms from prefix tense to the corresponding suffix tense forms.

ʔante btaakol belbeet ?
byaʔmel kəlši mniin .
ʔeemta btənzəl ʔalbalad ?
bruun maʔhon .
ʔanu saafa btəržafu ʔalʔoteel ?
bətsaddeʔ ʔaxuuk ?
biriid samak ?
mənʔayyef bʔaalee .
bimerr ʔaleena .
byətʔallamu ʔarabi bəlmadrəse .
šuu bətrəbb tsaawi ?
mneʔʔod bəlʔahwe ʔand lmasa .
bəktob ʔəsmak .
btəfham ʔaliyyi ?
bədzuur ʔaħmad ši .
byəštəğlla kəlši mniin .
maa byəħfəz darso .
daayman ʔuul lhaʔiiʔa .

bəʃrab ʔahwe ssaafa ʔidaʔš .
 leeš maa btəsʔal lʔəstaaz ʔanhon ?
 bəddəll rrežžaal ʔalʔoteel .
 bətsaafed ʔabuuha .
 byaaxdu xams_leeraat .
 bʔaawno bkəlši .
 biredd ləğraad .
 btaʔref fiiha ?
 ʔeemtabətʂuuf ʔahmad ?
 ʔeemta mənžiib xədarna mən ʔando .
 hiyye btəlfet fiiha .
 hiyye bətkuun bəlbeet ssaafa xamse .
 bʔənn ʔənnak bəʔsiir ʔəstaaz .
 bətnaamu bəlʔoteel ?

4. Questions and Answers.

1. kam yoom ʔaʔatt bbeeruut ?
2. biʔanu ʔoteel ʔakalt ?
3. ween maddeet fərʂtak ?
4. ʔaddeš dafaʔu haʔʔ lbeet ?
5. ʔəmrak rənt laʔameerka ?
6. miin ġasal lğasiil ?
7. laʔanu siinama raanu ?
8. šuu ʔallak lʔəstaaz tsaawi ?
9. daxlak ʔeemta zaarak ʔahmad ?
10. nšaalla fəhmet ʔalee mniin ?

11. ʔaddeš ʔələfələnsaab ? (How much does the bill come to?)
12. ʔaaluulak šuu bədhon ?
13. kam sene ʂarlha ʂaanaʔa ʔandkon ?
14. bʔaddeš baafak uʔiyyet_llaame ?
15. šuu katabu laʔabuuhon ʔan_lmadrise ?
16. sabant bəlbəhr ši ?
17. saafadet ʔəmma ši bəlğasiil ?
18. daxlak saʔaluuk ʔanni ši ?
19. ʔaddeš ʔaxdet mafak ssaafa mən saan fransiisko ləššaam ?
20. ʔziit mafa ʔala zaat lbaaboor ?

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Jones and Ahmad talk about how they are spending the summer.

- J. wéen_kent ? ʂarli_žəmʔa_maa_šəftak ?
- A. walla ʔaxatt_lʔeele utləʔt_maddeet_kam_yoom_belmašaayef .
- J. laʔanu maʔyaf rənt ?
- A. bəlʔəwwal tleʔt_ʔala_bluudáan . umenha ʔala_dhúur_ššweer .
- J. baayentak_mbaʂatt_ktiir !
- A. ʔée_walla . bass_yaa_réetak_kent_mafi, kent_mbaʂatt_ʔáktar .
- J. law_ʔəltəlli kent_rənt_mafak .
- A. ʔziit_laʔandak_martéen_laʔəllak, bass_maf_lʔásaf_maa_šəftak .
- J. kent_barráat_lbalad, rənt_ʔala_beerúut .
- A. šlón_šəft_ʂeefha ?
- J. múu_ʔašwab_mnə_ššaam_bəktiir, bass_hlékt_mən_kətr_rrtuube .
- A. kent_laazem_truuh_təsbəh_bəlbəhr utəʔratətab_šwáyye .

- J. uhéek_ſmælt, sabant_tlét_marraat .
- A. ubihalmunáasabe mará?t_bitarii?ak_ſala_ſálee ?
- J. tabíiſi, berráſſa_marreet_fiiha ,
- A. kiif_ſefta ?
- J. lbalad_hélwe_ktiir umanaaxa_?ánla . bass_yaa_?axi_maſſúu?a_ktiir .
- A. tabíiſi . bihalwa?t_?áktar_nnaas_byežuuſha .
- J. fækri_rúuH_maddiili_fiiha_ſii_kam_yoom .
- A. ?iza_btěstannáani_ſii_yoomeen_yemken_?etlaſ_máſak .
- J. beſtannáak . lna?ii?a bfaddel_máa_ruuH_lamanall_balaak .
- A. ſáfwan_yaa_?axi . ſert_tafref_ləblaad_?aktar_mənni .
- J. lana žəblak_?áhwe . ſúu_bət?uul ?
- A. hoon žuwwa !? l?uuda_šóob_ktiir . táſa_nətlaſ_labarra .
- J. mníiH_fii_?ahwe_ſeefiyye_wára_l?oteel .
- A. ſéft_?addeš_hoon_lhawa_?abrad ?
- J. máſak_ħa?? .
- J. blaai_ſala_ğáfle_bəddak_truuH ?
- A. ſámmi_žaaſe_izúurna_lyoom .
- J. táyyeb_?éemta_bšuuſak ?
- A. bəkra_nšaalla . xáatrak .
- J. ?alla_máſak, maſ_ſſaláame .

Conversation 2. The next day.

- A. ?axatt_ſərſa_žəmſteen .
- J. ſii_ſáal . lakaan_mnə?der_rruuH_lyóom .
- A. lá? . bəkra_bikuun_?anſan .

- J. šuu_ſaleek_šəğəl_lyoom ?
- A. bəddi_?áaxod_lulaad_u?ayyədhon_bəlmadrəse .
- J. ?éemta_btəbda_ddruus ?
- A. b?əwwal_lxariif . yaſni_bafid_ſáſr_tiyyaam .
- J. ?əbni_ləkbiiir_tſárraf_ſala_?əſtaaz_?əbn_ſárab .¹ bəddo_yətſállam_ſando_ſárab .
- A. la?ééš_byəlzamo_l/árabi ?
- J. fəkre_táani_səne_yəži_ləbləad_lſarabiyye .
- A. ?alla_ixalliilak_yáa .
- J. ?alla_yənfəzak, uhalla?_?éemta_mərruuH ?
- A. bəkra_bəži_ləſandak_been_ttmaane_wettesſa .
- J. ?addéš_byaaxod_maſna_ſſarii?_labluudaan ?
- A. múu_?aktar_mən_saaſa_unəſſ .

Conversation 3. At the summer resort.

- J. bəddak_đđəğri_halmanáazər_hoon_btəšer_l?ənsaan .
- A. ?éé_ſəssaak_máa_ſéft_ſii, ?iza_btətlaſ_ſalaráas[#]_lžabal_bətšuuſ_lbənr .
- J. bass_fii_šwayyet_bárd .
- A. tabíiſi_máa_bə?i_bəššeeſ_?əlla_l?aliil .²
- A. bafid_šáhr_máa_byəb?a_hada_mnə_lmſayfiin .
- J. bžennəllak_bifalee_máa_bišiir_bard_mətl_hoon .
- A. m?ákkad . unatta_fii_naas_ktiir_bimaddu_lxariif_fiiha .
- J. ?ánu_?abrad_bəššəte_beerúut_yəmma_ššáam ?
- A. ššáam_?ábrad, bass_rabiif_ššáam_həlu_ktiir .
- J. fækri_?əržəſ_ſal?oteel_bəddi_?áakol .

¹?əbn_ſárab 'son of Arabs' is the commonest way of saying 'an Arab'. Similarly bənt_ſárab and uláad_ſárab are used for the feminine and plural.

²máa_bə?i_b-... ?əlla... 'there didn't remain ...except...' means 'there is only ...left'. máa_bə?i_bəššeeſ_?əlla_l?aliil 'There's only a little of summer left.'

A. yálla³ . nšáalla_?uuttak_mniina ?

J. sənhiyye_ktiir ššams_btəžiha mnəşşabáan ləlmasa .

ʔyalla (= yaa_ʔalla) is used to mean 'come on, let's go, get going, get to work, scram'

Section G. Vocabulary

ʔánla	sweeter, nicer, better	ǵáfle	
ʔálf (pl ʔaaláaf, ʔlúuf)	thousand	ʔála_ǵáfle	suddenly
ʔánšaf	drier	ǵéem (coll; pl reg or ǵyúum)	clouds
ʔáwi (adj f ʔawíyye strong pl ʔawáaya)		háwa (m; pl ʔéhuwe ft)	air, wind
ʔúuda (ft pl ʔúwad)	room	hálek (a)	be exhausted
ʔənsáan	human being	haʔiiʔa (ft pl haʔáayeʔ)	truth, fact
ʔəstáaz (pl ʔasáatize)	professor, sir	hélú (adj f hélwe pl helwiin)	sweet, nice, pleasant
ʔəža (-əži)	come	kaʔann-	as if, as though
báayen (adj)	apparent	kétr	quantity of
báda (a)	begin	láʔa (-láaʔi)	find
báhr (pl bhúur)	sea, ocean	láww	if (something were so)
bakkíir (inv)	early	máadi	past
bála	without	mádrase (ft pl madáares)	school
bárd	cold	mádda (i)	pass, spend (time)
barra (ft barraat- no pl)	outside, abroad	mahúul	unusual, extraordinary
beerúut (f)	Beirut	manáax (pl -aat)	climate
bludáan	Bloudane - resort town near Damascus	mánzar (pl manáazer)	view
dárs (pl drúus)	lesson	máraʔ (o)	pass
dhúur ššwээр	Dhour Choueir, Lebanese mountain resort	márr (ə)	maraʔ
fékr (pl ʔafkáar)	idea, intention	máşyaf (pl maşáayef)	summer resort
fərşə (ft pl feras)	opportunity, chance, leave, vacation	máţar (f pl ʔamţaar)	rain

mbásat (-mbəset)	be happy	šóob (coll)	heat
métl	like, as	šetwiyye	winter season
msáyyef (adj)	spending the summer	táfa (fem táfi pl táfu)	come
munáasabe (ft) bihal munáasabe	occasion by the way	tǵáyyar	change, be changed
náašef (adj)	dry	tráttab	get wet, be refreshed
ráas (pl rúus)	head	táʔs	weather
rabiiʔ	spring	tabiiʔi (adj)	naturally
rafiiʔ	Rafiq	tariiʔ (pl tereʔaat and ʔetroʔ ʔeterʔa)	road, way
ráʔa (ft)	return, way back	wáadi (pl wedyáan)	river valley, watercourse
rʔuube (ft)	humidity, moist air	walláahi = wálla	
sábaH (a)	swim	xariif	fall, autumn
sáddaʔ	believe	yaa réet	O that!, I wish ...
sáhar (e)	enchant	zamáan	period of time, long time
sáwa	together	žábal (pl žbáal)	mountain
sétt (f) (pl settáat)	lady	žnúub	south
šáHH (e)	be healthy	žuwwa (ft žuwwaat no pl)	inside
šáyyaf	spend the summer	šaalée (f)	Aley, resort town near Beirut
šéef	summer	šámm (pl šmúum)	father's brother; father-in-law
šeefiyye (ft)	summer season		
šóob	toward		
šéHHi	healthful		
šáaf (u)	see		
šáms (f; pl šmúus)	sun		
šmáal	north (NB=left)		

7.28

Unit 7 - Supplementary Sentences

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. ʔaxatt fəʔsa žžemʔa lmaadye | I took leave last week. |
| 2. ʔtaʔs ʔanna həlu | The weather we have is nice. |
| 3. lmanaax ʔanšaf beššaaH | The climate is drier in Damascus. |
| 4. ʔee walla bard ktiir lyoom | Yes, indeed. It's quite cold today. |
| 5. ʔabrad mən heeb maa fii | It can't be colder than this. |
| 6. nəHna ʔayyafna bebluudaan | We spent the summer in Bloudane. |
| 7. maa fii šóob metl maa bišiiir ʔandhon | There isn't any heat like the kind they get. |
| 8. ʔanna lbahr mneʔder nəsbəH ʔeemta | We have the sea. We can swim at any time. |
| 9. saddeʔni maa fii rʔuube ktiir | Believe me, there isn't much humidity. |
| 10. mafak Həʔʔ bass ššeef hniik ʔašwab | You're right, but the summer there is hotter. |
| 11. maa biruuhu balaana | They won't go without us. |
| 12. tafu mafna lanruuH sawa | Come with us and we'll go together. |
| 13. ššams ʔelʔet bakkiir | The sun came up early. |
| 14. halwlaad.mneen ʔəžu kəlhon ʔala ʔafle ʔ | Where did all these children come from so suddenly? |
| 15. bass belHəʔiiʔa lxiariff hniik ʔaHla | But in fact fall is nicer there. |
| 16. ʔəmrak rəxt labeeruut ʔ | Have you ever gone to Beirut? |
| 17. ʔabaan lxeeraat yaa ʔaxi | Good morning, pal. |
| 18. šuu fəkrak tafmel hallaʔ ʔ | What do you intend to do now? |
| 19. fəkri ruuH zuuro | I intend to go visit him. |
| 20. laww kaan ʔazǵar bikuun ʔansan | If he were younger it would be better. |
| 21. šuu halhawa halli ʔeleʔ | What a wind just came up! |
| 22. ʔariiʔ ššaaH ʔansan mən heek | The road to Damascus is better than this. |
| 23. həlku mən kətr ššóob hassəne | They were exhausted from the heat this year. |

24. berraʒfa mreʔu ʒalmadraxe || On the way back stop (pl) at the school.
 25. maḍdeet ššetwiyye bbeeruut || I spent the winter in Beirut.
 26. lhawa bežžbaal mašef wəɣɣni || The air in the mountains is dry and
 healthy.
 27. lʔəstaaz ʔəža metʔaxxer ʒaddars || The professor came to his first class
 lʔawwal || late.
 28. šaayef halmanaazer lhəlwe hoon ? || Do you see these lovely views here?
 29. ssettaat bifadlu ymadḍu sseef || The ladies prefer to spend the summer
 bežžbaal || in the mountains.
 30. ʒala kəll haal maa mneʔder nəʔod || In any case we can't stay outside.
 barra ||
 31. šarref lažuwwa || Please come in.
 32. tabiiʔi || ʔəbn ʒammi mawžuud || Naturally. My cousin's here too.
 kamaan || " "
 33. ʔaddeš mbašatna ʒandkon || What a good time we had at your place!

KEEPING CLEAN

Section A. Basic Sentences

- At the barber's ʒand_lhallaaʔ
 gentleman kawaaža
 1. Welcome, sir. ʔahla_wsaħla yaa_xawaaža .
 by your life wənyáatak or behyáatak
 Gibran žəbráan
 lighten xáffef
 hair šáɣr
 2. I'd like a haircut please, Gibran. wənyáatak_yaa_žəbraan bəddi_xaffef_
 šaɣri_šwayye .
 you shave tʔəšš or təhleʔ
 chin dáʔn
 3. Do you want a shave too? bəddak_tʔəšš_daʔnak_kamaan ?
 cut ʔəšš or hleeʔ
 4. Cut my hair and then I'll see. ʔəššelli (or hleʔli)_šaɣri wbaʔdeen_
 bšuuf .
 neck ráʔbe
 5. How do you want your neck? šloon_bəddak_rraʔbe ?
 6. Take a little off there for me. xaffəfli_yaaha .
 machine or gadget mákana or maakina
 scissors mʔášš
 7. Do you want me to cut your hair
 with clippers or scissors? bəddak_ʔəššəllak_šaɣrak_bəlmakana
 wella_bəlmʔašš ?
 electricity kəhraba
 8. I have electric clippers. ʒandi_maakiina ʒalkahraba .
 bootblack bóoyaži
 pair of shoes sabbaat
 9. Please tell the bootblack to shine
 my shoes. ʒmeel_maɣruuf ʔuul_ləlbəoyaži yəmsahli_
 polish lámmeʔ sabbaati .

10. Do a good job on the shoes, Ali.

oil

11. Shall I put hair tonic on, or just water?

comb

12. Comb it dry.

part, difference

13. And put the part on the side.

14. I think I have time to shave,

knife

yours

sharp

15. Is your razor sharp?

razor blade

16. I'll shave you with a safety razor if you want.

I brush you

17. Do you want me to brush you off, sir?

18. (Polite formula)

19. (Reply)

wood (for fuel)

tank, hot water heater

20. Please put wood in the heater.

kindle, light

bath

21. And light (the heater for) a bath.

you get a bath

22. When do you want to take your bath?

possible

23. Now, if possible.

lamməʔli_ʂʂabbaat mniin yaa_ʔali .

zəet

bhəttəllak_zəet_ʂʂafr_wella_bəss_mayy ?

máʂʂet

maʂʂəttli_yaa_ʔannaasəf .

fár?

wəfməlli_lfar? ʔala_ʒanab .

bəftəker_ʔandi_waʔt_laʔəʂʂ .

múus

tábaʔak

hádd

lmuus_tabəʔak hadd ?

ʂʂafra

bʔəʂʂəllak_bəʂʂafra_ʔiza_bətriid .

farʂʂilak

bəddak_farʂʂilak yaa_ʔestaaz ?

nəfiiman yaa_siidi .

yənʔam_ʔaleek .

hátab

ʔaazáan

bənyaaatek həttə_hətab_bəʔaazəan .

ʂʂəʔel

hammáam

wʂaʔliili_lhammaam .

təthammam

ʔeemta_bəddak_təthammam ?

mámken or múmken

halla?_ʔiza_məmkən .

noon

mother's brother

24. We're going to my uncle's this afternoon.

hot

25. Don't put too much wood on; I don't like the water too hot.

prepare

clothes

towel

26. All right, let me get out your clothes and the towel for you.

soap

fiber bath sponge

there they are

closet, cabinet

27. And the soap and sponge are in the cabinet.

open

28. Open it and take them (out).

suit

brown

shirt

white

29. Are my brown suit and white shirt ready?

cleaners

30. I just brought them from the cleaners. halla?_ʒəbthon_mnəlməʂgağa .

socks, stockings

31. And your socks are ready, too.

dəhr

xáal

bədna_nruun_labeet_xaali_bəʔd_dəhr

ʂəxn

laa_thətti_hatab_ktiir_maa_bhəbb_lmayye_ʂəxne_ktiir .

hádder

tyáab

mánʂafe

ʔayyeb . lahəddərlak_tyaabak_wəlmənʂafe

ʂaabúun

líife

ʂáʔhon

xzáane

wəʂʂaabuun_wəlliife_ʂáʔhon_bəlxzaane .

ftáan

ftanna_wxədhon .

táʔm

bánni

ʔamiis

ʔábyad

ʔaʔmi_lbənni_wəʔamiis_lʔabyad_haadriin_ʂii ?

məʂbağa

kalsáat or ʒraabáat

wkalsaatek (or wəʒraabaatak) haadriin_kamaan .

you close	tsákker
tap	hanafiyye
you finish	btáxloş
32. Don't forget to turn off the tap when you finish.	laa_tansa_tsakker_lhanafiyye wa't_ btaxloş .
dry (verb)	náşşef
33. Dry yourself well so you don't catch cold ("better you not take cold").	naşşef_haalak_mniin 'ansan_maa_taxod_bard .
you are afraid	txáaf
sweetheart (fem.)	habiibe
34. Don't worry about me, dear.	laa_txaafi_faliyyi_yaa_habiibti .
35. (Formula at end of bath)	nafiiman_yaa_habiibi .
36. (Reply)	yen'am_faleeki .
coat	kabbúud <u>or</u> kabbúut
hat	bərnéeta
37. Bring me my coat and hat and let's go.	žiibiili_lkabbuud_wəlbərneeta_lanruun .

1. The inserted vowel at the end of words.

Many Arabic words end in two consonants, such as xəbz, daʔn, ʔərš, etc. As you have probably already noticed, words of this kind are often pronounced with an extra -ə- between these two consonants: xəbəz, daʔən, ʔərəš. There is a good deal of fluctuation in the use of this ə, but a few general statements can be made.

- (1) All words ending in two consonants tend to have the inserted vowel when the word is the last word in a question. This is discussed below with the whole question of question intonation.
- (2) Apart from questions, with some particular consonant combinations in these words the ə tends to be used regularly (e.g. sm: ʔəsəm; bn: ʔəbən) and with other combinations the ə tends to be used very little (e.g. rš: ʔərš; nt: bent). The combinations that tend to have the rarely are chiefly:
 - a) r or l plus another consonant (ʔbfttdsszšžk)
 - b) mb, mf, nd, nt, nt
 - c) many combinations ending with t or s

	PRONUNCIATION	PRACTICE ONE
ʔalf	thousand	daʔən chin
ʔərš	piastre	ʔəsəm name
bard	cold	ʔamər order
bent	girl	tabəx cooking
* ʔalb	heart	baħər sea
dars	lesson	səxən hot
šams	sun	taʔəm suit
farʔ	separation	* baʔən abdomen

- (3) Double consonants at the end of a word are usually not split by this inserted vowel (e.g. məss, never *məsəs), but there is an exception. When the double consonant is tt or tt in the first or second person singular of the suffix tense of a verb, the inserted vowel often appears (e.g. fətt or fətət 'I passed').

	PRONUNCIATION	PRACTICE TWO
sett	lady	*fətt or fətət I passed
xatt	line	ʔaxətt or ʔaxədət I took
ħatt	he put	fətt or fədət I repeated

2. Question intonation.

The intonation, i.e. the way the level of pitch at which a sentence is spoken rises and falls, of Arabic is, on the whole, very similar to that of English. The chief difference is the question intonation.

In Arabic there are three kinds of questions in terms of intonation. One kind is the QUESTION-WORD QUESTION. There were two examples in Unit 8 Basic Sentences - 8.5 and 8.22. Questions of this kind contain a question word šuu 'what', 'addeš 'how much', 'eemta 'when', lees 'why', ween 'where', 'anu 'which', miin 'who', and some others. In a question of this kind normally the loudest stress and highest pitch are on the question word, the pitch drops right after the stressed syllable and stays there until the end of the sentence, the whole sentence is spoken in one phrase, and the last syllable of the sentence is drawled or stretched out. This intonation is strikingly different from the normal American intonation on questions of this kind and must be imitated very carefully.¹ Here are examples:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

1. bi'ānu 'otēel_nāazel ?
2. wēen_kānt_ 'ābl_ḡḡāher ?
3. 'eemta_bšūufak_bēkra ?
4. 'addeš_hā' 'o ?
5. lawēen_rāahet_ššāanfa ?
6. dāxlak² šlēon_šēelto ?
7. šala 'ānu_baabōor_ 'žīit ?
8. šūu_bēddak_yāaha_tāšmel ?
9. šlēon_lhāale_bēššāam ?
10. nšāalla³ katābt_la'axūuk ?

Another kind of question is the YES-OR-NO QUESTION. Questions of this type have no question word. Examples in Unit 8 Basic Sentences include 8.3, 8.15, 8.17. The primary stress comes in various places in the sentence depending on the constructions. The pitch is fairly high at the beginning, drops in the middle if the sentence is rather long, and rises at the end. This is not very much different from the ordinary American intonation in such questions. The chief difference is that Arabic speakers often drawl the last syllable of question of this kind, too, so that they sound a little strange to Americans.

The third kind is almost a combination of the first two: the EITHER-OR QUESTION. There are two examples in Unit 8 Basic Sentences: 8.7 and 8.11. Questions of this kind are spoken in two parts, so that they often sound like two separate sentences to Americans. The first half of the question is just like an ordinary yes-or-no question. The second part, beginning with the word for "or" (wella, 'aw, yaa, etc.) ends like a question-word question, and some speakers even put loud stress and high pitch on the word for "or" making it a regular question-word. This either-or intonation is quite different from American intonation for sentences of this kind, but it is easy to learn once you pay attention to it and try to imitate it. Here are examples of yes-or-no questions and either-or questions:

¹One caution: if you overdo the drawling of the last syllable many Arabs will find this humorous or distasteful, so you must be careful to imitate the drawl without stretching the vowel too much.

²When a word like dāxlak or balla is used with one of these questions, it is said first, usually with a fall in pitch like the end of a statement and then the remainder of the sentence is spoken like any other question-word question. For example see sentence 3.34 in Unit 3.

³The word nšāalla often functions as a question word along with this intonation. There was an example in Unit 1 (Sentence 1.7)

1. btāšref_ 'axūuhon_šii ?
2. bēddak_yāaha_tāšref_tēḡbox ?
3. rāha_ 'tāakol_hālla ?
4. hūwwe_hālli_ 'āllak_trūuh ?
5. dafaštallo_hā' 'tā'mak_šii ?
6. betriid_tšarrēfna_šalbēet ?
7. bet'āšš_bēlmūs_yamma_bēššāfra ?
8. menzūuro_lyōom_wēlla_bēkra ?
9. bētfāddeI_lāhm_lbā'ar_wēlla_lḡānam ?
10. 'āllak_trūuh_hālla? yamma_bāšd_šāafa ?

Section C. Analysis

Note 8.1 Verbs. All Arabic verbs have Prefix and Suffix Tense and Command forms and they all have the same prefixes and suffixes. As you have seen, however, Arabic verbs show considerable variation in the structure of the stem. There are two general types of Arabic verbs: (1) Verbs with stem consisting simply of root plus pattern (katab, yaktob; šaaf išuuf; dall idall; etc.). These will be called PRIMARY VERBS. (2) Verbs with stem consisting of root plus pattern plus some other feature, such as doubling the second consonant (šarraf, isarraf), long -aa- between the first and second consonant of the root (saafad, isaa'ad), -t- after the first consonant of the root (štaḡal, yaštəḡel), etc. These will be called DERIVATIVE VERBS.

Primary verbs have two possible patterns in the Suffix Tense:

Pattern A characterized by the vowel -a- in certain positions (katab, fataḥ, taḡax; šaaf, naam, zaab; dall; ḡaka).

Pattern I characterized by the vowels i, e, ə in various positions (nəzel, fəhem; nəsi).

For each primary verb you must learn whether it has pattern A or I in the Suffix Tense.

Derivative verbs have only one possible pattern in the Suffix Tense. They all have pattern A (sakkar, saafad, štaḡal, mbaṣaṭ).

Primary verbs have three possible patterns in the Prefix Tense:

Pattern A characterized by the vowel -a- in certain positions (yaftaḥ, inaam, ya'ra).

Pattern I characterized by the vowels i, e, ə in various positions (yənzal, iḡiib, yaḡki).

Pattern U characterized by the vowels u, o, ə in various positions (yaṭṭax, išuuf).

For each primary verb you must learn whether it has pattern A, I, or U in the Prefix Tense.

In general derivative verbs have only one possible pattern in the Prefix Tense, and in general any one kind of derivative verb always has the same pattern in the Prefix Tense. For most kinds of derivative verbs this is pattern I (isakkar, isaa'ad, yaštəḡel, yambəṣet); but certain kinds, chiefly those with a -t- before the first consonant of the root, have pattern A (yaṭṭallam, yaṭṭaxxar, etc.).

In other words, for derivative verbs you have to learn only one form and you will know all the other forms. For a primary verb you have to learn two forms so that you know the stem vowel of the Suffix Tense and the stem vowel of the Prefix Tense. From this unit on only the third person singular masculine form of the Suffix Tense will be given in Vocabularies for derivative verbs; for primary verbs this form will be given and in parentheses after it will be the pattern of the Prefix Tense. Here are sample entries:

naššaf	dry	(naššaf 'he dried'; inaššaf 'he dries')
tšallam	learn	(tšallam 'he learned'; yaṭšallam 'he learns')
fataḥ (a)	open	(fataḥ 'he opened'; yaftaḥ 'he opens')
katab (u)	write	(katab 'he wrote'; yaktob 'he writes')
nəzel (i)	go down	(nəzel 'he went down'; yənzal 'he goes down')

Note 8.2 Active participles. Study the underlined forms from the Basic Sentences of Units 1-8 given below:

- 2.27 šaayef lbinaaye lḡamra...? Do you see the red building...?
- 3.10 zaaye layzuur blaadna . He's here (=he has come) to visit our country.
- 3.13 ... laazem 'ətrok... ... I'll have to leave...
- 3.40 ... lamma bikuuru faadyiin ... when they're free.
- 4.32 ... kaanet 'aafde She was sitting ...
- 5.19 bəṭṭəllak lbaa'i ... I'll put the rest (=the remaining) ...
- 7.16 lhawa ... naašef uṣəḡḡi ... The air ... is dry and healthful ...
- 7.30 ... rəḡna bəssəne lmaadye we went last year ...
- 8.29 ... ta'mi ... wəl'amiis ... ḡaadriin šii ? Are my ... suit and ... shirt ready?

Each of these words has long -aa- between the first and second consonants and -e- after the second consonant, has the regular feminine and plural forms of an adjective (Ft ending and -iin), and is associated with a simple verb having the same root. Words of this kind will be called ACTIVE PARTICIPLES. Often for the sake of convenience they will be translated by English verb forms in -ing (seeing, doing, passing, etc.), but actually the active participle of Arabic does not correspond exactly to any English form. Its use and meaning are described below.

As mentioned in Note 5.4 most Arabic roots consist of three consonants. Roots of this kind are called SOUND (in Arabic saalem). Some roots, however, do not have a full-fledged consonant in the position either of the second or of the third consonant of the root. Such roots are called WEAK (in Arabic muṣṭall). If it is the second consonant that is missing the root will be symbolized CVC. If it is the third consonant that is missing it will be symbolized CCV. For all CVC and CCV roots the missing consonant appears as a -y- in the active participle. Here are the forms:

CCC	√nšf	naašef	naašfe	naašfiin	dry
	√šrf	šaaref	šaarfe	šaarfiin	knowing
	√nzl	naazel	naazle	naazliin	going down
CVC	√nvm	naayem	naayme	naaymiin	asleep
	√zvb	zaayeb	zaaybe	zaaybiin	bringing
	√švf	šaayef	šaayfe	šaayfiin	sleeping

CCV	√hkV	haaki	haakye	haakyiin	speaking
	√stV	saati	saatye	saatyiin	giving
	√bʔV	baaʔi	baaʔye	baaʔyiin	remaining

Here are further examples of active participles:

1. haatet ulaado balmadrise . He has (put) his children in school.
2. byezhar ʔabu ʔafiif baayef kall xadrto . It looks as though Abu Afif has sold all his vegetables.
3. miin faateh lbaab ? Who opened the door?
4. ʔana faahem ʔalee ʔuu baddo . I understand what he wants.
5. laa tənki lulaad naaymiin . Don't talk. The children are sleeping.
6. haada ʔente halli kaateb lwaraʔa ? Was it you who wrote the paper?
7. tfaɖdal kool maʔi . mamnoon ʔaakel . Please eat with me. No, thank you, I've eaten.

The active participle usually refers to past-present action, i.e. action that has already begun and is still going on or that has already taken place and the results are still in evidence. For example, the use of haatet in sentence 1. implies that the children are still in school. hatt lulaad balmadrise . 'He put the children in school.' would refer to the specific act of putting the children in school without any indication of whether they are still there or not. Similarly, you would use sentence 3. only if you knew the door was still open. miin fatah lbaab 'who opened the door?' would give no indication of whether he door was still open or not.

Here are several examples of a somewhat different use of the active participle:

1. nənna naazliin bəkra ʔala beeruut . We're going down to Beirut tomorrow.
2. nsaalla bəkra raaʔef ʔala ʔəgli . I hope I'll get back to my work tomorrow.
3. ʔahmad muu ʔaaye lyoom . Ahmad isn't coming today.
4. ʔaalfə laʔuudətha dʒiib ʔarad . She's going up to her room to get something.
5. nənna baaʔyiin hoon saasteen . We'll be staying here two hours.

With verbs relating to place (i.e. to motion from one place to another, or remaining in the same place) the active participle is more often used to refer to present-future action, i.e. to action now taking place and to be continued or action to take place in the future. Sometimes the active participles of these verbs are used in the usual past-present way e.g.:

1. biʔanu ʔoteel naazel ʔaxuuk ? What hotel is your brother staying (= has gone down) at?
2. ʔarli ʔet ʔemaʔ taarek beeruut . I left Beirut three weeks ago.

Sometimes you can't tell from the sentence itself whether the active participle of one of these verbs refers to past-present or present-future action, and you have to rely on the situation. For example:

huwwe ʔaaye layzuur blaadna . He has come)
He's coming) to see our country.
of

The following are the active participle verbs of place which have appeared in Units 1-8 and often used the present-future meaning: maareʔ, ʔaazel, raayez, raaʔef, taarek, ʔaalef, waasəl, ʔaaye; ʔaafed, baaʔi .

Note 8.3 CCV verbs. In Note 7.2 the suffixes used with verbs to form the Suffix Tense were given and the Suffix Tense forms for most kinds of primary verbs were listed. The only verbs not given were those with CCV roots. In the Suffix Tense such verbs, like other primary verbs, may have pattern A or I. In the Prefix Tense they may have pattern A or I, but not U. Here are the full forms of both tenses of primary verbs of CCV roots.

háka	he spoke	nəsi	he forgot
háket	she spoke	nəsyet	she forgot
háku	they spoke	nəsyu	they forgot

hakeet	you spoke	nsiit	you forgot
hakeeti	you (f) spoke	nsiiti	you (f) forgot
hakeetu	you (pl) spoke	nsiitu	you (pl) forgot
hakeet	I spoke	nsiit	I forgot
hakeena	we spoke	nsiina	we forgot

yəbʔa	he stays	yəkwi	he presses
təbʔa	she stays	təkwi	she presses
yəbʔu	they stay	yəkwi	they press

təbʔa	you stay	təkwi	you press
təbʔi	you (f) stay	təkwi	you (f) press
təbʔu	you (pl) stay	təkwi	you (pl) press

ʔəbʔa	I stay	ʔəkwi	I press
nəbʔa	we stay	nəkwi	we press

Here are the CCV verbs which have appeared in Units 1-8:

ʔara	yəʔra	√ʔrV	read
bada	yəbda	√baV	begin
haka	yənki	√hkV	speak
hawa or hawi	yəhwa	√hwV	contain, etc.
kawa	yəkwi	√kwV	iron, press
laʔa	ilaaʔi	√lʔV	find
ʔana or ʔəni	yəʔni	√ʔnV	mean
ʔata	yəʔti	√ʔtV	give
bəʔi	yəbʔa	√bʔV	remain
nəsi	yənsa	√nsV	forget
rədi	yərda	√rdV	be satisfied

Notice that the verb la'a 'find' has a very unusual Prefix Tense stem -laa'i instead of the expected *-l'i.

Derivative verbs with CCV roots (with the single exception of stanna yəstanna 'wait') have pattern A in the Suffix Tense and pattern I in the Prefix Tense. Here are the verbs of this kind which have appeared in Units 1-8:

maḍḍa	imaḍḍi	√mḍV	pass, spend (time)
wadda	iwaddi	√wdV	take, lead
wassa	iwassi	√wsV	order
xalla	ixalli	√xlv	leave, let
štara	yəštəri	√šrV	buy
farša	ifarši	√frš + V	brush

Note 8.4 Command Forms. In Note 5.1 the command forms were given in full for most kinds of verbs. It was explained that the Prefix Tense stem of a verb is used unchanged in the masculine command form if it begins with a single consonant, and is used with lengthened stem vowel if it begins with two consonants, e.g. šuuf, dell, wa'ʔef but šmeel, tlaaʔ. Two further points must be observed in this connection.

(1) All derivative verbs use the Prefix Tense stem unchanged as the masculine command form no matter whether the stem begins with one consonant or two, e.g. šteḡel 'work!', štəri 'buy!', tšallam 'learn!'; saaʔed 'help!', naššef 'dry!', xalli 'leave!'.

(2) When a pronoun ending (such as -ni, -ak, etc.) with or without -l- 'to, for' is added to a command form certain shortenings take place. Two examples occurred in this Unit:

hleeʔ	cut hair	hleeʔli	cut hair for me
šmeel	do	šmelli	do for me

For ordinary primary verbs with sound roots the lengthened stem vowel is shortened -aa- is shortened to -a-; -ee- and -oo- are shortened to -ə-.

Here are examples with the pronoun ending -o 'him, it':

ftaan	open	ftaano	open it	ftaalo	open for him
šmeel	do	šmelo	do it	šmello	do for him
ktoob	write	ktabo	write it	ktablo	write to him

The command forms of the verbs ʔakal yaakol 'eat' and ʔaxad yaaxod 'take' are also shortened:

kool	eat	kalo	eat it	kello	eat for him
xood	take	xedo	take it	xedlo	take for him

Notice that CVC verbs which have a long vowel in the Prefix Tense do not have this shortened form with pronoun endings:

žiib	bring	žiibo	bring it
šuuf	see	šuufo	see it

However, as mentioned in Note 4.5, a long vowel before the final consonant of a word is shortened before -l- 'to, for' so that these verbs have the shortened form with this -l-:

namlak	sleep (for yourself)
žəbli	bring (to) me
šəflo	see for him

Primary verbs with CCV roots drop the ʔə- of the command form when these pronoun endings are added:

ʔansa	forget	nšaa	forget it	nšaalə	forget for him
ʔəhki	speak	hki	speak it	hkiilo	speak for him

Examples of command forms without and with pronoun endings:

- | | | | | | |
|------------|-------------------|------------------------|----------------|---------------|---------|
| 1. xood | leḡraad | maʔak . | xedon | maʔak . | |
| | Take the things | with you. | Take them | with you. | |
| 2. sʔaal | lʔəštaaz | ʔan ddans . | ʔʔalo | ʔanno . | |
| | Ask the professor | about the lesson, | Ask him | about it. | |
| 3. šuuf | xaliil | bəkra . | šuufə | bəkra . | |
| | See Khalil | tomorrow. | See him | tomorrow. | |
| 4. dell | nabiha | ʔalbeet . | della | ʔalbeet . | |
| | Direct Nabiha | to the house. | Direct her | to the house. | |
| 5. ktoob | ʔəsmak | ʔalwaraʔa . | ktəbo | ʔalwaraʔa . | |
| | Write your name | on the paper. | Write it | on the paper. | |
| 6. bʔaat | lulaad | ʔalmadrəse . | bʔaton | ʔalmadrəse . | |
| | Send the children | to school. | Send them | to school. | |
| 7. ʔəkwi | lʔamiis | lʔabyad . | kwii | . | |
| | Iron the white | shirt. | Iron it. | | |
| 8. dfaaʔ | lənsaab . | dfaʔo . | | | |
| | Pay the bill. | Pay it. | | | |
| 9. ʔəʔra | darsak . | ʔraa . | | | |
| | Read your lesson. | Read it. | | | |
| 10. stanna | ʔahmad | ʔəddaam | ssiinama . | stanna | hniik . |
| | Wait for Ahmad | in front of the movie. | Wait for him | there. | |
| 11. ftəker | fiiha | laʔahmad . | ftəkerlo | fiiha . | |
| | Think about it | for Ahmad. | Think about it | for him. | |

Note 8.5 m - Nouns. There are several prefixes that occur with certain patterns forming nouns of special meanings. The commonest of these prefixes is m-, which occurs with a variety of patterns (maḡsuuʔ, məʔaxxer, maʔšam, maʔrfe, etc.). One common pattern is maCCaC which is found in the following nouns of Units 1-8:

m - noun	meaning	root	meaning
manzar	view	√nZR	looking
mašyaf	summer resort	√syf	summer
maʔšam	restaurant	√tšm	food, tasting
madrəse	school	√drs	studying
manšafe	towel	√nšf	dryness
mašbaḡa	cleaner's	√sbḡ	dyeing

In general m - nouns of this kind (maCCaC with or without ft ending) refer either to the place or instrument of the action referred to by the root. Thus a madrəse is a place where people study (√drs); a manšafe is a thing with which people dry themselves (√nšf). A few m - nouns of this kind simply name the action of the root (e.g. manzar). Further examples of m - nouns like the ones mentioned are given below. Each noun is marked P if it is an m - noun of place (in Arabic ʔəsm_makaan), and I if it is an m - noun of instrument (ʔəsm_ʔaale). Other nouns are unmarked.

P	maktab	office, desk	√ktb	writing
P	maʿmal	factory	√ʿml	doing, working
P	maʿṣad	seat	√ʿsd	sit
P	masbaḥ	swimming pool, place where people swim	√sbh	swim
P	maxraʿ	exit	√xřž	going out
P	maṭbax	kitchen	√tbx	cooking
P	mamraʿ	corridor	√mrʿ	passing
I	madfaʿ	cannon, big gun	√dfʿ	pushing, attacking, paying
I	mazhar	appearance	√zhr	appearing
P	maktabe	library, bookstore	√ktb	writing, books
I	mamsana	dustcloth, rag for cleaning	√msn	wiping
I	maḥfaza	container, wallet	√hfz	preserving
I	maḡsale	wash basin	√ḡsl	washing
I	masʿale	question	√sʿl	asking

It is worth noticing that the masculine nouns of this pattern are usually nouns of place while the feminine nouns are usually nouns of instrument, although you can't predict which noun is going to be which.

All the examples given above contain sound roots. If the second and third consonant of the root are alike (abbreviated $\sqrt{C_1C_2C_2}$) the pattern is maCaCC, feminine mCaCCe/a:

	mamarr	corridor	√mrr	passing (cf √mrʿ)
	maḥall	place	√hll	solving
P	maṣaḥḥ	sanatorium	√ṣhh	health
P	mḥatta	station	√htt	putting
I	mdaʿṣa	pestle	√dʿṣ	striking, pounding
I	mʿašše	broom	√ʿšš	sweep, shame
I	mḥabbe	love	√hbb	loving

With CCV roots the pattern is maCCa:

P	mašta	winter resort	√štV	winter
P	malʿa	meeting place (for lovers)	√lʿV	meeting

With CVC roots the pattern is usually maCaaC although occasionally it is maCyaC or maCwaC:

	maṭaar	airport	* √tvr	flying
	maḥaam	dream	√nVm	sleeping
	manaame	sleep	√nVm	sleeping

1. Questions and answers A. Every one of these questions contains an active participle. Use the participle again in the answer.

1. ʿand miin ḥaaleʿ šaḥrak ?
2. laween raayen bakra ?
3. miin faaten lbaab ?
4. šuu ʿaayeballak ʿemmak tešteri ?
5. biʿanu madrase ḥaateṭ ulaadak ?
6. ʿala ʿanu baaboor ʿaaye ssett men ʿameerka ?
7. ʿaddeš šarlha šsaanfa taaretkon ?
8. biʿeeš ʿaašeš daʿnak ?
9. šuu ʿesm šsaanfa halli ḥaṭṭiinha ʿandkon ?
10. kam sene baaʿi laʿəbnak lekbiir bəlmadrise ?
11. ʿaddeš daafeʿ ḥaʿʿ ṭaʿmak ?¹
12. naazliin ʿentu hallaʿ ʿalbalad ?
13. nšaalla baaʿi ʿaxuuk ʿanna labakra ?
14. ṭaaleʿ biʿiidak² truun ḥallaʿ ?
15. ʿemta ʿaaye šaanəʿtkon taaxod leḡraad ?
16. ṭaalfa maʿak ssett ʿalmaṣaayef ?
17. nšaalla ḥaafziin darskon ?
18. mneen šaarye ʿemmak halkabbuud ?³
19. ḥaabbe ʿemmak ṭəṭlaʿ maʿak ?

2. Questions and answers B. Every one of these questions contains a Suffix Tense form. Use Suffix Tense forms in the answers whenever possible.

1. mneen štareetu llaḥme ?
2. ween maddet ʿemmak šseefiyye lmaadye ?
3. leeš maa saawet šsaanfa ttxuut ?
4. ʿemta ʿəžu ʿawaʿiik mnəmaṣbaḡa ?
5. maʿ miin raanu ulaadak ʿassiinama ?
6. ʿanu saaʿa badeet šəḡlak lyoom ?
7. ʿand miin laʿa ʿaḥmad šəḡl ?
8. bʿaddeš štaraalak ʿabuuk halkabbuud ?
9. leeš maa ʿareet darsak ʿabl maatruun ʿalmadrise ?
10. biʿanu madrase ʿayyadet (ʿayyatt) ulaadak ?

¹ = 'How much did you pay for your suit?' The regular Arabic equivalent of "pay for" in this sense is dafaʿ ḥaʿʿ.

² ṭaaleʿ b(i)ʿiidak 'can you' The expression ṭaleʿ bʿiid- means 'be in a position to, find it possible to.' Cf. the use of taḥt ʿiidi in Unit 4 = 'at my disposal, I have available.'

³ The active participle šaari 'buying' is used altho the primary verb of √srV is not used in Syrian Arabic.

11. kam yoom b'iitu bbeeruut ?
12. ?eemta zaarak l'əstaaz ?
13. miin na''aalak halkuusaayaat ?
14. lees; maa rədi ?axuuk yəb'a hoon labəkra ?
15. šuu nsiitu hniik ?
16. miin fətanlak lbaab lamma ?ziit ?

3. Transformation Sentences A. These sentences can be transformed in a variety of ways. First a change them to feminine and plural as in the Completion Sentences A of Unit 5. Then go through the sentences again replacing nouns with pronoun ending. Here is a sample:

xood ulaadak falmadrise .
 xədi ulaadek falmadrise .
 xədu ulaadkon falmadrise .

xədhon faleeha .
 xədihon faleeha .
 xəduuhon faleeha .

1. faṭi lhallaa' leera .
2. hətt ləğraad bəlbeet .
3. zuur ?əmmak u'abuuk .
4. ?əbda šəğlak .
5. dfaaf na'' ta'mak .
6. faawen ?axuuk .
7. šuuf ?ahmad ?eemta bəddo yeži .
8. ?əkwi ta'mak ?abl maa truun .
9. wašši xaliil fallahme mnəlyoom .
10. maddi sseefiyye žžaaye bəžžabal .
11. ?ə'ra darasak ləl'əstaaz .
12. bfaat ?əbnak yənle' šafro .
13. ?əšš da'nak kəll yoom .
14. kool llaḥme ma' lxdra .
15. stanna žəbraan lanatta yəxloš .
16. waddi hassalle falbeet .
17. booyi sabbaatak .
18. xalli šsaanfa təmsan ?ard.l'uuda .
19. ktoob ?asaamihon kəlhon .
20. ?ənsa ššaam halla' .
21. tfallam frənsaawi byərda faleek ?abuuk .
22. ušaal lafand lhallaa' .
23. ušuu' ?iza kaan faadi .
24. štəri ggraadak mən fand ?abu xaliil .
25. ?əbda šəğlak ba'fd bəkra .

26. farši kabbuudak .
27. xaffef šafrak .
28. gseel wəššak .
29. tboox hallahme ma' lkuusa .
30. dəll nabiiha falbeet .
31. ftaan lhanafiyye .
32. wa''ef fala ?awwal baab fala yamiinak .
33. laa'i ləğraad .
34. ?əb'a bbeetak ši kam yəem .
35. ?taaf tlaat waa' laḥme .
36. biif lbeet bfašriin ?alf leera .
37. fhaam darsak mniin .
38. lfeet fand halbinaaye .
39. na''i kiilooyən təffaah .
40. s'aal žəbraan fan ?axuuk .
41. striin hoon ši kam saafa .
42. šraab l'ahwe .
43. ziin halbaṭṭiixa ušuu'fa ?addeš bəṭṭlaf .

4. Transformation Sentences B. Add -l- 'to, for' with pronoun endings -i, -o, -ha, -na, -hon to the command forms in these sentences.

1. ?iim halbaṭṭiixa fala žanab .
2. bfaat xabar lamma bəṭṭal .
3. ktoob fala wara'a šuu ?əlak ma'fi .
4. xood halğraad falbeet .
5. ?ə'ra kəlši katabo ?axuuk .
6. ?əkwi tta'm lbənni .
7. ziin xams waa' laḥme .
8. fhaam lees ?ahmad muu žaaye .
9. xalli halkam leera ma'ak .
10. ftaan lbaab lamma byeži žəbraan .

5. Transformation Sentences C. Change the following to feminine and plural.

1. la'a šəğl bbeeruut .
2. nəsi ggraado bəddəkkaan .
3. kawa ?əmsaano lbiid .
4. naka kəlši la'axuu .
5. farša t'uumto .
6. ?əža falmadrise mət'axxer .
7. rədi bšii ?aliil .
8. štara laḥmto mən fand ?abu fafiif .
9. madda sseefiyye bžabal ləbnaan .

10. be'i bel'oteel žemſteen .
11. waſſa ſala kiilo mooz .
12. wadda lxəbz ſalbeet .
13. xalla 'awafii belmaſbağa .
14. bada bſəglo ssaafa tmaane .
15. 'ara darso 'abl maa iruun ſalmadraxe .
16. madda ſahreem bađhuur ſſweer .

6. Transformation Sentences D. Change the active participles in the following sentences to feminine and plural making any other necessary changes.

1. haatet ulaado belmadraxe .
2. bi'anu 'oteel naazel ?
3. leeſ kaateb halwara'a ?
4. bəkra raažef ſalmadraxe .
5. faahem ſalee ſuu bəddo ?
6. haafez darsak ſii ?
7. raayen ſassiinama mafna .
8. taarek bəkra 'abl ddehr .
9. baa'i belbeet ləlmasa .
10. raažef ſaſſaam baſd bəkra .
11. naazel ſii mafna labeeruut ?
12. baſd ddehr taalef soob lžabal .
13. 'aakel men saafa .
14. ſaayef ! kelſi mniih .
15. 'aari ddars men 'abl .

Conversation 1. Jones and Ahmad meet.

- J. weenak bhal'iyyaam maa nada biſuufak ?
 A. 'ana been l'ayaadi¹, bass bhalwa't saayef ſəgſli ktiir.
 ufoo' haada 'əbni zžgiir muu mabſuut .
 J. xeer nſaalla ? salaamto, ſuu saayerlo ?
 A. men meddet tlata rbaſ tiyyaam režef
 mnəlmadraxe lmasa, maa 'eder laa yaakol ulaa inaa .
 J. whalla? ſloono ?
 A. 'ansan beſwayye . uyemken baſd bəkra biruun ſalmadraxe .
 uhalla? laween raayen yaa mester žoons ?
 J. naazel soob lbalad 'əſteri ta'm ſetwi .
 A. lha?? bi'iidak², lbard hassəne 'əža ſala bakkiir .
 J. 'iza maa fii ſaleek ſəgſel, tafa mafi .
 A. 'ana raayen 'əſſ ſafri , bxaaf 'iza reht mafak 'eržaf laa'i lhallaa?
 mafžuut .
 J. ukiif 'iza stanneetak lahatta təkloſ ?
 A. heek mniih ktiir , lakaan ruun mafi lafand lhallaa? .
 J. la? rana 'estannaak bel'ahwe halli ſala žanab lmarže .
 A. yafni hayy halli mnəffod fiiha daa'iman ?
 J. hiyye bzaatha .
 A. ſaal , bkuun ſandak ſal'aktar baſd saafa .
 J. haada 'iza kaan lhallaa? muu mafžuut ?
 A. 'ana baſref metl halwa't daayman bikuun faadi .

Conversation 2. They meet later after Ahmad's visit to the barber's.

- J. naſiiman .
 A. 'alla yenſam ſaleek .
 J. ſuu byezhar bass 'aſſeet ſafrak , umaa hala't da'nak . yoom 'ee yoom la?⁴
 A. men ſaſr sniin u'ana b'əſſ da'ni lanaali³ yoom 'ee yoom la? .
 J. bi'eeſ ? belmuus yemma beſſafra ?
 A. beſſafra .
 J. xədlak 'ahwe ubaſdeen mərruun .
 A. bass saar ddehr , laazem naakol .
 J. bi'anu maſſam ?
 A. maa bədha lmas'ale maſaſem , mnaakol ſanna belbeet .

¹been l'ayaadi = been 'ayaadiik 'between your hands = at your disposal'

²lha?? bi'iidak = lha?? mafak 'you're right'

³lanaal 'alone' lanaali '[me] alone, by myself'; lanaalo '[him] alone, by himself', etc.

⁴yoom 'ee yoom la? 'every other day'

- J. ssətt fəndak muu faadye , ?əbnha bəbbeet muu maḥsuut .
 A. ?axi ?ana fəla kəll naal maa baakol ġeer bəbbeet weššəġel huwwe huwwe
 ?iza kaan lawaahed u?iza kaan latneen .
 J. mətl maa bətriid .
 (speaking to the waiter) ?addeš bəddak ?
 A. walla maa btədfa? ?ənte!!
 J. maa fii far? beenaatna , dafaft uxalašt .

Conversation 3. At Ahmad's home.

- Mrs.A. ?ahla usahla yaa məstər žoons .
 J. ?ahla usahla fiiki , šloonək ?
 Mrs.A. bxeer lħamdella , u?ənte šloonək ? nšaalla ?axbaarsətt, mniina .
 J. lħamdella , yəmken təšal ma? lulaad ba?d xamštəfšar yoom .
 Mrs.A. žaaye bəlbəner ?
 J. na?am, sarla taarke ?ameerka tlet tiyyaam .
 Mrs.A. nšaalla bətsuufa bəssalaame .
 J. ?alla isalmək , daxlek bə?i fəkri⁴ fənd zzġiir, weeno ?
 Mrs.A. lħamdella lyoom ?ansan bəktiir , ?əžet mār taxi ?axtto ma? ulaadha
 uraahu fassinama .
 A. šloon xalleetii yətləf biħalbard ?
 Mrs.A. ma?lee šii , lwalad saar mniin lyoom .
 A. tayyeb šuu fii fəndək tabx tħəttiilna ?
 Mrs.A. taabxa kuusa məhši uluubye ma? rrezz .
 bass maa bə?i fanna fawaaki .
 A. b?ati nabiiha džiib .
 Mrs.A. mətl ?eeš ?
 A. halli bətləa?i taaza wənniin , bass bfažale bədna naakol .

⁴bə?i fəkri fənd 'I've been thinking about, my mind has been on'

- A. bət?mor təšrab šii ?abl l?akəl⁵ ?
 J. la? , mamnuun .
 Mrs.A. tfaddalu saar l?akl .
 A. šarref məstər žoons , ?iza bətriid təġsel ?iideek ,
 lmaġsale šašha hniik
 Mrs. A. xədlo maḥšafe ndiife yaa ?ahmad .
 A. ween haatṭa lmanašef ?
 Mrs. A. bəlxzaane halli b?uudət lulaad .
 A. tfaddal lmanšafe məstər žoons .
-
- Mrs. A. laa t?axəzna . yəmken tkuun maa nabbeet ?akina .
 J. staġfirullaa , maa fii ?atyaab mən heek tabx . sallem ?iideeki .
 Mrs. A. ?alla isalmək , uyəfəzak .
 J. bəkra lžəmfa šəġal maa fii , bətruunu fəla beeruut ?
 A. ?iza kaan tta?š mniin mərruun .
 J. fəla halloon yəmken ?əštəri tta?m mən beeruut .
 A. xalliina nšuuf hoon wəhniik bmanall maa mənlaa?i šii mniin mnəštəri .
 A. lakaan tafa nənzel fəlbəlad halla? ?ansan maa nət?axxar .
 Mrs. A. šuu blaə?iikon raayhiin ?abl maa taaxdu l?ahwe ?
 J. t?axxarna . ġeer marra nšaalla mnəšrab .
 Mrs. A. yaa ?ahmad xood kabbuudak , taalef hawa barra .

⁵akl 'food, eating' (cf. √?kl 'eating')

SECTION G. VOCABULARY

ʔabyád adj+(pl ^{béda} bíid) white	múus (pl mwáas) knife, straight razor
ʔamfiš (pl ʔamsáan) shirt	náššaf dry
ʔáss (ə) cut	naʔiimaṅ flá May it be to your comfort
ʔášš (ə) sweep, shave	
ʔaazáan (pl ʔaazanáat) water, heater	ráʔbe ft+(pl rʔáab) neck
bénni adj coffee colored, brown (of things)	
bərnéeta ft (pl-reg or baraniit) hat	sákkar close, turn off
bóoyaži (pl booyažiyye) boot-black	saabúun coll soap
dáʔn (pl dʔúun) chin	šabbáat (pl šababiit) pair of shoes
dəhr noon	šəxn adj hot
fárša (i) brush	šáfra ft (safety) razor blade
fárʔ (pl frúʔ(a) separation, difference, part (in hair)	šaf- here (is, comes, etc.)
fátan (a) open	šáfr coll hair
háader adj ready	šáʔʔal kindle, light
hablib (pl habáayeb) sweetheart m.	tábaʔ belonging to
habiibe ft sweetheart f.	tammam take a bath
hádd adj sharp	tyáab pl (sg rare tóob) clothes
haḍdar make ready, prepare	táʔm (pl tʔúume) suit of clothes
hálaʔ (e-o) shave, cut hair	wáʔt (pl ʔawʔáat) time
hallaʔ (pl hallaaʔiin) barber	xáaf (a) be afraid men 'of'; worry ʔala 'about'
hanafiyye ft faucet, tap	xáal (pl xwáal) mother's brother
hátab coll wood for fuel, firewood	xáffaf lighten, lessen
hayáat life	xálaš (o) finish
bənyáatak please, indeed, by your life	xawáaža mt (pl xawažáat) gentleman
hammáam (pl hammamáat) bath	xzáane ft (pl reg or xazáayen) cabinet, closet
kabbúud or kabbúut (pl kababiid, kababiit) coat, overcoat	zéet (pl zyúut) oil
káhraba f amber, electricity	žámb or žánab (pl žnáab) side
kalsáat pl stockings	žəbráan Gibran
lámmaʔ polish	žrəbə ft stocking
líife ft + (pl líyaf) fibre bath sponge	ʔáli Ali
mʔáss (pl mʔaššáat) scissors	
mákana or maakiina ft machine, gadget	
mánšafe ft+(pl manáašef) towel, napkin	
mášbağa ft+(pl mašáabeg) laundry, the cleaner's	
máššat comb	
mémken adj possible	

PART TWO

At The Doctor's

UNIT 9

Section A. Basic Sentences

	Selim	salim
1. Good morning, Omar.	omar	nhaarak_safiid_yaa_somar
2. Good morning, Abdul Majid.	Abdul Majid.	nhaarak_mbaarak_yaa_sabd_lmažiid
appearance		heeʔa
the matter with you		báak šábak
3. You don't look well. What's the matter with you? having a cold		heeʔtak_mu_mabšuut . šuu_bak ?
4. Oh, I've had a cold for two weeks.		mráššen
ruling		walla_šarli_žəmšteen_mraššen .
pain		háakem
5. And I've had a headache.		wázaʔ
turn		unaakemni_wažaf_raas .
attention, mind		díir
he gets tired		báal
6. Take care of yourself and don't get overtired.		yátšab
resting		diir_baálak_ʔala_haalak_ulaa_tatšab_ktiir .
7. I've been resting at home for a week.		mərtáan
some		šarli_žəmša_mərtaan_bəlbeet .
bad		baʔd
digestion		súuʔ
he coughs		hádm
8. But sometimes I get indigestion and cough a little.		byəsʔol
he decided		bass_baʔd_lʔawʔaat_bišərli_suuʔ_hádm_ubəsʔol_šwayye .
		ʔámad

doctor	hakiim
he examines	yafnaṣ
9. I decided to come to the doctor's to get examined.	ʔtamadt ^t ʔaʒi laʔand lhakiim yafnaṣni .
serious <u>or</u> important	mhámm
10. I hope it's nothing serious.	nšaalla_maa_fii šii_mhámm .
doctor	doktóor
clever	šáaṭer
11. In any case Dr. Khayyat is a good doctor.	ʔala_káll_haal ddoktoor_xayyaat doktoor_šáaṭer .
he treats, takes care	byaʔtáni
<u>sick</u>	marid
12. And he'll take good care of ^{his patients.} you	uhuwwe_byaʔtáni_fiik_mniin .
13. I hope so.	batʔammal_heck .
clinic	ʔayáade
14. And what brings you to his clinic too?	xeer_nšaalla šuu_ʒaaybak_ʔante_kamaan_ʔala_ʔayáadto ?
15. There's nothing the matter with me, thank God.	ma_bani maa_bani_šii . baškor_ʔalla .
16. I'm here to ask the doctor about my brother.	ʒaaye laʔasʔal_lhakiim_ʔan_ʔaxi .
night	léele
yesterday	mbáaren or mbáarna
wake up	fáaʔ bifiiʔ
abdomen	báṭn
17. Last night he woke up with a pain in his abdomen.	leelt_mbaarna faaʔ_ʔala_waʒaʔ_bibaṭno .
hospital	məstášfa
18. The doctor sent him straight to the hospital.	ddoktoor_waddaa_ḍaḡri_ʔalməstašfa .
appendix	záayde

19. He's afraid he has appendicitis.	huwwe_xaayef laykuun_mafə_zzaayde .
operation	ʔamaliyye
20. Then they'll operate on him.	ʔizan byaʔmluulo_ʔamaliyye .
21. I hope he comes through all right.	nšaalla_ʔala_salaame .
22. (Response)	ʔalla_ysalmak .
23. Good morning, doctor	nhaarak_safiid yaa_hakiim .
24. Good morning. Please come in.	nhaarak_safiid_wambaarak . tfaddal_fuut .
25. What seems to be the trouble? ("Good, God willing. Tell me what's the matter with you.") pain	xeer_nšaalla . nkiili ^{ʔabak} šuu_bak ? wəʒeʔ, byáʒaʔ
26. I've had a cold and headache for two weeks.	ʔali_ʒəmʔteen_mraššen wəbyəʒaʔni_raasi .
27. I want you to examine me.	baddi_yaak_təfnaṣni .
extend	mádd, bimédd
tongue	lsáan
28. Put out your tongue.	mədd_lsaanak .
take off	šálan, byášlan
coverings clothes	ʔawáafi
29. Take off your clothes and I'll take a look.	šlaan_ʔawafiik_lašuuf .
lie down	tʂáṭṭan, byətʂáṭṭan
breath	náfas
30. Lie down and take a breath.	tʂáṭṭan uxood_nafas .
turn over	ʔálab, byáʔleb (or byáʔlob)
back	ḍahr
breathe	tnáffas, byətnáffas

31. Turn over on your back and breathe again.
get up ?áam, bi?úum
32. All right, get up. ?uum_ba?a .
33. What did you find with me, doctor?
("What came out with me?")
the grippe ?ábu_rrákab
34. You have the grippe, ^{Abdu lla} ~~Abdul Majid~~.
~~bath~~ ^{an immersion} masak_?abu_rrákab yaa_ ^{ʿabdalla} ~~ʿabd~~_lmaʿziid .
[Foot] bath af tag̃tiise
35. Rest at home and make a ^{hot} bath.
bath. striin_balbeet wafmeel_tag̃tiise
 balmayye_ššaxne .
prescription raašéeta or wášfe
36. I'll make out a prescription for you.
pill lanasaawiilak_wašfe (or raašéeta) .
 hábbe
37. Take two pills before you sleep. xood_habteen ?abl_maa_tnaam .
38. Thank you, doctor. Goodbye. mətšakker yaa_doktoor . xaaṭrak .
39. Goodbye. I hope you feel better soon. mfaafa_nšaalla . maf_ssalaame .

Section B. Pronunciation

1. Assimilation

Most combinations of two consonants occur freely in Arabic (e.g. bt, tb, lk, kl, sr, rs, št, tš, ml, lm, etc.). A few combinations never occur (eg. gx, lr, tt). The rest vary. All this means that if two consonants come together (by a prefix joining a stem, a suffix joining a stem, one affix coming next to another, etc.) sometimes one or the other or even both may change, yielding a possible combination.

1. For example: ?axad 'took' + -tu 'you (pl)' → ?axáttu . . . The combination *dt does not occur in normal Arabic speech. The first consonant is changed ("assimilated") to the second, i.e. instead of *dt one says tt. Similarly *td never occurs. bə- + t- 'she' + dell 'direct' → bəddəll 'she directs'. Here again the first consonant becomes like the second, i.e. instead of *td one says dd. Here is a list of such assimilations, where the first consonant is assimilated completely or partially to the second:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

- dt → tt ?axattu 'you took'
 ʿaat̃t̃o 'she repeated it' (cf. ʿaadet 'she repeated')
 *meʃtto 'his stomach' (cf. meʃde 'stomach')
- td → dd *bəddabber 'you arrange' (cf. dabber 'arrange!')
 bəddəll 'she directs'
 *ddaaya? 'he was annoyed' (cf. daaya? 'he annoyed')
- tz → dz bedziin 'she weighs'
 bedzuur 'you visit'
- tš → dš *naadže 'well-suited (fem)' (cf. naatež)
 bedžiibu 'you (pl) bring'
- žt → št *mneštameʃ 'we meet together' (√ žmʃ)
- nr → rr merruuh 'we go'
 *rrabaṭ 'it was tied' (n- + rabaṭ 'he tied')
- nl → ll mellaaʔi 'we meet, find'
 byəlllébes 'it is worn' (cf. ləbes 'he wore')
- nb → mb žamb 'side' (cf. pl. žnaab)
 membiiʃ 'we sell'
- nm → mm memmaššet 'we comb'
 mmādd 'it was stretched' (n- + madd 'he stretched')
- bm → mm mmaʃreftak 'by your acquaintance'
- bf → ff ffaršti 'in my bed'
- ğs → xs btexsel 'she washes'
- dx → tx *tatxiin 'smoking' (√ dxn)

This list is not complete, but it shows all the important types. In many cases the first consonant is assimilated to the second in voicing (dt→tt, td→dd, tz→dz, tž→dž, žt→št, ġs→xs, dx→tx, bf→ff); in other cases it is assimilated in position or manner of articulation (nb→mb, nm→mm, bm→mm, nr→rr, nl→ll).

2. There is another kind of assimilation shown in two-consonant cluster, namely where one kind of sound is dominant no matter whether it comes first or second. For example, the combination *st never occurs, instead st is said, likewise *st never occurs, instead st is said. Thus the velarized sound always predominates. Here is a list of such assimilations:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE TWO

tt → tt	*ttabbab 'he was treated' (t + tabbab 'he treated')
tt → tt	ṃbaṣatṭ 'I had a good time'
st → st	*ṣtabar 'he was patient' (ṣbr)
tṣ → tṣ	tṣatṭaḥ 'he lay down'

3. In a few cases there is a double assimilation, i.e. the first consonant is assimilated to the second in voicing and both become velarized. For example:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE

dt → tt	uutṭi 'my room'
td → dd	*ḍḍaḥḥak 'he was amused, he laughed'

Section C. Analysis

Note 9.1 Passive participles. The underlined words in the following Basic Sentences are passive participles:

- 1.7 nšáalla-maḥṣuuṭ ? God willing you are well ("made happy")?
- 2.4 lā? lbāṣ-maṣṣūu? . No, the bus is crowded.
- 3.23 bʔānu-bālad-mawṣūud-ʔaxūuk ? What city is your brother [found]in.?

Each of these words has the prefix ma- (cf. Note 8.5 m-Nouns) and long -uu- between the second and third consonants of the root, may have the regular feminine and plural forms of adjective (Ft ending and -iin), and is associated with a primary verb having the same root. Words of this kind will be called PASSIVE PARTICIPLES. Usually they may be translated by the corresponding English form "seen, done, made, found, etc. Passive participles are formed this way for primary verbs with sound roots. The passive participles of primary verbs with weak roots are rarely used (CVC almost never), but when they do occur they always have -y- in the position of the missing consonant (as with active participles, of Note 8.2). Here are the forms:

CCC	√ktb	maktuub	maktuube	maktuubiin	written
	√rf	maṣruuf	maṣruufe	maṣruufiin	known
	√ftH	maftuuh	maftuuna	maftuuniin	open(ed)

CVC	*madyuun	madyuune	madyuuniin	indebted
-----	----------	----------	------------	----------

CCV	məkwi	məkwiyye	(məkwiyyiin)	pressed
	mənši	mənšiyye	(mənšiyyiin)	stuffed

1. miin-tarak-lbāab-maftuuh ? Who left the door open?
2. hallaḥme maʔtuufa-mən-yoomeen . This meat has been cut for two days.
3. saasto maṣmuule-biʔameerka . His watch is (was) made in America.
4. ʔana-bḥabb-llaḥme lmatbuuxa-maṣṣaxar . I like meat cooked with vegetables.
5. ʔamiisak-maḡsuul . Your shirt is (has been) washed.
6. miin-masʔuul-ṣan-ʔaxd-lulaad-ṣalmadrise ? Who is responsible ("asked") for taking the children to school?
7. ʔahmad maḥkuum ṣalee yəbʔa hoon lateži ʔammo . Ahmad is obliged to stay here until his mother comes.
8. lmayye maʔtuufa . The water is shut off.

Sometimes a passive participle is used as a regular noun with a special plural and special meaning. Example from Basic Sentences:

- 1.16 ṣmēel-maṣruuf ... Please ("do a favor") ...
- 4.14 zāati háada-matlūubi . That's just what I need ("my requirement").

Examples from roots you know:

Root	Noun	Plural	Meaning
√ ktb	maktuub	makatiib	letters
√ tlb	maṭluub	maṭaliib	requirement
√ sml	maṣmuul (coll)		kind of pastry
√ nzl	manzuul	(no plural)	space for guests
√ ṣrf	maṣruuf	(no plural)	favor
√ šrb	mašruub	mašruubaat	a drink (esp. alcoholic)
√ ?kl	(no singular)	ma?kuulaat	food(s)

Note 9.2 yaa- and other verbal particles. Numerous instances of yaa- with pronoun endings have appeared in Units 1-9. Examples from Basic Sentences:

- 3.42 ?alla ixalliilo yaahon . God spare them (for him).
 4.15 ṭayyeb ranaṣeflak yaaha ... Fine, I'll see her (for you)...
 4.18 ... baš?allak yaaha I'll ask her for you.
 8.6 xaffefli yaaha . Take a little off there for me. (= "Light-
 4.6 šuu beddak yaaha taṣmel ? en it for me")
 4.9 beddi yaaha ṭeṭbox ... I want her to cook ...
 5.35 beddak yaahon ba?ar wella ḡanam ? Do you want (them to be) beef or lamb?
 9.27 beddi yaak teḥṣni . I want you to examine me.

In Units 3 and 4 you became familiar with the use of this yaa- as "sign of object." It is most commonly used (as in the first four examples) when two pronoun endings are required with a single verb; one is attached to the verb, the other to yaa-.

A. Often a pronoun with l- 'to, for' and a pronoun ending as direct object of the verb are both required. In this case the l- and its pronoun ending are attached to the verb and the direct object pronoun ending goes on the yaa-. For example:

1. breddellak yaaha . I'll give it (fem) back to you.
 2. biṣeflna yaahon. He'll see them for us.
 3. ṣebli yaahon men ṣando . Bring them to me from his place.
 4. rana?ektəblak yaahon ṣala wara?a . I'm going to write them down for you
 on a piece of paper.
 5. miin fatah^llak yaa ? Who opened it for you?
 6. sa?alli yaa . He asked him for me.

In this construction usually only third person pronoun endings are added to the yaa- (i.e. only yaa, yaaha, yaahon occur).

B. With verbs which may have two direct objects, the yaa- is also used when two pronoun endings are required. In this case the pronoun ending referring to the person or indirect object is attached to the verb and the one referring to the thing is attached to the yaa-. Here are examples:

huwwē
 7. / baaf ?ahmad lmuus . baafo yaa . He sold Ahmad the knife. He sold him it.

8. ṣaṭeena nabiiha lkiis . ṣaṭeenaaha We gave Nabiha the bag. We gave it
yaa . to her.

9. sa?alni yaa . He asked me it. (cf sentence 6 above)

In this construction, also, usually only third person pronoun endings are added to the yaa-.

C. Another common use of yaa- is to reinforce a change of subject after bedd- 'want'. As we know, bedd- is often followed by a dependent verb (prefix tense form):

beddi ?enki ṣarabi . I want to speak ("I speak") Arabic.

But if the subject of the dependent verb is different from that of the bedd-, then a yaa- is usually inserted with a pronoun ending referring to the subject of the dependent verb.

10. beddi yaak tenki ṣarabi . I want you to speak ("you speak") Arabic.

Here are further examples:

11. šuu beddo yaana naṣmel ? What does he want us to do?

12. maa bedha yaaha ṭeṭlaṣ . She doesn't want her to go out.

13. l?estaaz beddo yaak ṭeḥfaṣ darsak . The professor wants you to memorize
 your lesson.

14. bedha yaani ?əb?a bəlbeet maṣ lulaad . She wants me to stay at home with the
 children.

15. bedhon yaakon dzuuruuhon . They want you (pl) to visit them.

In this construction all pronoun endings may occur with yaa-. Notice that the "me" ending is -ni not -i or -yi. In Note 2.4 it was pointed out that -ni is added to verbs and -i or -yi to nouns, prepositions, etc. There are, however, a few special words, not verbs, that have -ni instead of the expected -i/-yi. Words of this kind will be called VERBAL PARTICLES. You have learned six of them so far (with the first person ending: lessaani, ṣaṣni, leekni, beni or bani, yaareetni, yaani). Apart from this use of -ni the forms of these words are regular except for those of b- which are discussed in the next Note.

Note 9.3. The prefixes bi- and fii-. The usage of these prefixes in Syrian Arabic is somewhat complicated. The various uses may be summarized under three headings (1) b(i)-/fii- 'in' and 'by', (2) b- 'the matter with', and (3) fii- 'there is, is able'.

(1) bi/fii 'in, by'. Here are examples from Units 1-9:

- 1.17 šuu_betʔuul_bəlsarabi haada ? How do you say this in Arabic?
 1.20 bʔaddēš_haada ? For how much is this?
 2.2 xalliina_netlaḥ_fii . Let's get on it.
 2.25 tayyeb . mən šaankon betlet All right, for you ("for your sake")
 waraʔaat . three pounds.
 2.29 lfeet_fiiha . Turn in there.
 3.11 ʔahla_wsahla fiik . Welcome.
 3.14 ʔaddēš_sarлак_bəššaam ? How long have you been in Damascus?
 3.23 bsāan_fraansfisko . In San Francisco..
 5.7 mən_ʔansan_lmahallaat From the best places in town.
 bihalbalad .
 7.14 šanna_bəššaam ʔahla_bʔalf_marra . It's a thousand times better here in
 Damascus.
 8.7 bəddak_ʔəssəllak_šəfrak_bəlmə Do you want me to cut your hair with
 kana wella_bəlmʔəss ? clippers or scissors?

With these meanings the forms are bə- before two consonants (bəktaab 'in a book', bəlʔuuda 'in the room'), bi- or b- before a single consonant (bibeeto or bbeeto 'in his house', biʔuuda or bʔuuda 'in a room'), and fii- before pronoun endings (fii 'in it', fiiha 'in it (fem)'). [These forms all mean either 'in' or 'by means of'; however, before a single consonant bi- always means 'in', whereas b- may mean either.]

Examples:

1. huwwe ʔakal bəlməʔsam . He ate in the restaurant.
 huwwe ʔakal fii . He ate in it.
 2. taaleḥ bʔiido habbe . A pimple broke out on his hand.
 taaleḥ fiiha . It broke out on it.
 3. wsəlna balleel . We arrived at night.
 4. biʔəšš daʔno bəššəfra . He shaves (his chin) with a safety razor.
 biʔəšš daʔno fiiha . He shaves with it.
 5. bəxlos haššəg̃le bsaaʔteen . I'll finish this job in two hours.
 6. kiilo lxəbz bʔəšr ʔruuš . Bread is ten piastres a kilo.
 7. bihalʔiyyaam . Nowadays.
 8. tlaate bətlaate təsfa . Three times three is nine.

9. Šuu šaar fiik maa ʔžiit ?

What happened to you that you didn't
 come?

10. maat bəlmaraḍ .

He died of the disease (usually =
 tuberculosis).

(2) b- 'the matter with' b- is used before pronoun endings with this meaning. It never occurs directly before a noun. Examples from Unit 9:

9.3 ... šəbak ?

What's the matter with you?

9.15 maa_bani_šii ...

Nothing's wrong with me.

9.25 ...hkīli šəbak .

Tell me what's the matter with you.

The forms used for the combinations b- plus pronoun endings vary a great deal from one place to another. The usual Damascus forms are:

bani or bni

bana

bak

bakon

bek or baki

bo

bahon or bhon or bon

baha or bha or ba

[In other parts of the Syrian area the stems baa- or bii- are sometimes used throughout (baak, biik, baa, bii, baaha, biha, etc.)]

These forms are almost always unstressed in Damascus Arabic, usually following šuu 'what' or maa 'not' šuubo 'what's the matter with him', maabo-šii 'there's nothing the matter with him. With many speakers šuu and maa are often shortened to šš and ma in these expressions: ššbo, mábo. Notice that the first person form has -ni instead of -i or -yi; this b- 'the matter with' is a verbal particle (see Note 9.3.).

Examples:

1. šəbo lahalla? xaliil maa ?əža ? What's the matter with Khalil that he hasn't come yet. ("up to now")?
2. šəbek (or šəbabi) maa ?akalti lyoom? What's the matter with you (f) that you didn't eat today?
3. máa-bāref-šəbani máa-?dərt-?əakol I don't know what's the matter with me; I couldn't eat at noon.
qdəhr .
4. mábak_šii_?ente bəlfarabi_mniin . There's nothing wrong with you - you're good in Arabic.
5. šəba ssaansa muu maasha l'ard ? Why (what's the matter with her) hasn't the maid wiped the floor?
6. mabo_šii haṭṭa?m_ṭaalef_ḥəlu . This suit is O.K., it has turned out fine.

(3) fii- fii- occurs before pronoun endings with the meaning 'there is' and 'is in a position to' and 'is able to'. Example from Units 1-9:

- 1.32 fēen_fii_maṭṭam ? Where there is a restaurant?
- 5.16 fii-šandak_wāafa ? Do you have something to carry the things in?

The third person forms, especially the masculine singular, are often equivalent to English 'there is, there are'; all the forms - first, second, or third person - may be translated 'be in a position to, have the time to, be able to, can'. Notice that the first person singular form of this is fiini, differing from fiyyi 'in me', and so this fii- is also a verbal particle.

Examples:

1. šuu fii ?axbaar lyoom ? What news is there today?
2. fiik truuh mafi halla? . ? Can you come with me now?
3. halbalad fiiha binaayaat ḥəlwə . There are nice buildings in this city.
4. maa-fiini ?əštəri haṭṭa?m . ḡaali I can't buy this suit. It's too
ktiir . expensive.

Note 9.4. Connective maa. In some of the sentences of Units 5-9 there have been instances of maa, without the meaning 'not', used as a connective. Examples:

- 5.28 ?eemta maa kaan btədfasli .
- 7.15 umaa fii rṭuube mətli maa bišiiir fəndhon .
- 9.37 xood ḥabteen ?abl maa tnaam .

This connective maa occurs after question words (such as feen, ?eemta, etc.) when used to introduce a clause rather than to ask a question. This is especially common with an "indefinite" meaning (-ever).

- ween maa betriid taakol ?ana baakol . I'll eat wherever you want to eat.
?eemta maa ḥabbeet . Whenever you would like.
laazəmni beet feen maa kaan ikuun . I need a house anywhere at all.
maa biḥəmni šuu maa ḥaka yəḥki . I don't care. Let him say whatever he wants to ("whatever he says").

It also occurs after a whole series of preposition - like words such as mətli, ?abl, etc. when they are followed by a verb. Thus "like him" is mətli but "as he does" is mətli maa byaṣmel . Additional examples:

- ?abl maa truuh kool . Eat before you go.
baʿd maa taraktak rənt falbeet . After I left you I went home.
mətli maa bi?əllak l'əstaaz saawi . Do as the professor tells you.
laa təštəri šii ?abl maa taṣref ḥa?o . Don't buy anything before you know what its (regular) price is.
... bala maa tenzel lyoom falbalad without (your) going downtown today.
?add maa byaṣṭiik xood mənno . Take as much from him as he'll give you.

In addition this connective maa is also used after various nouns of time:

- wa?t maa ?əžu maa kaan fii ḥada bəlbeet . At the time they came (or when they came) there was nobody at home.
yoom maa šafto kaan mariid . The day I saw him he was sick.
?awwal maa šaafni fərefni . The moment he saw me ("first thing he saw me") he recognized me.
saafet maa bəṭšuufo bṣatli yaa . . Send him to me the hour you see him.

Finally there are various other miscellaneous expressions which include this connective maa. This will be listed more completely in a later Unit. Here are several examples:

- mən kətr maa ?akal ṣaar baṭno yəžafo . He ate so much he got a stomachache.
(From the quantity he ate his stomach began to pain him.)
kəll maa raḥ labeeruut byəštəri ṭa?m . Everytime he goes to Beirut he buys a suit.
ween mnaakol? mnaḥall maa betriid . Where shall we eat? Any place you want.

1. Completion sentences. Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the passive participle (using feminine or plural where necessary) of the root given in parentheses at the end of the sentence. Read the sentence and be sure you understand it.

1. harrežžaal _____ men kəll nmaas . (hbb)
2. ?arq hal?uuda muu _____ . (?šš)
3. lmatfam tabaf ?ammad _____ halla? . (?ž?)
4. lkahraba _____ lyoom . (?tʃ)
5. ha?? tta?m _____ salaf . (dfʃ)
6. halli ?aalo l?estaaz kaan _____ . (fhm)
7. bətražžaaq xalliinanruun halla? . _____ nkuun belmhaŋta . (lzm)
8. ?ana _____ ?aaxod halgraad falbeet . (?mr)
9. halmaktuub _____ la?ameerka . (bʃt)
10. ?žiit la?eet llanme _____ . (tbx)
11. bye?dru ttalamiiz _____ iruusu . (fhs)
12. halxatt _____ men hoon lel?aššaaʃ . (mdd)

2. Completion Sentences. Complete the following by adding the appropriate pronoun ending on the yaa-. When you have finished say the sentences aloud many times until the construction sounds perfectly natural to you. Be sure you understand each sentence.

1. bəddak yaa _____ ruun mafak ?
2. ?eemta rana təʃat ššaanaʃa ? bəʃatlaq yaa _____ baʃd saafa
3. ween lwara?aat ? halla? baʃtiik yaa _____ .
4. bəddak yaa _____ tətbox ?
5. bəddo yaa _____ təfnaʃha yaa doktor .
6. maa ?dər ?əftan lbaab, bte?der təftanli yaa _____ ?
7. ween wlaadak ? ?axadli yaa _____ ?axi ʃassiinama .
8. bəddi yaa _____ təži tətəbxiilna .
9. miin žaayəblek yaa _____ halbent ? ("Who brought you here - this girl.")¹
10. miin kaateblak halwara?a ? l?estaaz kaatebli yaa _____ .
11. bəddak yaa _____ mniina ?
12. ʃedlo yaa _____ ddruus . ("Repeat them - the lessons")¹
13. rəddello yaa _____ l?əmsaan gəalyiin ktiir .
14. bəddi yaa _____ tnaam bbeet ?ahlha .
15. bədhon yaa _____ təgʃli lğasiil .
16. yaa ?əbni bəddi yaa _____ taʃref kəlši .
17. šaayeflak yaa _____ muu raayna .
18. bžənnəllak yaa _____ bibiiʃ lbeet b?alf ləera .
19. bəddo yaa _____ truunu lafando ʃalbeet .
20. metl maa ?əltelli yaa _____ lxabar ?əltello yaa _____ .¹

¹Sometimes an object is repeated, i.e. the pronoun ending on the yaa reinforces a noun which is present, not omitted.

3. Completion sentences. Complete the following sentences by filling in the appropriate word suggested by the English word in parentheses. Make sure you understand the meaning of each sentence, and repeat it until it sounds natural and familiar.

1. (before) maa truun kool .
2. (after) maa šəftak bsaaʃteen ?əža ?axi .
3. (hour) maa šəfto kənt mašguul .
4. (when) maa biriidu bye?dru yežu .
5. (as) maa ?allak l?estaaz saawi .
6. štareeto (before) maa ?əs?al ʃan səfro .
7. lhakiim (after) maa fanaš?axi baʃato dəgri ʃalməstašfa .
8. (time) maa?əžu maa kaan fii hada balbeet .
9. (minute) maa taraktak rənt ʃalbeet .
10. maa bihemni (what) maa šaar išiir .
11. mən (quantity) maa ?akal šaar baʃno yežafo .
12. (who) maa ?əža yeži .
13. (first) maa šəfto ʃəfto .
14. dfaʃlo (as much) maa biriid .
15. (hour) maa bəšuufo ?əllə yeržaʃ ʃalbeet .
16. bəššəte maa bikuun ʃanna bard (as) maa bikuun ʃandkon .
17. la (where) maa bəddak bruun .
18. (after) maa yəfnašak lhakiim byaʃref šuu mafak .
19. (everytime) maa ?akalt ši t?iil, byəžaʃni raasi .
20. šəbak hee?tak taʃbaan ? mən (quantity) maa štağalt mbaaren .
21. (without) maa truun halla? lafando .
22. (as much) maa byaʃtiik, xood mənno .
23. (what) maa naka yənki, ?ana maa bihemni .
24. (where) maa kaan ikuun harrežžaal byeštəgel .

4. Questions and Answers.

1. maš miin reht zertl'astaaz ?
2. mən 'eemta 'əmmak maa katbetlak maktuub ?
3. kam təlmiiz 'antu bihaddars ?
4. b'amu 'oteel nzaltu bbeeruut ?
5. 'addeš kaanet taaxod mənkon ssaanfa bəššahr ?
6. šuu 'allak lhakiim tsaawi ba'd maa fahašak ?
7. šəbo l'astaaz maa 'əža faddars ?
8. saafet maa šaftak mbaaren, ween kent raayen ?
9. 'anu saafa bikuun ddoktoor bəfiyaade ?
10. kam yoom fandak fərša bəssene ?
11. daxlak mneen bə'der 'əštəri šafraat ?
12. kam yoom bə'i bəlməstašfa ?
13. šuu kaan saayərlo ?
14. b'addeš madyunən 'ənte la'abu fəfiif ?
15. 'addeš šarлак maa 'axatt makatiib mən 'ameerka ?
16. šəbaha šaanəftkon maa 'əžet 'axdet ləğraad ?
17. kam nabhe 'alla lhakiim taaxod bəlyoom ?
18. 'elli šuu fii 'akl mmatšame
19. leeš maa žəbt 'əmsaanak lmaxsuuliin mnəlmašbağa ?
20. lessaak lahalla? 'aafed bala 'akel ?
21. daxlak ween bəddo isayyef ssene žžaaye ?

Conversation 1. At Ahmad's house.

- J. hoon 'ahmad[#]beek ?
- N. nafam hoon, bass mraššen w'aafed bettaxt .
- J. salaamto, briid šuufo, šuufiili yaa 'aafed² yemma naayem ?
- N. 'amrak siidi .
- Mrs.A. yaa nabiiha miin 'əža ?
- N. məstər žoons bəddo išuuf siidi .
- Mrs.A. 'uuliilo yetfaddal .
- N. tfaddal šarref .
- Mrs.A. 'uhla wsahla .
- J. nhaarek safiid . mašguul baali fand 'ahmad beek xeer šəbo ?
- Mrs.A. lhamdella 'ahsan lyoom . šarref lafando .
- J. šuu saayer mafak ?
- A. yoom kenna raazfiin .
- mən beeruut 'axatt bard .
- A. leeletha maa nəmt wtaani yoom badeet 'esfol .
- J. msaafa nšaalla, šuu maa šaafak lhakiim ?
- A. lakaan !! 'əža kam marra .
- J. šuu 'allak tašmel ?
- A. ba'd maa fahašni 'awwal marra, 'alli .
- saawi tağtiise .
- J. šloon šəft haalak ba'di maa saawəetha ?
- A. yafni 'ansan bəšwayye bass 'ala gəfle 'awwal mbaaren³ šaar ba'ni yəžafni .
- J. byəžhar kent 'aakel šii t'iil !!
- A. laa walla, kəll halli 'akalto šwayyet šooraba .
- J. ween haakem lwažaf ?
- A. tant bižanab ba'ni lyamiin .
- J. muu šii, l'aktar haada suu? haqm .
- A. 'ana xaayef laykuun mafi zaaayde .
- J. maa bzənn . 'ala kəll haal zaaayde m^{aa} bəthəmm^m . 'amaliitha saliime .
- A. ddoktoor 'aal laazem nəstanna tlata rba' tiyaam .
- J. u'iza bə'i lwažaf ?
- A. fəkro yəbətəni 'alməstašfa .
- J. nšaalla 'ala salaame . xalliini ruuh halla? . w'ənte 'uum lataxtak
- strehlak šwayye .
- A. 'ana mabsuut bəwžuudak .
- J. bəkra nšaalla bəži bzuurak, wənšaalla bətkuun šanneet .
- A. mamnuunak ktiir .
- J. msaafa . xaatrak .
- A. 'alla i'aaifiik wyənfažak .

² 'aafed means 'awake' when contrasted with naayem .

³ 'awwal mbaaren 'day before yesterday' .

Conversation 2. At the hospital.

- J. lhamdalla fala salāamtak .
 A. ?alla isalmak .
 J. beškor ?alla , hee?tak maḃṣuut , wka?annak maa saaweeṭ famaliyye .
 A. mamnuun .
 J. daxlak miin lhakiim halli ?emellak yaaha ?
 A. ddoktoor xayyaat , ufaṭaani nbuub , baaxədhon tlet marraat belyoom .
 J. w?eemta taalef mnəlməstašfa ?
 A. maa ba?ref , fala hawa lhaale⁴ .
 J. wkiif lfeele ?
 A. bxeer lhamdella , ?abl maa teži bešwayye kaanet marti maṭ ləwlaad hoon .
 J. šloon šefto halməstašfa ?
 A. walla mabo šii . ndiif wəlxədme fii mniina .
 J. ?ana ranaruun, nšaalla taani marra bəsuufak belbeet .
 A. maṭ ssalaame .

Conversation 3. At John's hotel.

- A. nhaarak safiid .
 J. nhaarak safiid mbaarak, lhamdella falaafye .
 A. ?alla isaafiik .
 J. leeš tlet? kent laazem tab? martaan belbeet .
 A. beškor ?alla maa be?i fiyyi šii, wmaṭ haada ?žiit laṭandak bəttaksi .
 J. ?ood halla? strənlak šwayye .
 A. tta?š helu wəššams taalša ?uum larruun soob lmarže .
 J. stannaani da?ii?a hatta ?əthammam u?əšš da?ni .
 A. mniin, naazel wa?əflak beššams ?əddaam baab l?oteel .

⁴ fala_hawa 'according to' (cf. English 'the way the wind blows')

SECTION G. VOCABULARY

?aam(u)	rise, get up	nafas	breath
?alab (e or o)	turn over	nhaar (pl nhaaraat)	day
?awaaṭi (pl of waaṭa)	clothes	raašeeta(ft)	prescription
?izan	therefore	rəkbe (ft+ pl rəkab)	knee
b-	the matter with(see note 9.3)	?abu_rrəkab	the grippe
baḳ	- the matter with you	saliim adj	safe also pers. name
bo	- the matter with him	safal (o)	cough
baal	mind	safiid adj	happy also pers. name
ba?a	then, therefore, all right	suu?	bad, in-
baṭn (pl bṭuun)	abdomen	suu?_hadm	indigestion
baṭd	some, certain, one another	šaater adj	clever, smart
daar (i)	see baal turn	šakar (o)	thank
doktoor (pl dakaatra)	doctor	šalan (a)	take off (e.g. clothes)
ḍahr (pl ḍhuur)	back	t?ammal	hope
faa? (i)	wake up	taḡtiis (coll)	immersion, diving
fanaṣ (a)	test, examine	taḡtiise	one immersion, bath
hadm	digestion	tnaffas	breathe
hee?a (ft)	appearance	tṣaṭṭan	lie down
hee?tak...	you look ...	teṭeb (a)	get tired
haakem adj	ruling, governor, judge	waṣfe (ft)	prescription
habb (coll sg habbe)	grains, pills	waṣaṭ (pl ?awṣaaṭ)	pain
	pl nbuub or habbaat)	wəžeṭ (-əzaṭ)	pain, hurt
hakiim (pl həkama)	doctor, learned man	xayyaat (pl xayyaatiin)	tailor
			also pers. name
lbaarna	yesterday	zaayde (ft+)	appendix
(mbaarna, mbaaren)		mafo-zzaayde	he has appendicitis
leel (coll)	night	ʔaafa (i)	strengthen
	(sg leele, pl layaali)	ʔabd (pl ʔabiid)	slave, negro
lsaan (pl lsaanaat or		pers. name : ʔabdalla	
?alson)	tongue, language	ʔiyaade (ft)	clinic
madd (ə)	reach, stretch out	ʔtamad	decide
mariid (pl mərəda)	sick	ʔtana	take care of fii-
mbaarak adj	blessed		
mhəmm adj	important, serious		
mraššen(adj)	having a cold		
martaan adj	resting, comfortable		
məstašfa (m) (pl məstašfayaat)	hospital		
mšaafa adj (fem mšaafaaye pl -aayiin)	strengthened, recovered)		

Syrian Arabic - Supplementary Sentences

1. Come and eat with us before you go. ?uum kool mafna ?abl maa truuh .
2. It's my custom to get up every day at six o'clock. faatti kall yoom ?uum bakkiir ssaafa sette .
3. I've certainly gotten tired today from so much work. walla lyoom tʔabt ktiir mən ketr ššəḡel .
4. Leave him alone, he's up to his ears in work. ("His work is up to over his head.") treko šəḡlo lafooʔ raaso .
5. He stayed in the hospital five days after the operation. beʔi bəlməstašfa xams_tiyyaam baʔd lʔamaliyye .
6. They would have come to visit us if it hadn't been too cold. kaanu ?əžu zaaruuna law maafii bard .
7. She got indigestion from the amount she ate. mən kəter maa ?aklet saar manna suuʔ haḡem .
8. What do you think ("How do you see it")? Shall I pay him 5000 for the house? šloon bətsuuf ? ?ədfaflo xams_taalaaʔ bəlbeet ?
9. As far as the house goes, if it's good, 5000 isn't too much. ʔala_hawa lbeet, ?iza mniih xams_taalaaʔ muu ktiir .
10. I never go to his clinic without finding it crowded. maa bruuh laʔiyaatto marra ?əlla blaʔiiha maʔžuʔa .
11. The maid will take care of the children when we go. ššaanaʔa bəddiir baalha ʔaləwlaad waʔt mərruuh .
12. Our country needs more hospitals than that. blaadna byəlzamha məstašfaayaat ?aktar mənheek .
13. It looks as though tomorrow will be colder than today. lheeʔa bəkra bəddo ikaan ?abrad mnəlyoom .

14. If you see him please thank him for me. balla ?iza šafto, škəro ʔanni .
15. When you want her, send after her. waʔt bəddek yaaha bʔati waraaha .
16. There's certainly nothing wrong with your suit; where did you buy it? walla mabo šii ʔaʔmak, mneen šaarii ?
17. For twenty pounds you can buy a good coat. bʔəšriin leerabteʔder tešteri kabbuud mniih .
18. I get examined at the doctor's twice a year. bəssəne beʔnaḡ naali ʔand lhakiim marteen .
19. I never go to your place (once) without finding you busy. walaa marra beži laʔandak fiiha ?əlla blaʔiik mašḡuul .
20. How long has it been since she washed? ?addeš ʔarilha maa ḡaslet ?
21. What happened to him that he didn't come to (his) work? šuu ʔarilo maa ?əža ʔala šəḡlo.ʔ
22. He has a cold and has come down with ("happening with him") indigestion. mraššəh wsaayer maʔo suuʔ haḡem .
23. God give him strength! ?alla iʔaafii .
24. I wasn't at home when the doctor came and saw him. ?ana maa kənt bəlbeet waʔt ?əža lhakiim šaafu .
25. Did you see the papers? ("Did you read?") There's important news today. ?areet ?!! fii ?axbaar mħemme lyoom .
26. What's the name of your doctor. šuu ?əsmo ddoktoor tabaʔkon ?
27. If you'll sell it to me for a thousand pounds, I'll buy it. ?iza bətbiiʔni yaa bʔalf leera, beštri .

28. I came and found the house door open. ?žiit la'eet baab lbeet maftuuh .
29. Maybe I'll get his letter tomorrow. yəmken yəžiini maktuubo bekra .
30. Stav resting at home for several days. xalliik mertaah belbeet ši kam yoom .
31. If I could have gone with you, I would have. law ?a'der ruuh mafak; kənt rəht .
32. If the water hadn't been off, she would have washed. law maa kaanet lmayy ma?tuufa kaanet ġaslet .
33. He'll go wherever you send him. ween maa btəb'ato, biruuh .
34. What did the doctor tell you to do besides the foot bath? šuu ?allak lhakiim ta'fmeel ġeer ttaġtiise?
35. I wish you had taken the pills before you ate. yaareetak ?axatt lhabbaat ?abl maa?akalt .
36. What can I do - it's only human to forget ("the man always forgets"). šuu ba'fmeel, l?ənsaan daa?iman byənsa .¹
37. From now on you'll have to take care of your health. mən halla? wraayən laazem təftəni bšantak .
38. It looks as though you forget what the doctor told you. byəzhar faleek nsiit šuu. ?allak lhakiim .
39. Ahmad speaks seven languages. ?ahmad byənki sabəf_təlson .
40. If you want the truth, the best ("smartest") doctor here is Ahmad. bəddak lna?ii?a ?aštar naakim hoon, huwwe ?ahmad .
41. But he's ("takes") very expensive. bass byaaxod ġaali ktiir .
42. Haven't you learned yet that it pays to get the best ("the expensive one has his value"). šuu ləssaak maa btafref ?əнно lġaali na??o mafo .²

¹The phrase l?ənsaan daa?iman byənsa is used to apologize for one's own forgetfulness. There are several other phrases of this kind in use, most of them Literary Arabic in form.

²The expressions lġaali na??o mafo . and lġaali huwwe raxiis . are used to justify paying a high price for some object or service.

PART TWO

THE POST OFFICE

Section A. Basic Sentences

- | | |
|--|--|
| mailman | bboštaži |
| 1. What time does the mailman come? | ?anu_saa'fa_byeži_lbooštaži ? |
| usually | faadatan |
| distribute | wázza'f, biwázze'f |
| mail | bbošta or bariid |
| 2. He usually distributes the mail at 9 a.m. | faadatan biwázze'f_lboošta_saa'fa_tə'sfa_fala_bekra. |
| 3. Here he comes! | šafo_žaa'ye . |
| letter | maktūub |
| 4. Any letter for me? | ?əli_ši_maktuub ? |
| registered | msookar |
| 5. Yes, there's a registered letter for you. | na'am . ?əlak_maktuub_msookar . |
| sign | máda, byəmdi |
| notebook | dáftar |
| hand over | sállam, bisállam |
| 6. Sign in the book so I can hand it over to you. | mdiili_faddaftar_lasalmak_yaa . |
| without | biduun |
| stamp | táabəf |
| 7. But it came (to you) without stamps; let me have twenty piastres. | bass_žaa'yiik_biduun_tawaabəf . sma'li_bfəbriin_?erš . |
| 8. Thank you, Omar. | salleem_?ideek_yaa_?əmar . |
| 9. You're welcome. | təkrām . |
| money order | hawáale |
| postal | bariidi |
| 10. Where can I send a postal money order? | mneen_bə'der_?əb'at_hawaale_baridiyye ? |
| third | táalet |

window	šebbaak <u>or</u> kúwwe
11. The third window as you go in.	taalet šebbaak u'ente_faayet .
Africa	'afriiqya
12. I want to send a money order to my brother in Africa.	beddi_?ebfat_hawaale la?axi_b'afriiqya.
value	'iime
13. How much is it for?	'addeš_?iimetha ?
14. Fifty pounds.	xamsiin_leera .
fill	ʾábba, biʾábbi.
application <u>or</u> form	ṭalab
money	maṣáari
15. Fill out this application and pay me the money.	ʾabbi_haṭṭalab wedfaʾli_lmaṣaari .
receipt	wáṣel
16. Here's the receipt.	tfaddal hayy_lwaṣel .
stamps	wára?_buul
17. Give me two pounds worth of stamps for letters.	ʾaṭiini_bleerteen wara?_buul lalmaka-tiib .
airplane	ṭayyáara
18. I want to send this letter to America by airplane.	beddi_?ebfat_halmaktuub beṭṭayyaara_la?ameerka .
putting	háaṭeṭ
address	ʾenwáan
exact	mazbuuṭ
19. Have you put the address correctly?	haaṭeṭ_lʾenwaan_mazbuuṭ ?
of course	maʾlúum
teach, mark	ʾállam, biʾállam
envelope	ṣárf <u>or</u> mǧállaf
atmospheric	žáwwi
20. Of course, and mark the envelope "airmail" for me.	maʾlúum w államli_ṣzarf bariid_žawwi .
package	ṭárd <u>or</u> baakéet

21. Is this where you send packages? ("From here do they send packages?")	men_hoon_byebʾatu_ṭṭruud ?
fifth	xáames
22. No. Go to the fifth window.	la? . ruuh_ʾašššebbaak lxaames .
23. I want to send this package to Damascus.	beddi_?ebfat_haṭṭard ʾaššaam .
charge, cost	kállaf, bikállaf
24. How much does it cost?	'addeš_bikallef ?
usual, ordinary	ʾáadi
25. Do you want to send it ordinary mail?	beddak_ṭebʾato belbariid lʾaadi ?
26. The first kilo is ten piastres.	'awwal_kiilo bʾašr_?ruuš .
exceed	záad, bizíid
27. And every additional kilo is six piastres.	wkell_kiilo_biziid bsett_?ruuš .
total	mažmúuʾ
28. How much is it all together?	'addeš_lmazmuuʾ ?
rent	stá?žar, byestá?žer
box	sandúuʾ
29. I want to rent a post office box for a year.	beddi_?esta?žer sanduu?_booṣṭa ʾala_sene .
rent, pay	'ážra
30. How much is the rent per year?	'addeš_?əžrto_bessene ?
31. Twelve and a half pounds.	ṭnaʾšar_leera wnaṣṣ .
key	meftáan
32. And I want two keys with it.	wbeddi_mafo meftaaneen .
telegram	talǧráaf <u>or</u> barqiyye
urgent	mestáʾžal
ministry	wazáara
foreign affairs	xaaržiyye
33. I want to send a telegram "urgent" to the Department of State in Washington.	beddi_?ebfat_talǧraaf_mestaʾžal_lwazaaret_lxaaržiyye_bwaašton .
words, talk	kaláam

34. There are twenty-five words in it. fii xamsaa wfaṣriin kəlme .
35. How much will that be? ʔaddeṣ byətlaṣ ʔalee ʔ
"-fold" taaʔ
36. "Urgent" will cost you double. məstaʔzal bikalfak ttaaʔ tneen .
legation mufawwadiyye
37. Charge it to the account of the American Legation. ʔayyədha bəhsaab lmufawwadiyye
lʔamərkiyye .

10.4

10.5

Section B. Pronunciation

1. The post-velar stop q.

A new sound appeared in one of the words of Unit 10 -- the voiceless stop represented by q in barqiyye 'telegram'. This sound is made by pressing the back part of the tongue against the roof of the mouth or even the back wall of the pharynx as far back as possible. The sound is voiceless and unaspirated, i.e. it does not have the puff of air after it which k sometimes has. This sound is called the post-velar stop and will be represented by a q.

The sound is very rare in ordinary spoken Damascus Arabic, but there are a few words which are ordinarily pronounced with it:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ONE

*qard	'loan'	barqiyye	'telegram'
*qərʔaan	'Koran'	*huquuq	'laws, the study of law'
*qaanuun	'law'	*yuqaal	'it is said'

The post-velar stop q is very frequent in Classical Arabic and in some dialects of spoken Arabic. In most spoken Syrian Arabic, however, it has been replaced by the glottal stop ʔ.

The chief difference between the post-velar q and the velar k is, as the name suggests, the fact that the q is pronounced further back in the mouth. Here are examples of pairs of words with q and k:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE ~~ONE~~ TWO

*kaaf	'name of letter: ك'	*kaanuun	'brazier'
*qaaf	'name of letter: ق'	*qaanuun	'law'
	haqq (=haʔʔ)	'right'	
	*hakk	'he scratched'	

2. Velarization (tafxiim)

In previous Units the difference between plain ("light") and velarized ("heavy") consonants has been discussed (Note 5.1), and the different sounds of certain vowels next to plain and velarized consonants has been mentioned (Notes 7.1,2). The special quality of a velarized consonant together with the special quality of a nearby vowel is called VELARIZATION (Arabic, tafxiim). You may think of this feature of velarization as extending over a whole sequence of consonants and vowels. A velarized consonant serves as a kind of "nucleus" of velarization, which extends over neighboring vowels and consonants. Americans usually find it easier to notice the vowel differences; for Arabs the most important thing is the velarized consonant

nucleus. In our transcription velarization is indicated by dots under consonants, and no indication is given of the vowel difference.

Every Arabic dialect, and Classical Arabic as well, has this phenomenon of velarization, but the various dialects differ considerably in the extent of the velarization. In some dialects there are as few as four light:heavy pairs (e.g. t:ṭ, ṣ:ṣ̣, s:ṣ, l:ḷ); in other dialects there are as many as eleven or more pairs of this kind. Also, in some dialects the vowel sounds differ very little in accordance with their position near light or heavy consonants; in other dialects this difference is very great. All dialects agree in having velarization as an important feature of the sound system.

With regard to the number of light:heavy pairs Damascus Arabic is between the two extremes. It has eight such pairs:

PRONUNCIATION PRACTICE THREE				
b:b	baaba	'her door'	*baaba	'daddy'
m:m	*mayy	'she isn't'	mayy	'water'
t:t	*taxx	'it wore out'	*taxx	'he hit'
d:d	*daẓẓ	'he spoke coarsely'	*daẓẓ	'it got into an uproar'
s:s	*saah	'he went on a trip'	*saah	'he crowed'
z:z	*zhuur	'flowers'	*zhuur	'appearance'
l:l	*walla	'he appointed as guardian'	walla	'by God'
n:n	*naayem	'asleep'	*naayek	'your (f) flute'

In other varieties of Syrian Arabic other pairs occur, such as f:f̣, r:ṛ, ʔ:ʔ̣. Damascus Arabic differs from most sedentary Syrian Arabic (1) in not having the r:ṛ pair which is very common throughout the Syrian area, as well as in Egypt and the rest of North Africa, and (2) in having the n:ṇ pair which is very rare elsewhere.

As far as the vowel variation is concerned, Damascus Arabic again is between the two extremes. For example, there is less variation than in Beirut Arabic, more than in Baghdad Arabic. [In some areas it even happens that a "velarized" vowel occurs with no velarized consonant in the vicinity. In most of Lebanon, for example, the word for "tea" is ṣaay, not saay, as it is in Damascus. In such cases it is necessary to mark the vowel quality with the velarization symbol.]

SECTION C. ANALYSIS

Note 10.1 Occupation nouns. In Units 1-10 three kinds of occupation nouns have appeared: (1) the type represented by naẓẓaar 'carpenter' and hallaaʔ 'barber,' (2) the type represented by taaẓer 'business man' and ṣaanaʔa 'maid', and (3) the type represented by booyaẓi 'bootblack' and boostaẓi 'mailman'.

(1) The commonest type of occupation noun is characterized by the pattern C₁aC₂C₂aaC₃, i.e. with double second consonant and long -aa- between the second and third consonants of the root. Nouns of this pattern are very frequent and usually are names of occupations, although occasionally they are adjectives or names of instruments. The feminine forms (i.e. C₁aC₂C₂aaC₃ plus feminine -t ending) may be female occupation names, but more often are names of instruments or machines.

The usual plural of masculine nouns of this type is in -iin: naẓẓaariin, hallaaʔiin, but fairly often the plural is formed simply by adding the feminine -t ending to the masculine singular. In such cases the feminine noun and the plural of the masculine noun are identical in form. The usual plural of a feminine noun of this type is in -aat: ḡassaalaat, ʔaṣṣaaṣaat. Here is a list of masculine and feminine nouns of this pattern with roots which have appeared in Units 1-10. If the noun listed is not an occupation noun it is marked either adj (adjective) or I (instrument noun). Plurals other than -iin (or ft) and -aat are given:

root	meaning	C ₁ aC ₂ C ₂ aaC ₃ noun	meaning
√ʔtʔ	cutting, cutting road = banditry	ʔaṭṭaaʔ ¹	bandit
√bvb	door	bawwaab	doorkeeper
√bvʔ	selling	bayyaaʔ adj	seller, one who sells
√brd	cold	barraad	refrigerator
√dll	show, direct	dallaal	one who shows things for sale, etc. (e.g. real estate agent)
√ḡnm	sheep	ḡannaam	dealer in sheep
√hbb	liking, loving	habbaab adj	likeable, lovable
√hdd	iron, sharpness	haddaad	blacksmith
√hlʔ	shaving, cutting hair	hallaaʔ	barber
√htb	firewood	haṭṭaab	one who cuts or sells firewood
√lhm	meat	lanhaam	butcher
√msh	wiping, surveying	massaaḥ ²	surveyor
√nʔr	doing woodwork	naẓẓaar	carpenter
√smk	fish	ṣammaak	fish dealer
√sbḡ	dyeing	ṣabbaaḡ	dyer
√sms	sun	ṣammaas	deacon (pl ṣamaamse ft)
√tvr	flying	ṭayyaar	flier, pilot
√tbx	cooking	ṭabbaax	cook (male)
√tlb	asking for	ṭallaab	beggar

¹ Usually used in the phrase ʔaṭṭaaʔ tariiʔ.

² Usually used in the phrase massaah ʔaraadi 'land surveyor'.

√xVt	sewing	xayyaat		tailor
√xbz	bread, baking	xabbaaz		baker
√xdm	service	xaddaam		servant
√xtt	line, handwriting	xaṭtaaṭ		calligrapher, professional penman
√zVt	oil	zayyaat		oil seller
√ʎlb	turning over	ʎallaabe	I	kind of Ferris wheel
√ʎss	cutting	ʎaṣṣaasa		beautician (= hair cut- ter), cutter (dress- making).
		ʎaṣṣaasa	I	(nail) clippers
√bVb	door	bawwaabe		female doorkeeper
		bawwaabe	I	gate
√brd	cold	barraade	I	refrigerator
√gsl	washing	gassaale		washerwoman
√smṣ	hearing	sammaafa	I	earphones, (phone) receiver, stethoscope, hearing aid
√sxn	heat	ṣaxxaane	I	(electric) heater, hot plate
√tVr	flying	ṭayyaara	I	airplane, kite
√tbx	cooking	ṭabbaaxa		female cook

If the root is CCV, the pattern has the form C₁aC₂C₂a, and with nouns of this type the plural is always formed by adding the feminine-t ending (C₁aC₂C₂aaye), e.g. kawwa 'one who presses clothes,' kawwaaye 'woman presser of clothes' or the plural of kawwa.

√h kV	speaking	ṛakka		speaker
√kwV	pressing, branding	kawwa		presser of clothes
√srV	buying	ṣarra	adj 1	buyer, one who buys

(2) Another kind of occupation noun has the pattern C₁aaC₂eC₃. This pattern is identical with the pattern of the active participle (cf. Note 8.2), but these occupation nouns differ from the active participles in having a plural of the pattern C₁eC₂C₂aaC₃ while the participle has a plural in -iin. Thus: taaṣer: taṣṣaar and kaateb 'clerk': kaṭtaab, but kaateb 'writing': kaatbiin. The feminine form of these nouns usually is a female occupation name, and the plural is usually identical with that of the masculine. For example: ṣaaneṣ 'hand worker (male)' and ṣaanṣa 'maid' both have plural ṣannaas.

This C₁aaC₂eC₃ pattern makes other kinds of nouns, too, such as the ordinal numbers (see the following Note, 10.2) and the names of things (see Note 11.). Here is a brief list of occupation nouns of this kind:

√hkm	governing, judging	ṛaakem		governor, judge
√ktb	writing	kaateb		clerk

1. Used as a noun in the expression bayyaas ṣarra 'merchant'.

ṣnṣ	fashioning by hand	ṣaaneṣ	manual worker
tṣr	doing business	ṭaaṣer	business man
ṭlb	asking for	ṭaaleb	student, beggar
xdm	service	xaadem	servant
ṣml	doing, making	ṣaamel	worker 1

ṣnṣ	fashioning by hand	ṣaanṣa	maid
-----	--------------------	--------	------

(3) The least common of the three kinds of occupation nouns, is formed by adding the suffix -ṣi to a noun. Notice that the first two types are characterized by a certain pattern combined with a root, but this third type is characterized by a suffix added to an already existing noun. The plural is always formed by adding the feminine-t ending (so that the noun ends in -ṣiyye), which results in the plural always being identical with the feminine singular (cf. Nisbes Note 7.3): booyaṣi:booyaṣiyye. Examples:

noun	meaning	noun plus -ṣi	meaning
ʎahwe	coffee, coffee house	ʎahwaṣiṣ	owner of coffee house
booṣṭa	mail	booṣṭaṣi	mailman
booya	paint, shoe polish	booyaṣi	bootblack
dəkkaan	shop	dəkkanṣiṣ	shopkeeper
ṛaader	ready	ṛaaderṣi	seller of ready-made clothes

Here are additional sentences illustrating the use of occupation nouns:

- ṛeṭṭi llaṛme belbarraad(e). Put the meat in the refrigerator.
- lʎemmaal ṭalabu fersa sanawiyye . Labor demanded an annual vacation.
- marti raahet laṣand ʎaṣṣaaset ṣṣaṣr . My wife went to the hairdresser's.
- ween bawwaab lmadrase ? Where is the school doorkeeper?
- raah iṣiib nnaṣṣaar welhaddaad . He went to get the carpenter and blacksmith.
- llaṛnaam tabaṣna lyoom muu faaten . Our butcher isn't open today.
- ʎahmad byeṣteḡel dallaal byuut . Ahmad is a real estate agent ("show-er of houses").
- lḡassaale ṣaaye yoom ttaneen ṣṣaaye . The washwoman is coming this coming Monday.
- byeṣhar. ṣalee ṣarra bʎalf leera . It looks as though he'll buy at a thousand pounds.
- lessa maa ʎeṣa ṭaʎmi men ṣand lkawwa ? Hasn't my suit come from the cleaner's ("presser's") yet?

1 The plural ʎemmaal is the equivalent of English "labor" in expressions like "Labor is in favor of price control."

2 Notice the slight changes which sometimes take place when the -ṣi is added.

Note 10.2 Ordinal numbers. In Units 1-10 the following instances of ordinal numbers ("first, second, third", etc.) have occurred in Basic Sentences:

- 2.7 dāraže ʔuula yemma dāraže taanye ? First class or second class?
 2.30 wwaʔʔeflna ʔala ʔawwal baab ... Stop at the first door ...
 4.27 hayy ʔawwal marra ... This is the first time.
 10.11 taalet šebbaak ... The third window ...
 10.22 ruuḥ ʔaššebbaak lxaames . Go to the fifth window.

The word for "first" is ʔawwal, feminine ʔuula or ʔawwalaaniyye, and the ordinal numbers from "second" to "tenth" have the same root as the corresponding cardinal numbers combined with pattern C₁aaC₂eC₃, which is identical with the pattern of the active participle of primary verbs (cf. Notes 8.2, 10.1). Here are the forms:

root	ordinal m.	f.	meaning
√ʔwl	ʔawwal	ʔuula	first
√tnV	taani	taanye	second
√tlt	taalet	taalte	third
√rbʔ	raabeʔ	raabʔa	fourth
√xms	xaames	xaamse	fifth
√sds or stt	saades or saatet	saadse or saatte	sixth
√sbʔ	saabeʔ	saabʔa	seventh
√tmn	taamen	taamne	eighth
√tsʔ	taaseʔ	taasʔa	ninth
√ʔšr	ʔaašer	ʔaašra	tenth

These ordinal numbers behave like ordinary adjectives in AGREEing with their noun WHEN THEY FOLLOW the noun. Very often, however, the ordinal number is put before the noun and then is always masculine singular no matter what the noun is. Also in this case, neither the noun nor the adjective has l- 'the', although the phrase is usually to be translated 'the third window, the fifth book', etc! This construction is just like the one with comparatives described in Note 7.

Note that ʔawwal has a number of special uses, which have been noted in footnotes to L₁stening in sections of several Units. When followed by a noun with l- 'the' it means 'the first of, the beginning of', and the expression ʔawwal mbaareḥ means 'day before yesterday'.

Here are sample sentences containing ordinal numbers:

1. hayy saabeʔ seefiyye bmadḍiiha bebluudaan . This is the seventh summer I've spent in Bludan.
 2. ʔaatti zuur ʔemmi belyoom lxaames men kell šahr . It's my custom to visit my mother on the fifth of every month.

3. hayy bento rraabʔa . This is his fourth daughter.
 4. nabiha xaames telmiize ʔežet metʔaxra . Nabiha is the fifth student (fem) to come late.
 5. haada saades mahall byəftaḥo xaliil . This is the sixth place Khalil has opened.
 6. huwwe beddarže ttaamne, wbəddo yeṭlaʔ ʔassaabʔa . He's in the eighth class and wants to get up to the seventh.
 7. hayy lmarrattaalte halli beži laʔandak fiiha . This is the third time I've come to you.
 8. taani binaaye ʔala šmaalak hiyye lbooṣṭa . The second building on your left is the postoffice.
 9. ʔedli halli ʔelto marra taanye . Repeat what you said again.
 10. wʔente ttaani šebak maa taakol ? You too, what's the matter with you that you don't eat?
 11. ʔawwal šii xseel ʔideek wtafa kool . The first thing - wash your hands and come and eat.
 12. bʔawwal ṣseef kanna lessaana beššaam . We were still in Damascus at the beginning of summer.
 13. ḥkiili lmasʔale men ʔawwalha, šuu saar mafak ? Tell me the problem from the beginning - what happened to you?
 14. ʔawwal maa šaafni ʔerefni . As soon as he saw me he recognized ("knew") me.
 15. bedfaʔlak bʔawwal ššahr . I'll pay you the first of the month.
 16. ʔaxi kaan ʔanna ʔawwal mbaareḥ . My brother was with us the day before yesterday.
 17. walla lbaṭṭiixaat lʔawwalaaniyyaat kaanu ʔa ḥsan mnəttaanyaat . The first watermelons were certainly better than the second ones.
 18. žəbli ʔanattaani biira . Bring me a beer, too.
 19. žəblo waared taani . Bring him another one .
 20. ʔana ttaani belmadrise . I'm the second one at school. or I'm in school, too.
 21. taani marra taʔabakkiir . The next time come early.
 22. miin ʔali beenaathon ? lʔaašer ʔalyamiin . Which one of them is Ali? The tenth one on the right.

Note 10.3. Color adjectives. Two examples of color adjectives have appeared in Units 1-10:

2.27 šaayef lbinaaye lhamra ... ? Do you see the red building ...?

8.27 ... wəlʔamiis lʔabyad the white shirt ...

There is a pattern $ʔaC_1C_2aC_3$ (identical in form with the pattern of the comparative cf. Note 7.1) which characterizes a set of adjectives referring either to colors or physical deformities. These adjectives will be called COLOR ADJECTIVES. The feminine of a color adjective is $C_1aC_2C_3a$, and it is worth noting that it always ends in -a even after light consonants and non-throat consonants. The forms of the feminine with CVC roots are C_1eeC_3a or C_1ooC_3a . The plural has the pattern $C_1əC_2(ə)C_3$, which has the form C_1iiC_3 or C_1uuC_3 with CVC roots. When the adjective is one referring to physical defect often a plural in -aan is used more than this regular plural. Here is a list, including words which have not appeared in Basic Sentences:

<u>masculine</u>	<u>feminine</u>	<u>plural</u>	<u>meaning</u>
* ʔammar	hamra	həmə	red
* ʔasmar	samra	səmə	dark, brunette
* ʔašfar	safra	səfər	yellow
* ʔašʔar	šaʔra	šəʔər	blond
* ʔaxdar	xadra	xədər	green
* ʔazraʔ	zarʔa	zərəʔ	blue
* ʔabyad	beeda	biid	white
* ʔaswad	sooda	suud	black
* ʔafraž	farža	fərž or fəržaan	lame
* ʔatraš	tarša	tər(ə)š or təršaan	deaf
* ʔafwar	fōora	fūr or fūuraan	one-eyed
* ʔafma	fāmya	fəmyaan	blind

The masculine singular of these color adjectives is identical with the invariable comparative. This means that the regular comparative of colors **is not often used**. The usual way of saying, for example, "whiter" is ʔabyad ʔaktar although occasionally other ways are used. Here are some sample sentences:

1. štareet tlet ʔəmšan biid . I bought three white shirts.
2. ʔaal maa bihebb səmə wʔaxad waande samra . He said he didn't like brunettes and then married one.
3. laazem ʔəšteri ʔaʔem ʔaswad . I have to buy a black suit.
4. halbaṭṭiixaat muu həmər ktiiir . These melons are not very red.
5. ʔaalfa bentak zzgiire šaʔra . Your young daughter turned out to be blonde!
6. ʔaalfa laʔahel ʔəmmha , kəlhon šəʔər . She takes after her mother's family - they're all blond.

7. šaayef halʔaraadi ʔaddeš xadra . Look how green these fields are!
8. xaliil ʔašʔar wəfyawo zərə ? Khalil is blond and blue-eyed.
9. xeer nəšaalla wəššak ʔašfar . I hope you're OK - your face is pale.
10. balla ʔatiini halwaraʔa lbeeda halli ʔeddaamak . Please give me that white paper in front of you.
11. ʔahmad ʔasmar mən fali or ʔasmar ʔaktar mən fali . Ahmad is darker than Ali.
12. ʔaktar binaayaat halbalad hamra . Most of the buildings of this town are red.
13. ʔabu ʔtaʔm lʔazraʔ halli waaʔef hniik bikuun lʔestaaz . The man with the ("father of the") blue suit standing over there must be (or is) the professor.
14. šuu loon leʔmaaše halli štareetha ? What color is the cloth you bought ?
ʔašfar or safra Yellow.
15. halwalad ʔaṭraš mən waʔt maa kaan zgiir . This boy has been deaf from the time he was young.
16. maa bihebbu yefhamu ʔaamliin haalhon təršaan . They don't want to understand - they're pretending they're deaf.
17. ʔaaxde rəžžaal ʔafwar bfeen waande laaken mniik maṣha . She's married to a one-eyed man but he's very good with her.
18. lxxersaan byənku bʔidsehon . Mute people talk with their hands.
19. fii ʔariiʔa latafliim lʔemyaan hatta yəʔru wyəktbu . There is a method for teaching the blind to read and write.
20. ʔahmad ʔando walad ʔafraž . Ahmad has a lame son.

Note 10.4 Agreement.

A. Strict agreement. In general an adjective or a verb in Arabic agrees with the preceding noun to which it refers. In other words if the noun is masculine singular, or feminine singular, or plural, so is the adjective or verb that refers to it. For example:

lwalad zzġiir ?eža .	The young boy came.
lbent zzġiire ?ežet .	The young girl came.
lewlaad zzġaar ?ežu .	The young children came.

When there is a series of nouns connected by w- 'and' an adjective or verb referring to the whole series is usually plural. For example:

lwalad wəlbent ?ežu mət?axriin .	The boy and girl came late.
l?asaatze wəttalamiiz kaanu mawžuudiin .	The professors and students were present.

An adjective or verb referring to a noun with the ending -een 'two' is usually plural. For example:

lwaladeen (or lbenteen) zzġaar ?ežū .	The two young boys (or girls) came.
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

The kind of agreement described so far in this note may be called STRICT AGREEMENT. Most agreement of adjective and verbs in Arabic with the nouns to which they refer is strict agreement, and many examples have occurred in the Basic Sentences and elsewhere in Units 1-10. There are however, two other kinds of agreement which also occur in Arabic.

B. Deflected agreement. One of these other kinds of agreement is the arrangement called DEFLECTED AGREEMENT, in which the noun is plural and the adjective or verb involved is feminine singular. For most noun plurals referring to things, not persons, and for a handful of plurals referring to persons this kind of agreement is much more common than strict agreement which would have the adjective or verb in the plural. For example:

l?əmšaan haadra .	The shirts are ready.
-------------------	-----------------------

is more common than:

l?əmšaan haadriin .	The shirts are ready.
---------------------	-----------------------

This system of deflected agreement in which a feminine singular "agrees" with a plural is of very frequent occurrence and is one of the most characteristic features of Arabic. There have been several examples of it in the Basic Sentences and elsewhere in Units 1-10:

page 7.18 <u>manaazer lwedyaan btasher</u> l?ensaan .	The views of the valleys enshant mankind.
--	---

page 5.23 šuu leğraad halli laazəmtak ?What are the things you need:

page 5.24 ?asfaari daa?iman rxiiša . My prices are always cheap.

page 8.20 ... nšaalla ?axbaar ssett ... I hope the news of your wife

mniiha . is good.

When there is a series of nouns connected by w- 'and' every one of which is a plural of the kind which may take deflected agreement an adjective or verb referring to the whole series may be, and more often is, feminine singular rather than plural. It is worth noting, however, that if any of the nouns -- even only one in a long series -- are not plurals of this kind, then the adjective or verb must follow strict agreement, i.e. be plural agreeing with the whole series. For example:

lkababiid wəlbaraniit haadra (or haadriin) The coats and hats are ready.

But:

l?əmšaan wəttə?m haadriin (not haadra). The shirts and suit are ready.

Because ta?m is not a plural at all, while all the others (kababiid, baraniit, ?əmšaan) are plurals which may follow deflected agreement.

C. Equivocal agreement. There is one other kind of agreement, much less common than the preceding two kinds but in regular use. In this kind of agreement called EQUIVOCAL AGREEMENT the verb (or, less commonly, adjective) precedes the noun and is masculine singular no matter whether the noun is masculine singular, feminine singular, or plural. In sentences like this the noun is always indefinite, i.e. does not have l- 'the'. Examples:

?eža šii mara lahoon ? Did some woman come here?

mawžuud hniik wlaad šarab ktiir . There are lots of Arabs (present) there.

There have been very few examples of equivocal agreement in Units 1-10.

D. Examples. The three brief descriptions of types of agreement given in this note do not cover all the details of agreement in Arabic; there are only indications of the general tendencies. The best way to master agreement in Arabic is to hear lots of Arabic sentences and make up new sentences on the basis of the ones you have heard. The following thirty-five sentences illustrate the general types described and include some special cases that were not specifically mentioned.

1. halkuusaayaat muu mnaah ktiir . These kusa's aren't very good.
2. t?uumti ?ežet men šand lkawwa šii ? Have my suits come from the presser's yet?
3. miin ?eža ? ?ežu wlaad Who came? Your cousins came.
šammak .
4. ?eža rżaal ktiir šal?ahwe . A lot of men came to the coffee house.
5. ?ežu ttalamiiz halli bədhon The students who want to learn French
yətšallamu frənsaawi . came.

6. ʔəza nəswaan lafand marti . Some women came (to visit) my wife.
7. rənt ʔana wʔabi lanzuurkon . My father and I came to visit you.
8. fii ʔando tlet binaayaat kbiire (kbaar). He has three large buildings.
9. ʃtareet daftareen kbaar . I bought two large notebooks.
10. banaato ləkbaar biruumu ʃalmadrise . His old daughter goes to school.
11. taalef ʔəhwe ʔawiiye barra . Heavy winds have come up outside.
12. halbalad həlwe wəndiife . The streets of this town are nice and clean.
13. tṭruud tṭʔiile byəbʃatuuha bəlbariid They send heavy packages by ordinary mail.
lʃaadi .
14. layaali ʃseef həlwe . Summer evenings are lovely.
15. ʃaar ʃandhon maʃaari ktiir . They got a lot of money.
16. laazem mnaas tafref lhaʔiiʔa mətəl People must know the truth as it is.
maa hiyye .
17. mən zamaan kaan yəʒi naas ktiir A long time ago lots of people used to
lahalmaʃam . come to this restaurant.
18. mada halwaraʔa bass xamse mənna . Only five of us signed this paper.
19. kmaalet lmawʒuudiin maa rədyu The rest of us weren't willing to sign
yəmduuha . it.
20. halmgallafaat halli ʒəbthon kbiire These envelopes you brought are [too]
(kbaar) . large.
21. baʃd halmaʃar ʃaaret ʔasʃaar lənbuub After that rain the prices of grains
btənzəl . should go down.
22. barqiiyyaat lxaarʒiiyye maḥfuuzə The Foreign Office telegrams are kept
mmaktabi . in my desk.
23. leekhon hayy banaatak raaʒʃiin Look, there are your daughters coming
mnəlmadrise . back from school.
24. maa tələf biʔiidhon yəʃtəru beet . It wasn't possible for them to buy a home.
25. mən ʃahər lahallaʔ ʃaar ʒaaye For a month now six ships have been
labəeruūt sett bawabiir . coming to Beirut.
26. raahet mnaas ʔabl nəʃʃ lleel . The people left before midnight.

27. ʔana maa bḥəbb ʔəlla ssiigaaraat I only like mild cigarettes.
lxafiife .
28. ʃando tlet banaat kbaar wtənteen He has three grown up daughters and
zḡaar . two young ones.
29. ʔaddeʃ həlwe halʔiyyaam, laa fii How nice these days are -- it's neither
bard walaafii ʒoob . hot nor cold.
30. ʃaaret tṭayyaaraat bətwaddiik laween It's gotten so that planes will take
maa bəthəbb . you wherever you want.
31. maʃaayef ləbnaan həlwe . The summer resorts of Lebanon are lovely.
32. tələf (or təlfət) ʔəʃriin ʃeele Twenty families went up to Bloudane.
ʔala bluudaan .
33. ʔiza bədna nʃuuf byuut laazem If we want to see houses, the ladies
ikuunu maʃna ssəttat . have to be with us.
34. yoom bikuun fii fərʃa lmadaares On a day that's a holiday the schools
maa bteftan . don't open.
35. ləssa fii ʔaraadi biʔafriiqya maa There are still areas in Africa unknown
byaʃrəfha ʔənsaan . to man ("a human being doesn't know her").

Note 10.5. Formulas and responses. In Units 1-10 a number of polite formulas have appeared and some discussion of them was given in Notes 1.1 and 4.8. One of the most important features of the use of polite formulas in Arabic is the selection of the appropriate response to each formula.

A. In many cases the response is something like "the same to you" in effect. Examples:

- ssalaamu ʃalaykom . - waʃalaykumu ssalaam .
- ʔahlan wasahlan . - ʔahlan wasahlan fiik . (or just fiik)
- salleem ʔideek . - wʔideek .
- təʃbnu ʃala_xeer . - wʔəntu bxeer .
- katter xeerak . - wxeerak .
- maḥaba . - maḥaba .

B. Very often, however, the usual response is more like "the same to you and more so." Examples:

nhaarak safiid . - nhaarak safiid mbaarak .
May your day be fortunate. May your day be fortunate and blessed.

marhaba . - marhabteen (or even: maraaneb)
Hello. Two hellos. (or: Hellos)

sabaan_lkeer . - sabaan_lxeeraat . Morning of well-beings.
Morning of well-being. miit_sabaan . 100 mornings [of goodness].
sabaan_nnuur . Morning of light.
?alla yesfed sabaanak . May God make your morning
fortunate.
sabaan_lfell . Morning of jasmine. (Said
between intimate friends)

The exact use of these responses which increase the good wishes of the original formula varies somewhat from place to place, but the principle is probably in operation everywhere Arabic is spoken.

C. Another frequent type of response is the echoic response like ?alla ysalmak (see Note 4.8). In this kind of response the echo formula may be used in response whenever a certain root appears in the original formula. Other examples:

(1) ?alla ybaarek fiik . is used as echo to ybrk .
mabruuk (e) . - ?alla ybaarek fiik .

Blessed! (Said to someone who has just purchased, or is wearing, a new article of clothing; to someone who has just had a child; to someone who was just promoted; etc.) - God bless you.

fiid mbaarak . - ?alla ybaarek fiik .

Blessed holiday! (Said on certain holidays) - God bless you.

hallet lbarake . - ?alla ybaarek fiik .

[God] has let fall his blessing! (Said on a variety of occasions when God's bounty is to be noticed) - God bless you.

(2) ?alla ysaafiik . is used as echo to yfy

?alla ysaafiik lsaafye . - ?alla ysaafiik .

God give you strength. (Said to someone working or about to work). - God strengthen you.

mfaafa nsaalla . - ?alla ysaafiik .

God willing you will be strengthened. (Said to or about sick person) - God strengthen you.

lhamdella falsaafye . - ?alla ysaafiik .

Praise be to God for the strength. (Said to or about someone who has recovered from sickness). - God strengthen you.

(3) ?alla yansem faleek is used as echo to vnm

nafiiman . - ?alla yansem faleek .

(Said to someone who has just had haircut, shave, or bath, or who has just awakened from a nap). - God favor you.

nafam . - ?alla yansem faleek .

Yes, sir. (When said respectfully or attentively, usually to one older than oneself) - God favor you.

C. In addition to these three response patterns "same to you", same to you and more so", and the echo, there are many stereotyped responses which do not seem to fit any particular pattern. For example, ?alla yanfazak is widely used as a response.

?alla mafak . - ?alla yanfazak .

God be with you. (Said to someone about to do a certain job or tackle a certain problem; or as a farewell to someone leaving). - God keep you.

?alla ysaafiik . - ?alla yanfazak .

God strengthen you. (Said to a sick person) - God keep you.

?alla yxalliilak yaahon . - ?alla yanfazak .

May God spare them for you. (Said to someone about his children). - God keep you.

Sometimes there is a set of three formulas which fit together. One example, familiar since Unit 1 is the "goodby." If the one leaving speaks first, as is more usual, he says xaatrak . Then the one remaining must answer maf ssalaame . The first person may then answer ?alla ysalmak . If, on the other hand, as happens under various conditions, the one remaining speaks first, he says maf ssalaame and the other must answer ?alla ysalmak . Notice the pattern of the responses - If xaatrak first, then definitely maf ssalaame and maybe ?alla ysalmak . If maf ssalaame first, then definitely ?alla ysalmak .

Another common example of three-way formulas is the tfaddal . - sahteen - fala_?albak set. A person who is eating or about to eat says tfaddal (= Please join me.) to companion or passerby. The other person must reply sahteen ("two healths" = no thank you, but I hope you enjoy it). Then the first person may reply fala_?albak ("on your heart"). Sometimes, however, sahteen is said without being preceded by tfaddal . For example, someone might say he is going to eat lunch whereupon someone else present will say sahteen (= I hope you enjoy your lunch). The other person in such a case usually replies fala_?albak .

Section D. Exercises

1. Completion. Fill in the blanks in these sentences as in previous completion exercises using an adjective or verb of the root indicated, making sure that you use a permissible form agreeing with the noun, and making sure also that you understand the sentence.

1. maṭaaṣem halbalad ktiir (ndf) .
2. ʔaadatan bebʔat makatiibi (skr) .
3. stanna labakra yəmken (wsl) ʔaxbaar (mnH) .
4. manaazer ṭṭariiʔ been ʔaalee wbeeruut (nlv) .
5. halmoozaat muu (tyb) ktiir .
6. (rVH) ʔaššaaam ʔameerkaan ktiir .
7. nšaalla wlaadak (bšt) ?
8. mayyet halbalad (ktr) w (tyb) .
9. (mdv) mnaasabaat ktiir wmaa nakeetello .
10. šababiik beetna muu (zbt) .
11. wlaado daayman (ndf) .
12. ʔuwad beetna (zgr) .
13. byəzhar llaṇnaamiin lyoom muu (fth) .
14. ʔasfaar ttyaab (glv) .
15. binaayet lboosṭa (nmr) .
16. štareet tlet ʔəmsaan (bvđ) .
17. Šəbahōn ʔyuunak (nmr) ?
18. ʔəža šii kabbuudi l(bnn) mṇəlmasbaḡa ?
19. mnaas (ʔvl) heek .
- 20.

2. Questions and Answers. Answer each of the following questions using an occupation noun (or noun of similar pattern) in the reply.

1. ʔand miin btəmsan šabbəaṭak ?
2. Šuu ʔəsmo halli biʔəss ššafir wbiʔəšš ddaʔn ?
3. ʔiza bəddak təstaʔzer šii beet, laʔand miin bətruun ?
4. miin byəṭbox ʔaadatan bəlmaṭṣam ?

5. biʔeeš byəbʔatu lbariid lžawwi ?
6. miin bižəblak makatiibak kəll yoom ?
7. ʔaadatan miin bibiif llaṇme ?
8. miin saawaalak haṭṭaʔm ?
9. Šuu ʔəsmo halli bisaawi ššababiik wəlbwaab ?
10. miin halli bisaawi lṅəbəz ?
11. miin byəkwilak ṭʔuumak ?
12. Šuu ʔəsm lmara halli btəḡsel bəlʔəžra ?
13. whalli btəṭbox bəlʔəžra ?
14. whalli byəštəḡlu bəlmaṣaamel ?

Section E. Listening In

Conversation 1. Ahmad comes to see Jones who is just about to leave.

- A. salamaat !
- J. salamaat , mniin halli ʔžiit ʔabəl maa ʔəṭlaf .
- A. ʔiza ʔaleek šii laa tətʔaxxar mən šaani .
- J. ʔana kənt raayen laʔandak šuufak .
- A. ʔahla wsahla ʔeemta maa šarraft .
- J. lʔeele waasle baʔdbakra .
- A. ʔaal , basatṭni bihalxabar .
- J. bass lahallaʔ maa laʔeet beet .
- J. šuuṣaar maʔddallaal halli nakeenamaʔo mən šaher ?
- A. nsiitʔəllak ʔaṭaak ʔəmro .¹
- J. lah , lah , šuu ṣarlo ?
- A. maabaʔrefwalla . ʔee siidi kəlna ʔala haṭṭariiʔ .
- J. nšaalla maaykuun ʔando wlaad zḡaar .
- A. mətli mətlaḡ² maa baʔref , bass ʔalla kbiir maabyənsa hada .

¹ ʔaṭaak ʔəmro "he gave you his life" = he died.

² mətli mətlaḡ "like me, like you" = I'm the same as you, in the same situation as you.

- A. tayyeb yaa siidi . lanaržaf lamas'alt' lbeet .
- J. šuu btəftəker ?
- A. hah ! hayy ?abu ?ammad .
- J. miin haad³ !
- A. dallaal šaater fii taht ?iido byuut ktiir .
- A. marnaba ?abu ?ammad .
- A. A. maraaneb .
- A. bəddi mənnaak beet .
- A. A. ləl'əžra ?
- A. ?ee nařam .
- A. A. bařd bəkra fii beet mniin bəddo yafda⁴??
- A. heek řaal , wbətkuun wəřlet sət .
- A. A. šuu miin bəddo yəsta'žer lbeet ?
- A. řafwan , laa t'aaxzuuni ?əntu ttəcen .
- A. məster žoons břarfak řala ?abu ?ammad .
- A. A. tšarrařna , lbeet lanadrtak ?
- J. nařam .
- A. A. yařni nawaali ?addeš bəddak ?əžrto ?
- J. řala hawa lbeet .
- A. A. tayyeb řhəmt řaleek . bəddak beet mniin .
- A. řananəřtəmed řaleek yaa ?abu ?ammad .
- A. A. řala řeeniwraasi .
- Conversation 2. Ahmad and Jones go to the Post Office.
- A. tařa lanfuut řalboořta yəmken ?əli makatiib bisanduu'ri .
- J. w'ana žaayini řard la'aaxdo .
- A. halli byəxloř ?abəl byəstanna ttaani řand lbaab .
- J. žaayini řard . btə'mor tsalləmi yaa ?
- C. mařak řii wařəl fii ?
- J. nařam řaddal .

1 ³ haad = haada Several common words are sometimes shortened by dropping a final
a e.g. marnab for marnaba .

4 řədi , yəřda 'become empty' is the verb of which řađi is the active participle.

- C. řaddal hayy řard .
- J. mamnuun .
- C. řmeel mařruuf mdiili ?əsmak wəřtəlli řənwaanak hoon .
- J. tayyeb .
- C. halla? bətriid təřtan řard lanřuuf šuu fii ?
- J. balla řatiini bihalleera řawaabəř .
- C. šuu řtawaaabəř halli bətriidha ?
- J. ?arřa bariid řawwi tabař lřəřriin .
- J. wəlkmaale tabař lřamse .
- C. řaddal . mařbuuřiin ?
- J. nařam .
- * * *
- A. žaayini nawaale mən ?afriiqya lřunuubiyye .
- J. šuu fii ?əlak nada hniik ?
- A. fii ?əli ?əben řamm taažer hniik .
- * * *
- J. šuu halbard maa kaan yəxloř !!
- A. mařbuuř biřayaati maa řəřt sənə mətəl hassənə .
- J. ?əlli ?iza laaz mak řii mən beeruut .
- A. bəddi salaamtak , balla salləmi řařəřt wa't btařal .
- J. řalla ysalmak .
- A. ?addeš bəřha təmbəřet marti lamma bəřřuuf sət .
- A. balla ?awwal muu btařalu řařřaam řařuunaxabar .
- J. řabiifi miin ?əlna řəerkon ?
- A. řalla yəřfəřkon wixalliikon .

ʔafrīqiya	Africa	msóokar	adj	insured
ʔəžra ft+(pl ʔəžraawáat)	rent, pay	m(u)fawwadiyye	ft	legation
ʔiime ft+(pl reg or ʔiyam)	value	sállam	hand over, surrender, quit; greet (ʔala)	
baakéet (pl baaketáat)	package	sáman (a)	permit, allow; smahli b- let me have	
bariid	mail	sandúuʔ (pl sanadiiʔ)	box, trunk, "caisse"	
bariidi	adj	pertaining to mail		
barqiyye	ft	telegram		
ʔala_bakra	in the morning	stáʔžar (ʔyestáʔžer)	rent (from someone)	
bidúun	without	šabbáak (pl šababiik)	window	
bóošta	ft	mail, post office, bus	tʔámmal	hope
bóoštaži (pl booštažiyye)	mailman	táalet	adj	third
dáftar (pl dafáater)	notebook, ledger	talğráaf (pl talğraafáat)	telegram	
háatet	adj	putting	tekram	at your service; you're wel come (reply to "thank you")
hawáale	ft	money order	taaʔ (pl tuuʔ)	"fold"
kaláam (coll)	talk, words;	táabes (pl tawáabes)	stamp	
kəlməft	word	talab (pl -aat)	request, demand; appli- cation, order, (for some- thing)	
kállaf	charge, tell someone to do something	tárd (pl truud(e))	package	
kúwwe	ft	window esp. ticket window	tayyáara	ft
máda (i)	sign	wáašəŋon	Washington	
maktúub (pl makatiib)	letter	wáraʔ bəul	coll	postage stamps
mazbúut	adj.	exact	wásl (pl wəuuláat)	receipt
mažmúuʔ	total	wazáara	ft	ministry
maʔlúum	known, certainly, of course	wázzaʔ	distribute	
məftáan (pl mafatiin)	key, opener	xáames	adj	fifth
məstáʔžal	adj	urgent	xáaržiyye	ft
məşriyye ft+(pl reg or maşári)	money	foreign affairs	záad (i)	exceed, do or be in excess
mğállaf (pl mğallafáat)	envelope			

žarf (pl žrúuf(e))	envelope; circumstance; adverb	
žáwwi	adj	atmospheric, air- (as adjective)
ʔáadatan	usually	
ʔáadi	adj	ordinary, usual
ʔábba	fill	
ʔállam	mark, teach	
ʔómar	Omar	
ʔənwáan (pl ʔanawiin)	address	

A TRIP TO ALEPPO

Section A. Basic Sentences

Mr. Jones is speaking to Khalil.	mæstər žoons ʕamm yəthaaaka maʕ xaliil .
mind, reason	ʕaʔl
look around	ʕfarraž
Aleppo	halab
opinion	raʔi
1. I feel like going to see Aleppo. How about it? (What is your opinion?)	ʔaayelli ʕaʔli ʔətfarraž ʕala halab , šuu raʔyak ?
hide, conceal	xafa yəxfi
trip	məšwaar
2. To tell you the truth ("I'm not concealing from you"), I have to take a trip there.	maa bəxfi ʕaleek , ʔana kamaan ʕaliyyi məšwaar lahniik .
objection	maaneʕ
be companions	traafaʔu
3. If there's no objection, we'll go together.	ʔiza maa fii maaneʕ mn-traafaʔ sawa .
pleasure	suruur
4. With great pleasure.	bkəll suruur .
decide	qarrar
travel	saafar
5. When did you plan to go? ("When are you decided to travel?")	ʔeemta mqarrer tsaafar ?
make easy	sahhal
6. Saturday, God willing. ("if God makes it easy")	yoom ssabt nʔalla sahhāl .
7. How shall we go? ("By what do we travel?")	biʔeeš mənšaafer .?
train	treen
slow	baʕiiʔ
dirty	wəʕex

in a hurry	məstafžəl
fast	sariif
8. The train is slow and dirty. I'm in a hurry and airplane is faster.	ttreen baʕiiʔ uwəʕex. ʔana məstafžəl wəʕtəyyaaraʔasraf .
9. My idea was to go by train so I'd see more.	ʔana kaan fəkri ruuh bəttreen laʔətfarraž ʔaktar .
finish	xallaš
10. We'll go back by train because after I finish my work I'll have time.	mənəʕaʕ bəttreen laʔanno baʕd maa xalleš šəgli bišiiir ʕandi waʔt .
agree	ttafaʔ
meet	tlaaʔu
11. Agreed. When shall we meet?	ttafaʔna. ʔeemta mətlaaʔa?
fly, take off	ʕaar itiiir
12. What time does the plane take off?	ʔanu saaʕa bəʕtəiiir ʕtəyyaara?
daily	yoomiyyan
morning, dawn	šəbḥ
13. Daily at seven a.m.	yoomiyyan ssaʕa sabʕa ššəbḥ
airfield	maʕaar
14. And we have to be at the air field an hour early.	ulaazem nkuun bəlmaʕaar ʔabl bsaʕa.
15. I'll stop by and pick you up at the hotel at half past five.	bəmroʔ baaxdak mənəlʔoteel ssaʕa xamse unəšš .
at the airport	bəlmaʕaar
16. There's a plane just in from America.	hayy ʕayyaara žaaye mən ʔameerka .
here is!	šaf-
passenger	raakeb
17. There are the passengers getting off (it).	šafhon rrəkkaab naazliin mənha .
search, inspect	fāttaš
suitcase, briefcase	šanta

18. Oh, do they inspect their bags now?
passport
19. Of course, and they look at their passports too.
Jones speaks to the girl.
ticket
20. The two of us are going to Aleppo and here are our tickets.
permit, excuse
weigh
21. May we have your bags to weigh them. ("excuse us with your bags...")
I wonder (expression of doubt)
plain
barren
22. Why in the world are these plains so barren?
luck
lagging behind
23. You're out of luck. If you could see it in spring, you wouldn't say that.
appear
24. There's Aleppo in sight and the citadel in the middle.
about to
25. Get yourself ready. We're about to land.
call
26. I'm going to call a taxi to take us into town.
- šuu bifatšu šanatiihon halla??
žawaaz or ɓazabórt
ɓabiiŋi ukamaan bišuufuulhon žawaazaathon.
žoons bihaaki ləmwazzafe
tazkara
tneenətna msaafriin lahalab uhayy tazaakərna.
saman, yəsmah
wazan, yuuzen
smaŋuulna bšanatiikon lanuuzənhon.
yatara
sahl
ʔažrad
leeš yatara hasshuul žarda?
hazz
mʔasser
hazzak mʔasser laww šeftha berrabiif kənt batʔuul ġeer heek.
baan ibaan
šafha halab baanet uʔalfətha bənnəss.
máa baʔa ʔəlla
hadder haalak maa baʔa ʔəlla nəšal
fayyat
ʔana lahafayyet latakxi yaaxədna ʔalbalad.

automobile
company
make arrive
sayyaara
šərke
waşsal

27. No, the company car will take us there right away.
obliged, compelled
factory
weaving

laʔ hallaʔ sayyaart ššərke betwaşsalna.
məttarr
maʔmal
nasiiz

28. I have to go to the textile mill.
factory
modern, recent
great, fine

ʔana məttarr ruuh ʔala maʔmal nnasiiz.
maʔnaʔ
hadiis
ʔažiim

29. Look how fine those modern factories are!
imagining
industry

šuuf halmašaaneʔ lhadiise maa ʔaʔžamha .
məttawwer
šinaafa

30. I didn't imagine that this industry had reached such a level here.
31. But we have lots of this in America.
32. I'd like to look at something I haven't seen.
famous
goods
leather

ʔana maa kənt məttawwer ʔanno wəʔlet haşšinaafa ʔandkon lahaddaraže .
bass haada ʔanna mənno ktiir biʔameerka .
ʔana bəbb ʔətfarraž ʔala ši maa šəfto .

33. They say this city is famous for leather goods.
a purchase

mašhuur
bdaafa
žald
biʔuulu ʔanno halbalad mašhuura bəlbdaafa lžaldiyye .

34. And I'm thinking of buying a ladies hand bag for my wife.
suk, market

ušamma ʔəftaker bšarwet šantet ʔiid nəswaaniyye lamarti .
suuʔ

35. Then we stop by at the suqs on our way to the citadel.
 be found lta'a
 store maxzan
36. What we're looking for ("our thing") can be found in this store.
 believe ſta'ad
 please ſaʒab yəfʒeb
 wife zooʒe er ʒooze
37. I think my wife will like this bag very much.
 since, as long as ʔaalamaa
 go məši yəmši
38. Since our work is finished, come on let's go back.
 about to, on the point of ſala waʒak
 hurry staʒʒal
39. The train is about to leave, hurry up and let's get our places.
 beside ttreen ſala waʒak ssafar staʒʒel
 lanənfaz manallaatna .
40. The people sitting next to us are getting off at Hama.
 hear mšaʔʔiit -
 voice, sound ʒooʔ
 water wheel naaʒuura
 the Orontes (River) lʒaaʒi
41. Do you hear the sound of the water wheels on the Orontes?
 dam sadd
 lake bunayra

lakaan biʔariiʔna ləlʔalʒa mnəmroʔ
 ſasswaaʔ .

byaltaʔa ʒaraʒna bihalmaxzan .

walla yaa ʔaxi bəftəʔed haʒʒanta btəfʒeb
 zooʒti ktiir .

ʔaalamaa xalaʒ ʒəʒlna ʔəmši lanəʒʒaf baʔa.

ttreen ſala waʒak ssafar staʒʒel
 lanənfaz manallaatna .

halli ʔaaʒdiin mšaʔʔiitna lanayenzlu
 binama .

saamef ʒooʔ nnawaʒiir ſalʒaaʒi ?

42. Do you see that dam on lake Qattinah?
 build bana yəbni
 irrigation ʔərwaaʔ
 broad, extensive waasəf
43. They built this recently for irrigation of this large area.
 haada banuu ʒdiid laʔərwaaʔ halʔaraaʒi
 lwaasfa .
 company rəfʔa
44. I enjoyed your company very much Mr. Jones.
 mbaʒaʔət ktiir brəfʔtak yaa
 məstər ʒoons .
 join together ʒamaʒ yəʒmaʒ
45. I hope we'll be together again sometime ("God join together again")
 ʔalla yəʒmaʒna sawa marra taanye .

ʒaayef hassadd ſala bunayret lʔaʔtiine ?

bana yəbni

ʔərwaaʔ

waasəf

haada banuu ʒdiid laʔərwaaʔ halʔaraaʒi
 lwaasfa .

rəfʔa

mbaʒaʔət ktiir brəfʔtak yaa
 məstər ʒoons .

ʒamaʒ yəʒmaʒ

ʔalla yəʒmaʒna sawa marra taanye .

REVIEW

Like Unit 6, this Unit is intended to furnish you with a review of the work done so far and a means of testing yourself on the material covered. Follow the same procedure you did in Unit 6.

Section A. True-False Test

There are forty-five true-false statements. If you get thirty-eight or more of them right you are doing well enough. If you don't you need more study and practice in Spoken Arabic.

Section B. Exercises1. Word Review

Use these words the same way you used the Word Review of Unit 6.

(1) šeef	(1) raas	(1) maššat
(2) xariif	(2) zeet	(2) ġasal
(3) raabef	(3) dahr	(3) haṭab
(4) šete	(4) raʔbe	(4) farša
(1) šafr	(1) taʔs	(1) šoob
(2) ʔiid	(2) ʔamiis	(2) bard
(3) ʔalb	(3) kabbuud	(3) binaaye
(4) safr	(4) sabbaat	(4) rṭuube
(1) waṣl	(1) ŷeen	(1) ŷanmar
(2) maktuub	(2) lsaan	(2) benni
(3) hawaale	(3) rakbe	(3) ʔawaafi
(4) mazbuut	(4) muus	(4) ʔabyad

(1) hawa	(1) mayy	(1) manšafe
(2) ʔuuda	(2) biira	(2) mʔaṣṣ
(3) šams	(3) ʔahwe	(3) manzar
(4) ġeem	(4) liife	(4) makana

2. Sentence Review

Go over these sentences the way you went over the Sentence Review part of Unit 6.

List 1

1. How was the weather where you were in the mountains?
2. Anyway, if it were a little drier it would be much better.
3. But don't forget you have the sea.
4. It looks as though there's going to be a heavy rain.
5. You're right. But there's nothing nicer than Beirut in the winter.
6. But really, the air in the mountains is dry and healthful.
7. Believe me, it wasn't too cold.
8. I prefer to spend the summer and fall in the mountains.
9. By the way, where did you spend last week?
10. I wish you could see the spring we have in Beirut.
11. When do you want to take your bath?
12. Please tell the bootblack to shine my shoes.
13. Are my brown suit and white shirt ready?
14. Dry yourself well so you don't catch cold.
15. Please put wood in the heater.
16. I think I have time to shave.

17. And the soap and sponge are in the cabinet.
18. Don't forget to turn the faucet off when you finish.
19. Is your razor sharp?
20. Do you want me to brush you off sir?
21. You don't look well. What's the matter with you?
22. I've come to ask the doctor about my brother.
23. Turn over on your back and breathe again.
24. He's afraid he has appendicitis.
25. Take two pills before going to sleep.
26. I've had a cold for two weeks.
27. You have to take care of yourself and not tire yourself out too much.
28. And what brings you to this clinic too?
29. Last night he woke up with a pain in his abdomen.
30. Take off your clothes and I'll take a look.
31. Yes, there's a registered letter for you.
32. Fill out this form and pay me the money.
33. Give me two pounds worth of stamps for letters.
34. I want to rent a post office box for a year.
35. Of course, and mark the envelope "air mail" for me.
36. I want to send this package to Demascus.
37. And six piastres for every additional kilo.
38. The third window as you go in.
39. He usually distributes the mail at 9 a.m.
40. Sign in the book so I can give it to you.

41. I feel like going to see Aleppo. How about it?
42. After I finish my work, I'll have time.
43. The two of us are going to Aleppo and here are our tickets.
44. Get yourself ready. We're about to land.
45. If there's no objection we'll go together.
46. You're out of luck. If you could see it in spring, you wouldn't say that.
47. Look how fine those modern factories are!
48. Then we stop by at the suqs on our way to the Citadel.
49. As long as our work is finished, come on let's go back.
50. The people sitting next to us are getting off at Hama.

List 2

1. I bought a new suit.
2. The professor said you have to memorize your lesson.
3. My brother is going to go up and summer in Bludan.
4. I don't believe the weather you have is better than what we have.
5. How happy I was in Beirut!
6. If you can't swim, don't go down to the sea.
7. We spent last winter in Beirut.
8. The view of the sea when the sun comes up is very nice.
9. It looks as though it's going to rain.
10. Come on, let's go to Damascus tomorrow.
11. Usually I shave every day.
12. And I get a haircut twice a month.

13. I don't like to have a lot taken off. (in a haircut)
14. Please brush my coat for me.
15. The bootblack doesn't have time now to shine your shoes.
16. When you get a haircut or take a bath, people say "nafiiman" to you.
17. Before you go into the bath get the soap and sponge ready.
18. Your white shirt hasn't come from the laundry yet.
19. I'm worried about your catching cold.
20. (talking to wife:) I think Ahmad is coming to visit us today.
21. I certainly don't know what I got this pain in my abdomen from.
22. Anyway I'm going to ask the doctor.
23. When I eat more than I should I get indigestion.
24. Come on, let's visit Khalil at the hospital.
25. He's been sick for ten days.
26. I hope, doctor, you take good care of my brother.
27. Nothing wrong, I hope? There was nothing the matter with you yesterday.
28. I heard that the doctor wants to perform an appendicitis operation on Khalil.
29. Usually if you visit a sick person, you say "m saafa" to him.
30. And if someone is going to the hospital for some operation, you say to him:
sala salaame nsaalla.
31. I got ("I took") a letter from my brother today.
32. If you want to send a registered letter, you have to go to the post office.
33. At the post office there's a window for money orders and a window for registered letters.

34. Most businessmen rent post office boxes.
34. I received a telegram ("a telegram reached me") from my brother in which he says he has arrived in San Francisco.
36. An urgent telegram costs double.
37. I got ("came me") package from America.
38. I want to go to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs to see someone.
39. I know someone who only sends his letters air mail.
40. They distribute the mail twice a day.
41. We've agreed to travel to Aleppo tomorrow.
42. Maybe your brother will go with us.
43. I believe he has an objection.
44. I'll travel by train; on my way I want to stop and see my (maternal) uncle in Homs.
45. In that case you'll go by train and I'll go by plane because I'm in a big hurry.
46. May I see your passport.
47. I didn't imagine Aleppo was so nice.
48. Do you know there's a small lake next to Homs named Qattineh?
49. I enjoyed your company to Aleppo very much. I hope we go together on another trip.
50. Do you want the truth? This country needs dams.

3. Comparatives. Read off the following adjectives, be sure you understand them, give the comparative for each, and make up a sentence containing the comparative.

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| (1) sariiŋ | (7) ktiir |
| (2) kbiir | (8) ġaali |
| (3) naaŋef | (9) zġiir |
| (4) bakkiir | (10) rxiiŋ |
| (5) həlu | (11) mniiH |
| (6) xafiif | (12) tʔiil |

4. Plurals. Read off the following nouns (including adjectives), be sure you understand them, give the plural for each and make up a sentence for each noun, first using the singular and then, making the necessary changes in the rest of the sentence, the plural.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| (1) maktuub | (13) mġallaf |
| (2) ʔayyaara | (14) yoom |
| (3) sanduuʔ | (15) xayyaat |
| (4) ʔaanfa | (16) ʔariiʔ |
| (5) ʔamiis | (17) waʔt |
| (6) booŋtaži | (18) ʔaabeŋ |
| (7) muus | (19) uʔiyye |
| (8) liife | (20) sahl |
| (9) žemfa | (21) waadi |
| (10) maŋnaŋ | (22) taažer |
| (11) mešwaar | (23) raas |
| (12) ʔeen | (24) kbiir |

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| (25) ʔanmar | (38) ʔiime |
| (26) waafa | (39) rəkbe |
| (27) ʔestaaz | (40) raʔbe |
| (28) raakeb | (41) meftaan |
| (29) ʔalf | (42) ʔesm |
| (30) šahr | (43) daʔiiʔa |
| (31) raʔi | (44) haʔʔ |
| (32) meštašfa | (45) ʔaʔm |
| (33) xzaane | (46) walad |
| (34) ʔabyad | (47) mara |
| (35) beet | (48) hakiim |
| (36) doktor | (49) maŋbaġa |
| (37) ġarad | (50) ʔuuda |

Units 1-12

- ?aal (u) say, tell
 sūu_bet?uul - belfarabi ? How do you say - in Arabic?
 bi?úulu_hèek . They say so.
 ?eltéllo_lha?ii?a . I told him the truth.
- ?aam (i) raise, remove, set aside
 ?aam (u) rise, get up
 ?aazaan (pl. ?aazanaat) water heater
 ?ab (?ab-, ?abb-, ?abuu- pl. ?abbahaat see note 3)
 father ?abbeen two fathers; ?abi my father; ?abuuk your father; ?abu_rrékab grippe; ?abu_?afiif father of Afif; ?abúuna father (to a priest).
- ?abadan never, ever, at all
 ?ábadan_mùu_ktiir . It's not at all too much. ?émrak_reht_?aššàam ?
 ?ábadan . Did you ever go to Damascus? Never.
- ?abl (see note) before
 mèn_?ábl before, formerly; ?ábl_maa_ (+ verb) before; ?abl_mmenni before me; ?ábl_sentèen two years ago.
- ?abyad (adj. f beeda pl biid) white
- ?add amount, quantity; ?addéš how much, how long (of time); ?ádd_maa_ (+ verb) as much as
- ?afranži (adj. f ?afranžiyye pl ?afranž) Western, European, Occidental
- ?afriiqya (f) Africa
- ?ahl people, relatives; ?àhlan_wasáhlan. (also ?àhla_wsáhla) welcome!
- ?ahwe (ft ?áhuti, ?ahwétna pl -aat or ?ahaawi) coffee, coffee-house
- ?ahad Sunday
- ?àhla sweeter, nicer, better; ?àhla_maa_ (+ verb) lest, so that ... not.
- ?ahmar (adj f hamra pl hamr) red
- ?áhsan better, best; ?ahsanlak better for you; ?áhsan_maa_ (+ verb) lest, so that...not; ?áhsan_šii... the best thing (is, would be, etc.)...
- ?akal (-aakol imv kool, keli, etc.) eat; ?akal mešriyyaati He got hold of my money. ?akal ?atle He got hit, spanked ("he ate a blow")
- ?alab (e, o) turn over
- ?alf (pl ?aalaaf, ?luuf) thousand
 xáms_taalàaf 5000; ?lúuf_nàas ?èzu. Thousands of people came.
- ?aliil (adj. pl ?laal) few, a little

- ?alla God; walla (or wallaahi) ("by God") indeed, certainly; balla ("by God") please, if you don't mind.
 nšaalla God willing, I hope; lhámdu_lèllàa praise be to God, thank God. (for various phrases see: ?anfam, hafaz, sallam, šakar, xalla, ?aafa, ?ata; maf; see also notes)
- ?amar (o) command
- ?ameerka (f) America
- ?amerkaani (adj f ?amerkaaniyye or ?amerkiyye pl ?amerkaan) American
- ?amiin (adj pl ?amana) honest, trustworthy; Amin (man's name)
- ?amiis (pl ?amsaan) shirt
- ?amkan (-mken) be possible
 yemken it's possible, maybe; memken possible
- ?amr (pl ?muur) order, command, yes sir, at your service; thing, affair, case
- ?ana I
- ?ann - that; ka?ann- as though, as if; la?ann- because
- ?anu which
- ?anfam (e, a) show favor, be gracious to
 ?ala
- ?ara (a) read
- ?arbatašš (-ar + sg noun) fourteen
- ?arbfa (ft) four; ?arba?_leeràat four pounds; ?arba?_tiyyàam four days; ?arb?atna the four of us
- ?arbfa Wednesday
- ?arbšiin forty
- ?ard (f; pl ?araadi) ground, floor
- ?asaf sorrow; mafl?asaf unfortunately
- ?asfàar see sé?r
- ?ašbañ (-šbeñ) reach morning, become in the morning; tešbeñ ?ala_xeer . Good night.
- ?ašš (ə) cut; tell a story
- l?aššaa? Qassaa (place name)
- ?ašš (ə) sweep, shave
- ?ata? (a) cut
- ?at?iine Qattinah (name of lake near Homs)
- ?awaafi see waafa
- ?awi (adj f ?awiyye pl ?awaaya) strong
- ?awwal (adj f ?uula pl ?awwaliin) first: ?áwwal_bàab or lbàab_l?áwwal the first door; beginning: b?áwwal_žžèmfà at the beginning of the week; bəl?awwal in the beginning, at first; ?áwwal_maa (+ verb) as soon as

?ax (?ax-, ?axx-, ?axuu- pl ?axwe, ?axwaan <u>see note 3</u>) <u>brother</u> , ?axi <u>my brother</u> , ?axuuna <u>our brother</u> , ?axxeen <u>two brothers</u> , yaa_?áxi (<u>frequent form</u> <u>of address</u>) ?axuti <u>my brothers</u>	?əmm (f pl ?əmmaat or ?əmmahaat) <u>mother</u>
?ayyad <u>register</u> , <u>charge (to someone's</u> <u>account)</u>	?əža, ?aža (?žii-, -əži imv tafa, tafi, tafu) <u>come</u> ?əžáahon wálad . <u>They got a son.</u> ("A son came them.")
?ažrad (adj f žarda pl žerd) <u>barren</u> , <u>bleak, without vegetation; without a</u> <u>beard</u>	?axad (-aaxod imv xood, xedi etc.) <u>take</u>
?ařad (o) <u>sit down, stay; kaanet</u> ?aařde řand naas fransawiyiin . <u>She was staying with (= working for)</u> <u>French people.</u>	?əngliizi (adj pl ?əngliiz) <u>English</u> , <u>Englishmen</u>
?ee <u>yes</u> ?ée_nafam <u>yes; ?ée_walla</u> <u>yes, indeed; ?ée_lakaan .O.K. then.</u>	?ənn- <u>that</u> , bžənn ?ənno_tàažer . <u>I think he's a business man.</u>
?eemta <u>when</u> , ?éemta_maa_ (+ verb) <u>whenever</u>	?ənsaan <u>human being, humane.</u> <u>see</u> <u>also naas</u>
?eeš <u>what</u> , ?addeš <u>how much; leeš why;</u> <u>bi?eeš with or in what</u>	?ənte <u>you</u>
?əbn (pl ulaad) <u>son (special plural bani</u> <u>or banu - sons of, family of, in tribal</u> <u>and family names)</u>	?ənti <u>you (f)</u>
?əder (e) <u>be able, can</u>	?əntu <u>you (pl)</u>
?əddaam <u>in front</u>	?ərš (pl ?rúus) <u>piastre</u>
?əl- <u>see la-</u>	?ərwaa? <u>irrigation</u>
?əlla <u>but, except, máa_ (+ verb) ...</u> ?əlla <u>only; ssàafa wáande ?əlla_řàšra .</u> <u>It's ten to one.</u>	?əsm (pl ?asaami or ?asmaa?) <u>name</u>
	?əstaaz (pl ?asaatze or ?asaatize) <u>professor, sir, professional man</u> (e.g. <u>lawyer</u>)
	?əžra (ft pl ?əžraawaat) <u>rent, pay</u>
	?idařš (-ar + sg noun) <u>eleven</u>
	?iid (f ?iidteen <u>two hands, pl</u> <u>?ideen, ?ayaadi</u>) ?idayyi <u>my hands;</u> <u>?ideek your hands; byétlaf_b?iido .</u> <u>He can do it. táht_?iidi at my</u> <u>disposition, that I can get hold of;</u>

háatet_?iido_řalbèet . <u>He has taken</u> <u>possession of the house.</u>	balla <u>please, if you don't mind</u> bana (i) <u>build</u>
?iime (ft pl reg or ?iyam) <u>value</u>	banadoora (f coll sg banadooraaye, pl -aat) <u>tomatoes</u>
?iza <u>if</u>	bard <u>cold</u>
?izan <u>therefore</u>	bariid <u>mail</u>
?máš (coll) <u>cloth</u>	bariidi (adj) <u>postal</u>
?oteel (pl -aat) <u>hotel</u>	barqiyye(ft) <u>telegram</u>
?úula <u>see ?awwal</u>	bass <u>only, but, when; báss (+ noun),</u> báss (<u>after noun</u>) <u>only; báss (+ verb)</u> <u>when, as soon as; báss but</u>
b- (<u>see note 9</u>) <u>the matter with</u> <u>šúu_baak ? What's the matter with you?</u>	bataata (f coll sg bataataaye) <u>potatoes</u>
-_ba?a (after imv) <u>then</u>	bařii? (adj pl -iin) <u>slow</u>
ba?ar (coll) <u>cattle; sg ba?ara cow,</u> <u>láam_ba?ar beef</u>	batn (pl bťuun) <u>abdomen</u>
báab (pl bwáab) <u>door, gate</u>	battiix (coll) <u>watermelons</u>
baaboor (pl bawabiir or baaboraat) (<u>steam-</u>) <u>ship; train; primus store</u>	bařabort (pl -aat) <u>passport = řawaaz</u>
baakeet (pl baaketaat) <u>package</u>	bařat (a) <u>send; bařátli_yáa .</u> <u>He sent it to me.</u>
báal <u>mind; daar baal pay attention,</u> <u>be careful of men for řala</u>	bařd <u>after, still; mən_bařd later;</u> bářd_maa_ (+ verb) <u>after; bářd_mmènni</u> <u>after me; bářdo_telmiiz . He's still</u> <u>a student. bařd maa_řefto . I haven't</u> <u>seen him yet.</u>
baan (a) <u>appear; baayen apparent</u>	bařd <u>some, certain, one another</u> bářd_l?aw?áat <u>sometimes</u>
báař or bářř (pl baasáat or bařřáat) <u>bus</u>	bđaařa (ft pl bđaaayeř) <u>goods</u>
baař (i) <u>sell</u>	béek (pl bakawáat) <u>bey, gentleman</u> (<u>title of respect</u>)
báda (a) <u>begin</u>	
báhr (pl bňwřur) <u>sea, ocean</u>	
bakkiir <u>early</u>	
bala <u>without</u>	
balad (f; pl blaad) <u>city</u>	

beeruut (f) <u>Beirut</u>	da'ii'a (ft pl da'áaye?) <u>minute</u>
beet (pl byuut) <u>house family, beet_màyy toilet</u>	daar (i) <u>turn; daár_baal pay attention, be careful of men for sala</u>
beetenžaan (coll) <u>eggplants</u>	daayman or daa'iman <u>always, frequently</u>
be'i (a) <u>stay</u>	dafaŋ (a) <u>pay (for); dafáŋli_má'hon . He paid me for them. ("He paid me their price.")</u>
bədd- <u>want; will, shall; about to</u> bəddo_írúuh . <u>He wants to go.</u> bədhā_tənzəl_lmātar . <u>It's about to rain.</u>	daftar (pl dafaater) <u>notebook, ledger</u>
bəfteek (f) <u>steak</u>	dall (ə) <u>direct (someone) to sala</u>
bəkra <u>tomorrow; bá'íd_bəkra day after tomorrow; sala_bəkra in the morning</u>	daraže (ft) <u>step, class</u>
bənni (adj) <u>coffee colored, brown (of things)</u>	dars (pl druus) <u>lesson</u>
bent (f pl banaat) <u>girl, daughter, maid</u>	daxlak <u>please, excuse me (said before asking for information)</u>
berneeta (ft pl reg or baraniit) <u>hat</u>	doktoor (pl dakaatra) <u>doctor</u>
binaaye (ft) <u>building</u>	dahr (pl dhuur) <u>back, ridge (of mountain)</u>
biira (ft) <u>beer</u>	değri (adj inv) <u>straight, true</u>
blaad (pl of balad) <u>country</u>	dhuur_ššwèer (f) <u>Dhour Choueir, Lebanese mountain resort</u>
bluudáan (f) <u>Bloudane (resort town near Damascus)</u>	faa' (i) <u>wake up</u>
booyaži (pl booyažiyye) <u>bootblack</u>	faadi <u>empty, free (= not busy)</u>
boošta (ft) <u>mail, post office, bus</u>	faat (u) <u>pass; go in</u>
booštaži (pl booštažiyye) <u>mailman</u>	faddal <u>prefer</u>
bunayra (ft) <u>lake</u>	fanaš (a) <u>test, examine</u>
da'n (pl d'uun) <u>chin, beard; mən_šaan_dá'ni for my sake, please ("for my beard")</u>	far' (pl fruu' (a)) <u>separation, difference, part (in hair)</u>
	farša (i) <u>brush</u>
	fatah (a) <u>open, turn on</u>
	fattaš <u>search, inspect; sala look for</u>

fawaaki (pl sg rare faakye) <u>fruit</u>	doing now? hálla?'əža . <u>He just came. šóod hálla?'mənruuh. Sit down, we'll go in a minute.</u>
feen <u>where, see also ween</u>	halli <u>who, which, that; see yalli</u>
fəhem (a) <u>understand; fhəmt_salée . I understood him (= what he said).</u>	hamm (ə) <u>concern, be of importance to</u> máa_bihəmmi . <u>It's none of my business.</u>
fhémto . <u>I understood him (= his character).</u>	hawa (m pl 'əhuye <u>strong wind</u>) <u>air, wind; lhāwa_həlu_lyòom . The weather's nice today. xallīna_nğāyyer háwa_l'úuda . Let's change the air in the room.</u>
fəkr (pl 'afkaar) <u>thought, idea, intention; fəkro_yrúuh . He's thinking of going.</u>	hee'a (ft) <u>appearance; hée'to_mabšúut . He looks well (gender of adjective independent of hee'a) lhée'a bədhā_tənzəl_mātar ! It looks as though it's going to rain!</u>
fii <u>there is, there are; fii_šandak_səmak ? Do you have fish? máa_fii šāms_lyòom . There's no sun today.</u>	heek <u>so, this way, that way; bi'úulu_héek . They say so. muu_héek ? Isn't it so? n'est-ce pas?</u>
frənsaawi (adj) <u>French</u>	həlek (a) <u>perish; be utterly exhausted (mən from)</u>
ftakar (e) <u>think b- of</u>	hənnə (n) <u>they</u>
ğafle sala_ğafle <u>suddenly</u>	hiyye <u>she</u>
ğanam (coll) <u>sheep (sg ġaname ewe)</u>	hniik <u>there</u>
ğarađ (pl ġraad) <u>thing, need</u>	hoon <u>here</u>
ğasal (e) (also xasal) <u>wash</u>	huwwe <u>he</u>
ğasiil or xasiil <u>laundry</u>	
ğeem (coll pl reg or ġyuum) <u>clouds</u>	
ğeer <u>other, else, without, except (with noun ġeer has primary stress)</u>	
haada (f hayy(e) or haadi pl hadool(e)) <u>this</u>	
hadm <u>digestion</u>	
hálla? <u>now, just, right away</u>	
šúu_šamma_yəšmel hálla? ? <u>What's he</u>	

na?? (pl n?uu? also: n(u)quuq law)
price, value, right; ?addées_nà??o?
How much is it? māsak_ná?? . You're
right. l_ná??_šalée . He's in the
wrong.

na?ii?a (ft pl na?aaye?) truth, fact
 naader (adj) ready, present
 naal (pl ?anwaal) condition, state
 kiif_náalak ? How are you?
 šala_káll_náal in any case
 diir_báalak šala_náalak . Take care
of yourself. huwwe_náan_lanáalo .
He went by himself. šlóon_l?anwáal_
 šándkon . How are things with you?
 naale (ft) condition, state; náalto_
 mníina . He's well off.

naaže (ft) need, thing; náažtak_leertéen .
Two pounds is enough for you. ?asšáar_
 l_naažàat šamma_ténzel . Prices of things
 (= staples, not real estate, etc.) are
going down. ?éli_šándak_náaže . I
have a favor to ask of you. ("I
have a need with you.")

habb (coll sg habbe pl reg or nbuub)
grains, pills, drops; l_nakíim_?állí
 ?áaxod_nabtéen_káll_yoom . The doctor
told me to take two pills every day.

šatíini_hábbet_máyy . Give me a
little ("a drop") of water.

?asšáar_lənbùub_télfet . Prices of
grain (incl. lentils, etc.) have
gone up.

habb (ə) like, love
 habiib (pl nabaayeb; f habiibe ft)
sweetheart, dear, darling, beloved,
friend

hadd (adj) sharp
 hadiis (adj pl -iin) modern, recent
 hađdar make ready, prepare
 hadra (ft) presence; hadrtak you,
 hadrto he, hadraathon they (all
polite expressions)

hafaz (a) keep, memorize; ?állá_
 yénfazak . God keep you. (response
to many formulas of greeting,
farewell, etc.)

haka (i) speak to la-, with maš-
 hakam (e, o) rule; pass sentence,
judge; happen

hakiim (pl hákama) wise, learned man,
doctor

hala? (e, o) shave, cut hair
 halab (f) Aleppo

hamd praise; l_námdu_ləlláa or l_námdəlla
thank God, praise be to God
 hanafiyye (ft) faucet, tap; fátan_
 l_nanafiyye . He turned on the tap.
 sákkar_l_nanafiyye . He turned off
the tap.

hammaam (pl hammamaat) bath
 hatta (also lanatta) until, in order to;
when, as soon as
 hařab (coll) wood for fuel, firewood
 hařř (ə) put
 hawa, həwi (a) contain, include, keep,
have, take care of (family or children)
 hawaale (ft) money order
 hawaali around, about
 hayaat (in certain expressions nyaat)
life; bənyaatak please, indeed, ("by
your life")

hazž (pl hzuuz) luck
 həlu (f həlwe pl həlwiin) sweet, nice,
pleasant
 həsen (e) be able (Damascus word, see
also ?əder)
 həšel (a) happen to
 hsaab (pl -aat) account, bill
 kalaam (coll sg kəlme pl -aat) words
 ka?ann - as if, as though
 kaan (u) he; kúun_hdon_békra . Be here

tcmorrow. láww_šáfto kənt_náakéeto
(or kənt_bnaakii) . If I had seen
him I would have spoken to him.
 -kaan maa_kaan: whatever (added to
interrogatives); lakaan therefore,
of course, then
 kabbuut (pl kababiit also kabbuud,
 kababiid) coat, overcoat
 kahraba (f) amber, electricity
 kalifoornya (f) California
 kallaf tell someone to do something,
charge, cost; kalláfní_bhaššəğl .
He gave me this job to do. kalláfto_
 ižəbli_ğárad_mən_beerúut . I asked
him to bring me something from Beirut.
 ?addées_bikálləf ? How much does it
cost?
 kalsaat (pl) stockings, socks, see also
 žraabe
 kam (with sg noun) how many, several,
a few; kám_səne ?ašədt_bəššáam ?
How many years have you been in
Damascus? šii_kám_šəhr several months
 kamaan also, too; more; šatíini_xəbz_
 kamáan . Give me bread too. or
Give me more bread.
 katab (o) write
 kattar increase; kəttər_xéerak . Thank
you.

kawa (i) <u>iron, press</u>	la'a (-laa'i) <u>find (also figurative)</u>
kbiir (adj pl kbaar) <u>large, old (of persons)</u>	la'ann- <u>because see also la- and 'ann-</u>
káll <u>all, every; káll_yòom every day, káll_lyòom all day, the whole day, káll_mnàas all the people, kálši everything</u>	laa (with imv) <u>not, don't; láa_tensa don't forget; laa...laa neither...nor; laa. no (in contradiction; see also la?)</u>
kətr <u>quantity (of)</u>	laaken <u>but</u>
kfaaye (ft) <u>enough</u>	лаа- <u>see rana-</u>
kiif <u>how; kiif_hàalak ? How are you? kiif_maa_zèrtna ? How come you didn't visit us? Why didn't you visit us?</u>	лаһатта <u>until, so that see la- and hatta</u>
kiilo (kiiloyeen, kiiloyàat) <u>kilo (gram)</u>	лаһм (coll) <u>meat; làhm_bá'ar beef, làhm_ǵánam lamb</u>
kiis (pl kyaas) <u>bag</u>	laazem <u>see ləzem</u>
kmaale (ft) <u>remainder, rest (of); change (return change, not equivalent change)</u>	lafat(e) <u>turn</u>
ktiir (adj pl ktaar) <u>much, a lot</u>	lafte (ft) <u>turn</u>
kuusa (f coll sg kuutsaaye ft) <u>Italian squash</u>	lakaan <u>therefore, then, of course</u>
kuwwe (ft) <u>window esp. ticket window</u>	lamma <u>when (not as interrogative)</u>
l- <u>the (see notes 1 and)</u>	làmma_mnəşal řatřina_xàbar . <u>When we arrive, let us know.</u>
la- (lə-, -l-, -all-, -all-; 'əl- <u>see note 5) to, for; until, so that lamiin_halfèet ? Whose house is this? lbèet_?əlo . The house is his. žàaye_laşúufo . I'm here to see him. la'ann- because lařánd to the house of la? no (answer to yes-or-no question, see also laa)</u>	laww <u>if (something were so) làww_şáfto kənt_bnaakii . If I had seen him, I would have spoken to him. lawla (+ noun) if it were not for lbaarna (also lbaaren, mbaaren, mbaarna) yesterday leek here is, here are, here (comes, etc.) léeko_žàaye . Here he comes.</u>

leel (coll sg leele a night pl layaali) <u>night, nighttime; lèelt_mbáarna last night lléele tonight</u>	yet. (see also maa_ "connective")
leera (ft) <u>pound (monetary unit)</u>	maadi (adj) <u>past</u>
leeş <u>why</u>	maaneř (pl mawaaneř) <u>objection</u>
lessa <u>now; still, yet; lessáni_bəşşám . I'm still in Damascus.</u>	mabşuut (adj) <u>well (health), glad, fine</u>
ləzem(a) <u>be necessary, laazem necessary; làazem_yéři . He has to come.</u>	madd(ə) <u>reach, stretch out</u>
byəlzamak_ǵéero . <u>You need someone else. slowly</u>	madrase (ft pl madares) <u>school</u>
liife (ft pl liyaf) <u>fibre bath sponge</u>	mada(i) <u>sign</u>
loon (pl lwaan) <u>color, form; lóono_?ámmar . It's red. šloon how řala_hallóon in that case</u>	madđa <u>pass, spend (time)</u>
luubye (ft) <u>string beans</u>	mahl <u>ease; řala_máhl- (+ pron suf)</u>
lsaan (pl lsaanaat <u>tongues 'əlson tongue, language languages) xáms_təlson five languages</u>	mahúul (adj) <u>unusual, extraordinary</u>
lta'a (-ltá'a) <u>be met, be found</u>	mahall (pl mahallaat) <u>place, shop</u>
m'aşş (pl m'aşşaat) <u>scissors</u>	makana or maakiina (ft) <u>machine, gadget</u>
m'aşşer <u>shortening; lagging behind</u>	maktuub (pl makatiib) <u>letter</u>
maa_ ("connective" see note) <u>řádd_maa_btə'mor . As much as you say. bářd_maa_?əza . After he came (see also máa_ not) 'éemta_maa_kàan at any time</u>	mamnuun (adj) <u>thankful, thank you</u>
	manaax (pl aat) <u>climate</u>
	manşafe (ft pl manaařef) <u>towel, napkin</u>
	manzar (pl manaazer) <u>view</u>
	mara (ft pl nəswaan) <u>woman, wife</u>
	mara?(o) (also marr(ə)) <u>pass by (b-) stop at (řala)</u>
	marhaba (ft pl maraaneb) <u>hello</u>
	marr(ə) <u>see mara?</u>
	marra (ft pl reg or mraar) <u>time (= occasion: fois, not temps)</u>
	bářd_lmarràat <u>sometimes</u>
máa_ (usually with primary stress; see note) <u>not; máa_byářref . He doesn't know. bářd_máa_?əza . He hasn't come</u>	lmarže (ft) <u>Marjé (square in Damascus)</u>

masa (coll sg masawiyee ft) evening
 bšúufak šánd_lmása . I'll see you
 in the evening.
 masaḥ(a) wipe
 mašaari see mešriyye
 mašbağa (ft pl mašaabeğ) laundry, the
 cleaner's
 mašnaš (pl mašaaneš) factory, mill
 mašyaf (pl mašaayef) summer resort,
 place where one stays in the summer
 maššat comb
 mašaar (pl -aat) airport, airfield
 mašar (f pl ?amšaar) rain
 mašluub (pl mašaliib) requirement
 tašab(o) ask for, request, demand, order
 talabtálkon_yáaha_mənno . I asked him
 for it (on your behalf).
 mašam (pl mašaašem) restaurant
 mawžuud (adj) present, found, see also
 wažad
 maxzan (pl maxazan) store
 mayy(e) (ft also, in special uses maa?
 pl miyaah) šatini_šwayyet_mây .
 Give me some water. šúuf_halmayyaat
 maa_?ahláahon . Look how nice this
 water is. šérket_lmiyàah . The water
 company

11
 mazbuut (adj) exact, correct, see
 also zaḅat
 mažmuuš total
 maš with; mašak_ná?? you're right;
 mašo_zzáayde he has appendicitis;
 maš_ssaláame goodbye; maš_l'asaf
 unfortunately
 mášlee_šii never mind, it doesn't matter
 mašruuf favor; šméel_mašrúuf please(ask-
 ing someone to do something)
 mašrife or mašrife (pl mašaaref)
 acquaintance, knowledge
 mbaarak (adj) blessed; nhàarak_safiid
 wembàarak . Good day (reply to
 nhàarak_safiid) mbàarak_hattà?m .
 I hope you enjoy this suit. (to
 someone who has just bought a suit)
 mbaaren (also mbaarna, lbaaren, lbaarna)
 yesterday; leelt mbaarna last night;
 ?awwal(t)_mbaarna day before yesterday
 mbasat (-mbasat) have a good time, be
 happy
 meftaah (pl mafatiin) key, opener
 mešši (pl mašaaši) stuffed dish
 (e.g. stuffed squash, stuffed eggplant)
 memken or mumken (adj) possible (see
 ?amkan) šéer_mumken impossible

before l the
 men (menn-; /mne-) from; than; for
 ?ana_žàaye_mnelbéet . I'm coming from
 the house. ?ámmad ?ákbar_mən_šáli .
 Ahmad is older than Ali. huwwe_?éža
 mən_?ábl . He came before. mən_
 zamáan_màa_sáfto . I haven't seen
 him for a long time.
 meštašfa (m pl meštašfayáat) hospital
 mešter mešter
 mešriyye (ft pl reg or mašaari) money
 meši(i) go, go along, walk; work,
 run (e.g. of a machine)
 mešt (pl mšaat) comb
 mešwaar (pl mašawiir) walk, stroll,
 ride, trip, errand
 t'axxar get delayed, be late; meš'axxer
 late
 mešl like, as; mešl_maa (+ verb) as
 mešallaf (pl -aat) envelope
 mešatṭa (ft) station
 mešemm (adj) important, serious
 miin or meen who, whom; lamiin
 halwàra?a . Whose ticket is this?
 miyye (ft miiteen 200 pl miyyaat) hundred
 miit (+ sg noun) 100, xams_miyye
 500 xams_miiit_màra 500 women, miyyaat
 nnàas hundreds of people

mneen (= mən_wéen) from where
 mniin (pl mnaah) good
 mooz (coll) bananas
 moozaat (pl) shank strips
 mraššeh (adj) having a cold
 mša'šit- beside, next to, next door
 mtakkas (adj) without a stamp
 m(u) fawwadiyye (ft) legation
 m(u)naasabe (ft) occasion,
 bihalmunaasabe by the way
 muu he, it isn't
 muus (pl mwaas) knife (that folds into
 a case), straight razor
 n-(ne-) if, nšaalla if God wills,
 God willing, I hope, ne'žit mnáakol_
 sàwa . If you come, we'll eat together.
 na'ša choose
 našef (adj) dry
 naam(a) sleep, fall asleep
 naas (treated as pl or fem sg) people
 (see also ?ensaah)
 naašura (ft pl nawašiiir) water wheel
 nabiih (adj) wide-awake, alert (usually
 pers name nabiih, nabiiha)
 nafas (pl nfaas or ?anfaas) breath
 naššaf dry (something)
 nažžaar (pl -iin) carpenter

naŋam <u>yes; well?, beg your pardon</u> (= <u>what did you say?</u>)	raakeb (pl rəkkaab) <u>passenger</u>
naŋiiman (fla) <u>may you feel refreshed</u> (<u>said often to someone who has just had a shave, a haircut, bath, a nap</u>)	raas (pl ruus) <u>head, peak, cape</u>
ndiif (adj pl ndaaf) <u>clean</u>	ráas_žábal <u>mountain peak</u>
nəŋna (or ləŋna) <u>we</u>	raašeeta (ft) <u>prescription see also</u>
nəsi(a) <u>forget</u>	waŋfe
nəswaani (adj) <u>feminine, pertaining to women</u>	raʔbe (ft pl rʔaab) <u>neck</u>
nəŋŋ (pl nŋaas) <u>half</u>	rabiif <u>spring</u>
nəŋef(a) <u>become dry, dry out</u>	radd(ə) <u>give back, bring back, return (something)</u>
nəzel(e) <u>go down, get off</u>	rafiiʔ <u>comrade, friend (also pers name)</u>
nhaar (pl nhaaraat) <u>day (= daytime, not 24 hrs. cf. yoom); nhàarak_safiid . Good day.</u>	raha- (also laha-, + <u>prefix tense verb</u>) <u>going to</u>
nšáalla (fla) <u>God willing, I hope</u> nšáalla_ŋala_salàame . <u>I hope things (operation, trip) turn out all right.</u>	ražŋa (ft) <u>return trip, way back</u>
xéer_nšáalla . <u>I hope there's nothing wrong.</u>	rədi(a) <u>be satisfied (b- with)</u>
nuur (pl ʔanwaar) <u>light</u>	rəfʔa (ft) <u>company, companionship</u>
qarrar (also ʔarrar) <u>decide, plan</u>	rəkbe (ft pl rəkab) <u>knee; ʔabu_rrəkab the grippe</u>
raʔi (raʔy- pl ʔaaraaʔ) <u>view, opinion</u>	rezz (coll) <u>rice</u>
šúu_ráʔyak ? <u>What do you think?</u>	režeŋ(a) <u>go back, come back, return</u>
raad(i) <u>want</u>	rtaah(a) <u>rest; mertaah resting, comfortable</u>
raah(u) <u>go</u>	rɽuube (ft) <u>humidity, moist air</u>
	rxiiŋ (adj pl rxaas) <u>cheap</u>
	saʔal(a) <u>ask (a question), inquire for (ask for = request see ɽalab) bəsʔállak_yàaha . I'll ask her for you. saʔal_ŋánnak . He asked for you. (= about you).</u>

saafar <u>travel</u>	Peace be on you. (fla of greeting)
saawa <u>do, make</u>	salamáat . <u>Greetings!</u>
saafa (ft) <u>hour, clock, watch</u>	salaame (ft) <u>peace, safety; maŋ_saláame goodbye (reply) nšáalla_ŋala_salàame . I hope everything turns out all right.</u>
ʔaddéeš_ssáafa ? <u>What time is it?</u> ssáafa_tentéen . <u>It's two o'clock.</u>	ŋala_salaamto . <u>He's a fine fellow.</u>
saastéen <u>two hours or two clocks</u>	lhámdella_ŋassalàame . <u>I'm glad everything turned out all right.</u>
saafad <u>help</u>	(<u>These last two formulas are used in connection with the danger of sickness, an operation, or a long trip</u>)
sabaŋ(a) <u>swim</u>	salaf <u>in advance; ʔana_sálaf_bʔállak ... I'll tell you in advance ... dŋáŋli_hàʔʔon_sálaf . Pay (me) for them in advance.</u>
sabataŋš (-ar + <u>sg noun</u>) <u>seventeen</u>	saliim (adj) <u>safe, healthy, sound (also pers name saliim, saliime)</u>
sabt <u>Saturday</u>	sallam <u>hand over, surrender; keep in safety; greet; ʔállay_sálmak . God keep you. sálləm_ʔidéek thank you (for action done with hands); sálləmli_ŋala_ʔaxúuk remember me to your brother; sálləm_halmaktùub laʔaxúuk . Give this letter to your brother.</u>
sabŋa (ft) <u>seven; sábf_leeràatseven pounds; sábf_tiiyyàam seven days; sábfétna the seven of us</u>	salle (ft pl reg or selal) <u>basket</u>
sabŋiin (+ <u>sg noun</u>) <u>seventy</u>	
sadd (pl suduud) <u>dam</u>	
saddaʔ <u>believe</u>	
safar (coll <u>sg safra trip, voyage</u>) <u>travel, travelling</u>	
šahhal <u>make easy</u>	
sahl (pl shuul) <u>plain (land)</u> ʔàhlan_wasáhlan (also ʔàhla_wsáhla) <u>welcome!</u>	
saŋar(e, o) <u>enchant</u>	
sakkar <u>close, turn off</u>	
salaam (pl -aat) <u>peace, greeting</u> xalliina_ʔaafdiin_bsalàam . <u>Leave us in peace. ssalàamu_ŋaláykom .</u>	

samaḥ(a) <u>permit, allow, excuse;</u> btəsmāhli_ʕārfak ʕala_ʔāḥmad ? <u>May I introduce you to Ahmad?</u> smahūuli_bʕanatīikon . <u>May I see</u> <u>your bags.</u>	siid- <u>lord, sir; siidi sir; siidna</u> <u>Our Lord</u> siigaara (ft pl reg or sagaayer) <u>cigarette</u> siinama (ft) <u>movies (movie theater)</u> sookar (also soogar) <u>insure</u> maktūub_msóogar <u>registered letter</u> staʔžar <u>rent (from someone)</u> stağfar <u>ask for forgiveness</u> stáğfiru_llāa <u>reply to tšarrafna</u> <u>or to a compliment of some kind</u> stanna(a) <u>wait</u> staʕžal <u>hurry; mēstaʕžel in a hurry</u> <u>(people) mēstaʕžal urgent (things)</u> straah(i) <u>rest, be seated</u> s(u)ruur <u>pleasure; bkéll_srūur with</u> <u>pleasure</u> suuʔ <u>badness, bad, sūuʔ_hādm in-</u> <u>digestion sūuʔ_lʔaḥwāal bad state</u> <u>of affairs</u> suuʔ (pl ʔaswaaʔ or swaaʔ) <u>market</u> saabuun (coll) <u>soap</u> ʕaanfa (ft pl reg and ʕannāaʕ) <u>maid (servant)</u> ʕaar(i) <u>become, happen; ʔaddēeš</u> <u>ʕārlak_hōon ? How long have you been</u>
samak (coll) <u>fish</u>	
sanduuʔ (pl sanadiiʔ) <u>box, trunk,</u> <u>cash register; ʔamiin_sandūuʔ</u> <u>treasurer; rūuḥ_dfāaʕ_ʕassandūuʔ</u> <u>Go pay the cashier (=at the cash box).</u>	
sariif (adj) <u>fast</u>	
sawa <u>together</u>	
saʕal(o) <u>cough</u>	
saʔiid (adj) <u>happy (more often pers</u> <u>name saʔiid)</u>	
səmeʕ(a) <u>listen, hear</u>	
səne (ft pl sniin or sanawaat) <u>year</u> <u>sənt_lmāadye last year</u>	
sett (f pl settaat) <u>lady; setti</u> <u>ma'am, my mistress (said by servant),</u> <u>(my) grandmother</u>	
sette (ft) <u>six; sət̄t_leeràat six pounds;</u> <u>sət̄(t)_tiyyāam six days</u>	
settiin (+ sg noun) <u>sixty</u>	
ʕəttāʕš (-ar + sg noun) <u>sixteen</u>	
səʕr (pl ʔasʕaar) <u>price</u>	

here? ʕāar_yéži kéll_yōom . He <u>began to come every day.</u> ʕārli wāzaʕ_rāas . <u>I got a headache.</u> sabaah (pl rare -aat) <u>morning;</u> ʕabāah_lxéer . <u>Good morning.</u> (many replies: ʕabāah_nnúur . ʕabāah_lxeerāat . mīit_ʕabāah . etc.) ʕabbaat (pl ʕababiit) <u>pair of shoes</u> <u>(usually men's shoes)</u> ʕaḥḥ(ə) <u>become (or turn out to be)</u> <u>healthy or true</u> ʕaḥḥa (ft) <u>health; ʕanteen To your</u> <u>health! ("two healths") said to</u> <u>someone in connection with eating.</u> kīif_ʕāntak ? <u>How are you?</u> ʕayyaf <u>spend the summer</u> ʕeef (no pl see also ʕeefiyye) <u>summer</u> ʕeefiyye (ft) <u>summer</u> ʕəbḥ (no pl) <u>morning; bšúufak békra</u> <u>ʕəbḥ . I'll see you tomorrow morning.</u> <u>sāaʕa_tésʕa_ʕəbḥ 9 a.m.</u> ʕəḥḥi (adj) <u>healthful</u> ʕəxn (adj) <u>hot (of things)</u> ʕinaaʕa (ft) <u>industry</u> ʕoob <u>toward</u> ʕoot (pl ʔaʕwaaʕ or ʕwaaʕ) <u>voice, sound,</u> <u>vote</u>	ʕaa(ʔ)(a) <u>will want (used only in a</u> <u>few expressions) nšéʔt táʕa_mafi .</u> <u>If you want, come along.</u> nšaailla <u>God willing.</u> ʕaaf(u) <u>see; ʕaayéflak... It looks</u> <u>as though... ʕaayef ʕala... .</u> <u>How...looks! What a...!</u> ššaam (f) <u>Damascus</u> ʕaan "sake" <u>men_ʕaan for, for the</u> <u>sake of</u> ʕaater (adj) <u>clever, smart</u> ʕaʕra (ft) (safety) <u>razor blade</u> <u>bʔéšš_béššʕaʕra . I shave with a</u> <u>safety razor.</u> ʕaḥar(e,o) <u>make famous; mašhuur famous</u> ʕaḥr (pl ʔəšhor) <u>month; xāms_təšhor</u> <u>5 months</u> ʕakar(o) <u>thank</u> ʕalah(a) <u>take off (e.g. clothes)</u> ʕams (f pl rare šmuus) <u>sun</u> ʕanta (ft pl reg or ʕanaati, ʕənat, ʕəntayaat) <u>bag, suitcase, briefcase</u> ʕaraf <u>honor</u> ʕarraʕ <u>honor</u> ʕarwe (ft) <u>a purchase, a buy, a bargain</u> ʕaʕ- <u>here (is, comes, etc.)! (see</u> <u>also leek)</u> ʕaʕr (coll) <u>hair</u>
---	---

šafal kindle, light
 šebbaak (pl šababiik) window
 šaġl (coll sg šaġle ft pl šaġlaat
jobs, 'ašġaal work, works) work
 šereb(a) drink
 šetwiyye (ft) winter
 šii (pl 'ašyaa?) thing, somewhat,
at all, about; máa šeft šii . I
didn't see a thing. šii ktiiir .
Pretty much. šii 'álf lèera about
1000 pounds; šeft hada šii ? Did
you see anyone at all?
 šmaal left, north
 šloon how
 šoob (coll) heat
 šooraba (ft) soup
 štaġal work
 štara buy
 šuu (also (?)eeš especially in combina-
tions) what
 šwayye (ft) a little
 šweer see dhuur
 t'ammal hope
 t'iil (adj pl t'aal) heavy
 ta'riiban approximately
 taani (adj f taanye) second, other, next
 taaza (inv adj) fresh, soft

taažer (pl težžaar) businessman
 tabaš belonging to, of (noun must
have 1- the) lbéet tábasi my house
 taġtiis (coll) immersion, diving
 taġtiise one immersion, bath
 taht under, underneath, down
 taksi (pl taksiyyaat) taxi
 talaata Tuesday
 talġraaf (pl talġraafaat) telegram
 tamaaman perfectly, exactly
 taneen Monday
 taxt (pl txuut) bed
 tazkara (ft pl tazaaker) ticket, card
 tafa see 'eža
 teffaah (coll) apples
 təkram you're welcome (reply to
"thank you"); à votre service
 telmiiz (pl talamiiz) student
 tešaťaš (-ar +sg noun) nineteen
 tešfa (ft) nine; téšf leeraat nine
pounds; téšf tiyyâam nine days
 tešfiin (+ sg noun) ninety
 tešeb(a) get tired
 tfaddal be preferred; tfaddal (inv)
please (said when offering someone a
service or privilege)
 tfarraž have a look, look around

tġayyar change, be changed
 tħammam take a bath
 tlaa'a meet (one another)
 tlaate three; tlét leeraat 3 pounds
 tlét tiyyâam; 3 days; tlaatétna
the three of us
 tlaatiin (+ sg noun) thirty
 tleġtaš (-ar + sg noun) thirteen
 tmaaniin (+ sg noun) eighty
 tmaanye or tmaane eight; tmén leeraat
eight pounds; tmén tiyyâam 8 days
 tmaanétna the eight of us
 tméntaš (-ar + sg noun) eighteen
 tnaffas breathe
 tneen (f tēnteen) two;
 tneenetna)
 tneenaatna) the two of us
 traafa' go with (one another), be
companions
 tramwaay (pl tramwaayaat) tram
 traġtab get wet, be refreshed
 tražža hope for, request; betražžaak
please
 treen (pl -aat) train
 tšakkar (= šakar) thank; metšakker
thank you

tšarraaf be honored; tšarrafna
we're honored (= I'm glad to meet
you)
 ttafa' agree, come to agreement
 tšallam learn
 tyaab (pl sg rare toob gown, robe)
clothes
 ta'm (pl t'uume) suit of clothes
 ta's (pl t'uus liturgies) weather;
ritual, liturgy
 taa' (pl tuu?) fold; ttaa' xámse
fivefold, five times; xáms tūu?
five folds, five layers, fivefold,
five times
 taa'a (ft) window (= kuwwe)
 taabef (pl tawaabef) stamp
 taala_maa_as long as, the whole time
that, since
 taar(i) fly; take off (airplane)
 tabax(o) cook
 tabx cooking
 tabii'i natural, naturally
 talab (pl -aat) application, request,
order (for something)
 tarak(e, o) leave
 tard (pl truud(e)) package

ṭarii? (pl ṭer'aat, 'etro?, 'etr'a)	waadi (pl wadyaan) <u>river valley,</u>
<u>road, way</u>	<u>watercourse</u>
ṭayyaara (ft) <u>airplane, kite</u>	waahed (adj) <u>one; lëera_wáande one</u>
ṭayyeb (adj) <u>good, all right; halmúus_</u>	<u>pound; yóom_wáahed one day; waahédna</u>
<u>ṭáyyeb . This knife is sharp. 'abuu_</u>	<u>one of us</u>
<u>u'emma ṭaybiin ? Are his father and</u>	waasef (adj) <u>large, broad, extensive</u>
<u>mother alive? ṭáyyeb 'uum_lanrúum_</u>	<u>(having lots of room)</u>
<u>ba'a . O.K. let's go then.</u>	waafa (ft pl 'awaa'fi) <u>container: bag,</u>
ṭelef(a) <u>go up, get on (vehicle); go</u>	<u>box, basket, garment (pl = clothes)</u>
<u>out; turn out, become; amount to</u>	wadda <u>lead, take, send</u>
<u>'addées_byètlaš_šalèe ? How much</u>	walad (pl ulaad) <u>boy, child</u>
<u>does it amount to? ṭláaš_žžabal .</u>	walaww <u>of course, how could it be</u>
<u>Climb the mountain. ṭéleš_máso 'abu_</u>	<u>otherwise?!</u>
<u>rrékab . It turned out that he had</u>	walla (wallaahi) <u>by God, indeed,</u>
<u>the grippe.</u>	<u>certainly; 'ée_walla . Yes, indeed.</u>
ṭnašš (-ar + sg noun) <u>twelve</u>	walša (ft) <u>light (for smoking, for a</u>
ṭṣattah <u>lie down</u>	<u>fire)</u>
ṭṣawwar <u>be photographed, have portrait</u>	wara <u>in back; waraaha in back of it (f)</u>
<u>made; imagine</u>	wára? (coll sg wara'a pl reg or uraa?)
u'iyye (ft pl waa?) <u>uqiya (= 200 grams)</u>	<u>paper; sg wara'a piece of paper,</u>
u- (wə-) <u>and</u>	<u>ticket, Syrian pound</u>
wa'ʔaf <u>stop, stand</u>	wašfe (ft) <u>prescription</u>
wa't (pl 'aw'aat) <u>time; when; wa't_</u>	wašl (pl ušulaat) <u>receipt</u>
<u>bšúufak...when see you... máa_</u>	wašša <u>order (not command, but place</u>
<u>šando_wá't . He doesn't have time .</u>	<u>an order for something) šala</u>
bášd_l'aw'aat <u>sometimes</u>	wašak šala_wašak <u>on the point of,</u>
	<u>about to</u>

wazaara (ft) <u>ministry, cabinet</u>	xaater (pl xawaater) <u>sake, idea, wish</u>
wazan (-uuzen or -ezen) <u>weigh (tr or</u>	<u>xaatrak good-bye (said by one leaving)</u>
<u>intr) see also zaan(i)</u>	<u>xaatrak</u>
<u>or -ezen) weigh (tr or</u>	xabar ('axbaar) <u>piece of news;</u>
<u>wazzaf distribute</u>	<u>information</u>
wažad (-uuzed or -əzed) <u>find; táša_la-</u>	xafa(i) <u>hide, conceal</u>
<u>šandi btežšedni_belbèet . Come to</u>	xafiif (adj pl xfaaf) <u>light, fast</u>
<u>see me and you'll find me home.</u>	<u>'iido_xaafiife He's light-fingered.</u>
wažaf (pl 'awžaaš) <u>pain</u>	xaffaf <u>lighten, lessen</u>
wəšex (adj) <u>dirty</u>	xalaš(o) <u>finish</u>
ween (also feen) <u>where; laween (to)</u>	xalla <u>let, leave</u>
<u>where; mənween or mneen from where</u>	xallaš <u>finish (something)</u>
wella <u>or</u>	xamiis <u>Thursday</u>
weseš (-esaš or -uusaš) <u>have room for,</u>	xamse (ft) <u>five; xáms_leeráat five</u>
<u>contain</u>	<u>pounds; xáms_tiiyyám five days;</u>
wəšel (-uušal or -əšal) <u>arrive, get</u>	<u>xamsetna the five of us</u>
<u>(somewhere); wəšel_lahniik . He</u>	xamsiin (+ sg noun) <u>fifty</u>
<u>arrived there.</u>	xamštašš (-ar + sg noun) <u>fifteen</u>
wəšš (pl užuuš) <u>face, top</u>	xariif <u>fall, autumn</u>
wəžeš (-uuzəš or -əžəš) <u>pain, hurt</u>	xasal(e) <u>see šasal</u>
wilaaye (ft) <u>state</u>	xasiil <u>see šasiil</u>
xaaf(a) <u>be afraid of men; be afraid for,</u>	xatt (pl xtut) <u>line; xátt_ʔiid</u>
<u>worry about šala</u>	<u>handwriting</u>
xaaled (adj) <u>immortal (also pers name;</u>	xawaaža (m pl -aat) <u>gentleman,</u>
<u>xaaled, xaalde)</u>	<u>sir, Mr. (usually refers to a Christian</u>
xaarež (pl xawaarež) <u>toilet</u>	<u>in Western clothes)</u>
xaaržiyye (ft) <u>foreign affairs</u>	xayyaat (pl -iin) <u>tailor</u>

xdèewi_smaʔiil Khedive Ismail (name of ship)
 xeer (pl -aat) well-being, good;
 ɣabàah_lxéer Good morning. xéer_nšàalla Nothing wrong, I hope.
 bxeer . Well, fine.
 xəbz (coll) bread
 xədme (ft) service
 xədra (ft pl xədar xədraat, xədrawaat) vegetables
 xzaane (ft pl reg or xazaayen) cabinet, closet
 yaa or yáa...yáa either...or
 yaareet O that!, I wish...
 yalli (also halli, lli) which, who that; the one who, whoever, whatever; hàyy bənt ʔəltéllak_ʔànha .
 This is a girl I told you about.
 hàyy_lbənt yàlli_ʔəltéllak_ʔànha .
 This is the girl I told you about.
 yàlli_máʔo_lmaʔəari byédfaʔ .
 Whoever has the money will pay.
 yamiin right (opp. of left)

yatára possibly (adds element of doubt to question)
 yaa- sign of object (see note)
 yaa_oh (used in address) (see note)
 yemma or; yemma ... yemma either... or
 yoom (pl ʔiyyaam) day; lyoom today
 yóom_mnəlʔiyyám once upon a time
 yoomiyyan daily
 zaad(i) exceed, do or be in excess
 zaan(i) (see also wazan) weigh (usually tr)
 zaar(u) visit
 zaat (pl zawaat) self, same, personage
 zaayde (ft) appendix; máʔo_zzáayde he has appendicitis
 zamaan period of time, long time
 zeet (pl zyuut) oil
 zoože (ft) (also žooze ft) wife
 zaḃat(o) correct, make exact
 zḃoot_sáaʔtak .
 mazḃuut correct, exact
 zahar(a) seem, appear

zann(e) think
 zarf (pl zruuf(e)) envelope, nasab_
 zruuf according to the circumstances
 zǧiir (adj pl zǧaar) small, young
 žaab(i) bring
 žaaye (adj f=m pl žaayin; see ʔəža) coming, next
 žabal (pl žbaal) mountain
 žabar(e, o) force, fix, set (bones)
 mažbuur forced, obliged
 žamaʔ(a) join together fii- to, with
 žamb or žanab (pl žnaab) side ʔala_žanab aside
 žawaaz (pl -aat) passport
 žawwi (adj) atmospheric, air (as adjective)
 žebraan Gibran, Gabriel
 želd (coll sg želde ft; želd also sg, pl žluud) skin, leather;
 želde little bit of skin,
leather strap; xáms_želdaat five pieces of leather, five straps;
 xáms_žluud five skins
 žaldi (adj) of leather, leather (adj)
 žamʔa (ft pl žemaʔ) week, Friday
 žnuub south
 žooze see zoože
 žraabe (ft) stocking
 ʔaʔl (pl ʔʔuul) mind, reason
 ʔaadatan usually
 ʔaadi (adj) ordinary, usual
 ʔaafa(i) strengthen; mʔaafa_nšàalla (said to or about a sick person)
I hope you (he..) recover
 ʔaad(i) repeat
 ʔaal (inv adj) fine, excellent
 ʔaalee(f) Aley, resort town near Beirut, Lebanon
 ʔaasi (adj) stubborn, contrary;
 lʔaasi the Orontes river

ṣabba <u>fill</u>	ṣašara (ft) <u>ten</u> ; ṣášr_leeràat <u>ten pounds</u> ; ṣášr_tiyvàm <u>ten days</u> ;
ṣabd (pl ṣbiid) <u>slave, negro</u> ; (also in pers names: ṣabdállà, ṣabd_lmažfiid, etc.)	ṣašretna <u>the ten of us</u>
ṣafiif (adj) <u>pure, sound, chaste</u> (also pers name ṣafiif)	ṣaššiyye (ft) <u>housekeeper, cook</u>
ṣala (ṣaliyyi, ṣalee-; <u>before</u> l- <u>the</u> ṣa-) <u>on, at, to, for</u> ; ṣal'ard <u>on the ground</u> ; rāayeh_ṣassīnama? <u>Are you going to the movies?</u> ktiir_ṣaliyyi <u>too much for me</u> ; ṣaliyyi_məšwáar <u>I have a trip to take.</u>	ṣata (-aṣṭi imv ṣaṭi) <u>give</u>
ṣali (pers name) <u>Ali</u>	ṣayyaṭ <u>shout, yell</u>
ṣallam <u>mark, teach</u>	ṣaziim (adj pl ṣzaam, ṣəzama, ṣəzamaa?) <u>great, great man, leader</u>
ṣamaliyye (ft) <u>operation</u>	ṣaža?(e, o) <u>crowd</u> ; maṣžuu? <u>crowded</u>
ṣamm (pl ṣmúum) <u>father's brother; father-in-law</u>	ṣažale (ft) <u>hurry</u>
ṣan <u>from, than, about</u>	ṣeele ft (pl reg or ṣiyal) <u>family</u>
ṣánd <u>at the place of, near, in the possession, (have)</u> ; maa_ṣandi_šii . <u>I don't have anything.</u> ṭlēsna_lafándo . <u>We went up to his place.</u>	ṣeen (f ṣeenteen or ṣeeneen <u>two eyes</u> pl ṣyuun) <u>eye, spring (water)</u>
ṣarabi (adj pl ṣarab) <u>Arabic, Arabian</u>	ṣamar (pers name) <u>Omar</u>
ṣarraṭ <u>cause to know, introduce</u>	ṣamel (-aṣmel) <u>do, make</u>
ṣala <u>to</u>	ṣamr (pl ṣmaar) <u>age</u>
	ṣene, ṣana(i) <u>mean</u> ; yaṣni <u>he, it means; well, mm...</u>
	ṣenwaan (pl ṣanawiin) <u>address</u>
	ṣeref (-aṣref) <u>know</u>
	ṣešriin (+ sg noun) <u>twenty</u>
	ṣiyaade (ft) <u>clinic</u>
	ṣta'ad <u>believe</u>
	ṣtamad <u>decide</u>
	ṣtana <u>take care of fii-</u>

DINING OUT

Section A. Basic Sentences

1. Hello, Mahmoud. dine	ṣafiide yaa mammuud. tṣašša byetṣašša
2. How about having dinner together tonight? excel	šúu_rá'yak netṣašša_sáwa lléele ? mtaaz byemtaaz
3. Excellent idea. broil salad	fəkra_məmtáaze . šawa byəšwi šalata
4. I feel like some lahm mishwi and salad. mishwi maker	žáaye_ṣala_báali lámh_məšwi 'šalata . šawwa
5. How about going to Abu Ahmad's? accustom	šúu_rá'yak 'iza_mənrúuh_lafand 'abu_ 'ahmad_ššáwwa ? ṣawwad biṣawwed
6. I'm used to eating at the Asadiyye. be appealing level out, become moderate	'ana_mṣáwwad_ 'áakol 'and_ 'asadiyye . šahha bišahhi ṣtadal byəṣtádel
7. The food is appetizing and the service is good and the prices are reasonable. hungry	l'ákl_bišáhhi wəlxədmə_mníina wəl'asfáar_ məṣtádle . žuuṣaan
8. No kidding, I'm very hungry. Let's hurry up. list	walláahi_la'əhkiilak_đđégri 'ana_žuuṣaan_ ktiir . xalliina_nəstáṣžel . liista
9. Waiter, bring us the menu. appetizer, hors d'oeuvre	yaa_garšoon ṣaṭiina_lliista . m'abbel
10. What hors d'oeuvres do you serve? tabbouli olives chickpeas sesame oil	dáxlak sūu_btáṣṭu m'abláat ? tabbuule zeetuun hammos ṭhiine -

11. We serve tabbouli and olives and hommos. mnáŕti_tabbúule wzeetúun whəm̄moŕ bəthline .
12. And now what is your order? whálla? šúu_btə?mru_táaklu ?
kibbeh kábbe
13. Bring me a plate of kibbeh and tomato salad with lemon. žəbli_ŕahn_kábbe wšálatet_banadóora belleemúun .
mnazzaleh mnázzale
14. And for me a plate of eggplant mnazzaleh with rice. wʔəli_ŕahn mnazzált_bəetnžáan maŕ_rrəzz .
15. We don't have eggplant mnazzaleh. What else do you want? máa_ŕanna maazzált_bəetnžáan šúu_bətriid_ġəero ?
roll laff billeff
grapes ʔəneb
16. Then bring a plate of stuffed grape leaves. ʔala_hallóon žəbli_ŕahn_malfúuf wəra?_ʔəneb .
17. What sweets and fruit shall I bring you? wšúu_bətriidu_žəblkon həlu_wfawáaki ?
pears nžaaŕ
plums xoox
18. Bring us pears and plums, and what sweets do you have? žəblna_nžaaŕ_wxəox wšúu_fii_ŕandak həlu ?
(maŕmuul) maŕmuul
(knaafe) knaafe
(nammoora) nammoora
19. We have maŕmuul and knaafe and nammoora. fii_ŕanna_maŕmuul_wəknáafe wnammoora .
assort šakkal bišakkəl
20. Make an assorted plate just right. saawíilna_ŕahn_mšákkal_ʔala_kəefak .
cup fənžaan
sugar səkkar
medium wasat
21. Bring us two cups of coffee - medium sugar. žəblna_fənžaanəen_ʔəhwe səkkar_wasat .
22. Give us the check. ʔatfina_wəʔet_lərsəab .

- invitation ʔaziime or daŕwe
23. Thanks for this invitation. ʔana_mamnúunak ʔala_halfaziime .
24. Don't mention it. máa_fii_šii_mən_ʔimtak .
spend the evening səher byəŕŕ
25. Now where shall we go to spend the evening? whálla? lawéen_mənruun_lanəŕŕ ?
singing ġəne
26. Let's go to the Scheherezade and hear some Arabic singing. táŕa_lanruun ʔala_šahrazáad_lanəsmaŕ
sing ġanna biġanni
27. At the present time Marie Gibran is singing there. bəlwəʔt_lháader máari_žəbrəan ʔamma_
dance raʔaŕ byəʔoŕ
dancer (fem.) raʔaəŕa
28. And they have some new dancers from Egypt. wfii_raʔaəŕaət_žaaŕiin_žedad_mən_məŕr .
call naada binaadi or ŕarax byəŕrax
carriage driver ʔərbəži
29. Call the waiter to get us a carriage. náadi_ləlgarŕəon yaŕrəxlna_laʔərbəži .
30. Take us to the Scheherazade. xədna_lašahrazáad .
setting ŕəfra
31. Set the table for four. hətti_ŕəfra_laʔərbəŕa or hədri_ŕəfra_laʔərbəŕa .
guests dyuuf
dinner ʔaŕa
32. We are having guests for dinner. žaaŕiina_dyuuf_ʔalŕaŕa .
get out or up ʔaalaf
knives sakakiin
silver fədda
33. Get out the silver knives. ʔaalfiilna_ssakakiin_lfədda .
fork ŕooke
spoon maŕlaʔa or malŕaʔa

34. Give everyone two forks and two spoons.

glass

35. Put the glass to the right of the plate.

13.4

neṭt lakell waaned šookteen wmaflaʔteen .

kəbbaaye

neṭti lkəbbaaye ʔala yamiin ṣṣanən .

PART THREE

UNIT 14

RENTING A HOUSE

Section A. Basic Sentences

hello (on the phone)	ʔalo
sir, mister	ʔafandi
1. Hello. Good morning, Jamil.	ʔalo . ṣabaan lxeer žamiil afandi .
2. Good morning. What can I do for you, friend	ṣabaan nnuur . ʔamr ? sadiiʔ
3. I have an American friend who just came to the country.	fii ʔandi sadiiʔ ʔameerkaani ʔəža ždiid ʔalblaad .
4. He works at the Legation.	byəštəgəl bəlmufawwadiyye .
arrange for	dabbar
live (= dwell)	sakan(o)
5. And he asked me to get him a house to live in.	ukallafni dabberlo beet hatta yeskon fii .
6. Does he have a family?	ʔando ʔeele ?
last part of, end of	ʔaaxer
steamship	baaxra
7. Yes, but his family will arrive by ship at the end of the month.	naʔam, bass ʔeelto btuuşal bʔaaxer ššahr ʔalbaaxra .
precede	sabaʔ(ə)
8. He came on ahead ("he preceded her and came") by plane.	huwwe sabáʔa uʔəža bətṭayyaara
furnish	faraš(e,o)
9. Does he want the house to be furnished?	bəddo lbeet ikuun mafruuš ?
near	ʔariib

10. Yes, and to be near the Legation. ?eewa wikuun ?ariib ?almufawwaḍiyye.
11. How many rooms does he want in it? kám ?uuda biriid fii ?
 sleep noom
 parlor, living room ṣaaloona
 kitchen maṭbax
 utilities manaafef
12. About three or four bedrooms, a living room, kitchen, and utilities. ṣii tlatarba? ?uwaḍ n. om uṣaaloon
 balcony, terrace umatḃax umanaafef .
 balkoon or veranda
13. And if there would be balconies that would be preferable. u?iza kaan fii balkoonaat bikuun
 garden ?afdal .
 ṣneene
14. Would he like it to have a garden? biḥabb ikuun ?elo ṣneene ?
15. How much can he pay? ?addeṣ bye?der yedfa? ?
 reasonable ma?uul
16. Well, the rent isn't so important as long as it's reasonable. yaṣni l?eṣra maa bethamm ktiir bass
 tkuun ma?uule .
17. About two thousand a year would be fine. hawaali ?alfeen bəssene bikuun ṣaal .
 go around dawwar
 takram bdawwerlak webreddellak xabar
18. All right, I'll look around for you and let you know tomorrow morning. bakra ṣṣəbn .
 depend ttakal
 whiten bayyaḍ
19. I'll depend on you. battəkel ṣaleek . bayyaḍlana weṣna
 dependence ?addaamo .
 ?əttikaal

20. Depend on God. l?əttikaal ṣala ?alla
21. When you find a house, you and I will go and see it. bass tlaa?i lbeet mənruun ?ana wiyyaak
 lanṣuuf .
22. Good luck. So long. ṣala xeer nṣaalla xaṭrak .
 rent ?aṣaar
23. How much is the rent, Jamil? ?addeṣ l?aṣaar yaa ṣamiil afandi ?
 differ xtalaf
24. We won't disagree. As much as you say, sir. maa mnəxtəlef . ?add maa btə?mor
 hadrtak .
 owner, friend ṣaaneb
25. No. How much did the owners ask? la? ?addeṣ ṭalabu ṣhaabo ?
26. Oh, they've left it up to you. walla tarakuuha lahəmtak .
27. What do you say? ṣuu bət?uul ?ənte ?
 deceived, cheated maḡluub
 be treated unjustly nṣalam yenzəlem
28. I don't want you to be cheated and I don't want them to be treated badly. ?ana maa bəddi yaak tkuun maḡluub
 treated badly. wala hanne yenzəlm .
 side, edge ṭaraf
29. All right, what do you think would be suitable for both sides? ṭayyeb ṣuu bətlaa?i mnaaseb ləṭṭarafeen?
30. Two thousand five hundred would be fine for both sides. ?alfeen uxams miyye ṣaal ləṣṣihteen .
 taxes hraase
 be obligated tkaffal
 expenditures maṣruuf

31. They'll pay the taxes but you'll have to take care of the water and electricity.
32. The house really seems very nice.
33. But maybe two thousand five hundred is a little steep.
34. Two thousand.
- divide
35. We'll split the difference in half.
- payment amount
36. And the payment is half the amount in advance and the other half after six months.
37. Agreed. Goodbye.
- blessed
38. I hope you'll be happy.
- ("God willing it will be blessed.")
39. And if you need anything, we're always at your service.
40. Goodbye.
- honne byedfaŋu ləhraase bass ʔəntu
btətkaffalu bmaʃruuf lmayy
wəlkahraba .
- lhaʔiiʔa lbeet mniin mbayyen ʔalee .
- ʔayyeb ʃuu btədfaŋ ʔənte yaa xawaaʒa ?
- ʔalfeen .
- ʔasam(e, o)
- mneʔsem lfarʔ bənnəʃ .
- dafʔ
- mablaǧ
- wəddafʔ nəʃʃ lmablaǧ salaf wənnəʃʃ
ttaani baʔd sett təʃhor .
- ttafaʔna . xaatrak .
- mabruuk
- nʃaalla bikuun mabruuk .
- uʔiza ləzmak ʃii nəhna daayman
bəlʔədme .
- maŋ ssalaame .

- bank
1. I want to open an account with the bank.
- run
- saving
2. Do you want a checking ("running") account or a savings account?
3. What's the difference between the two?
- withdraw, pull
4. With a checking account you deposit and withdraw money...
5. As much as you want and whenever you want.
- appoint, make definite
6. With a savings account you deposit for a definite time.
7. And you can't withdraw before that time.
- interest
8. How much interest do you pay?
9. The checking account has no interest.
- limit
10. And the savings account up to a thousand pounds is 1 1/2%.
11. And over a thousand, 1%.
12. I want a checking account.
- bank or maʃraf
- beddi ʔəftaŋ hsaab bəlʔbank .
- ʒara (i)
- taʃmiid
- bəddak_hsaab_ʒaari wəlla hsaab
taʃmiid ?
- ʃuu lfarʔ been ttneen ?
- sahab (a)
- l_hsaab_lʒaari bəthətt_məʃaari
wəbtəshab_mənhon
- ʔadd_maa_betriid ^wlwaʔt_maa_betriid .
- ʔayyan
- wənsaab_ttaʃmiid bəthətt_məʃaari
lawaʔt_mʔayyan .
- ^wmmaa_btəʔder təshab_mənhon ʔabl_hadaak
lwaʔt .
- faayde
- ʔaddeəʃ_btədfaŋu faayde ?
- lənsaab_lʒaari maalo faayde .
- hadd
- wənsaab_ttaʃmiid_lahadd_lʔalf_leera
bəlmiyye_waahed ^wʔnəʃʃ .
- ^wʔfooʔ_lʔalf waahed_bəlmiyye .
- ʔana_beddi hsaab_ʒaari .

- | | |
|--|---|
| payment | daffa |
| 13. Very well. How much do you want to put as a first deposit? | tekram . ?addeeš_beddak_tneṭṭ ?awwal_daffa ? |
| 14. How much is the least I have to deposit? | ?addeeš ?a?all_šii laazem_nṭṭo ? |
| less | ?adna |
| 15. The minimum is 500 pounds. | lhadd_l?adna xams_miiṭ_leera . |
| statement | bayaan |
| 16. I want you to send me a statement of my account every month. | bnebb kelli_šahr tebṭatuuli_bayaan beṣsaabi . |
| remain stationary | sabat (o) |
| means | waasṭa |
| 17. And since I don't have a permanent address, send it care of the American Legation. | yla?anno maali_ṭenwaan_saabet bṭatuuli_yaa bwaaset(ə)ṭ lmfawwadiyye_l?amerkiyye . |
| traveling | meṭṣawwel |
| place | maṭraḥ |
| 18. I'm a traveling salesman and I'm in a different place every day. | ?ana taaṣer_meṭṣawwel_kelli_yoom bmaṭraḥ . |
| <hr/> | |
| 19. Good morning, Mr. Adel. | ṣabaḥ_lxeer ṭaadel_afandi . |
| 20. How are you? | kiif ṣaḥḥetkon ? |
| 21. Fine, thank you. | lḥamdu_lellaa . |
| 22. Well, it looks as though you're all very busy. | šuu mbayyen mašḡuuliin_ktiir . |
| scratch | ḥakk (ə) |
| 23. It's always like this. We don't have time to turn around ("to scratch our heads"). | walla daayman_ḥeek . maa_ṭanna wa?ṭ nḥekk_raasna . |

- | | |
|---|--|
| strength | ṭaafye |
| make powerful | ?awwa |
| 24. God give you strength and make you powerful. | ?alla_yaṭṭiikon_lṭaafye wi?awwiikon . |
| 25. God keep you. | ?alla_yeḥfaṣak wixalliik . |
| assistance | msaaṭade |
| matter, case | ?adiyye |
| 26. I need your assistance in a small matter. | beddi_msaaṭattak b?adiyye_ḡḡiire . |
| 27. With pleasure. | bkelli_mamnuuniyye . |
| intercede, mediate | twasṣaṭ |
| meet face to face, "see" | ?aabal |
| director | mudiiir |
| 28. Could you intercede for me so I could see the director now? | memken tetwasṣaṭli ?aabel_lmudiiir halla? ? |
| effort | ṣahd |
| 29. The director is quite busy, but I'll do my best. | walla_lmudiiir mašḡuul_ktiir bass_baṭmel_ṣahdi . |
| <hr/> | |
| become easy | ṭsahhal byeṭsahhal |
| 30. Everything's all right. Go in and see the director. | ṭsahhalet . ṭfaddal laṭand_lmudiiir . |
| excellence | saṭaade |
| 31. Good morning, sir ("your excellence the Bey"). | ṣabaḥ_lxeer_yaa_saṭaatt_lbeek . |
| 32. Welcome. | ?ahlan_wasahlan . |

project	mašruuf
produce	?antaž byentež
need	htaaz byentaaz
loan	qard
33. I have a production project and I need a loan.	fii_sandi mašruuf_muntež ^w /mantaaz laqard_maali .
34. Very well, what's your project?	ṭayyeb šuu_huwwe mašruufak ?
extract	staxraž byəstəxrež
pertaining to plants	nabaati
35. My project is the extraction of vegetable oils.	mašruufi ?əstəxraaz zyuut_nabaatiyye .
partner, associate	šriik
36. Are you undertaking this project alone or do you have associates?	?ənte ?aayem wandak bhalmašruuf wella mafak šeraka ?
association, company	šerke
blessing	barake
37. There's no blessing in association. (Proverb)	ššerke maa_fiiha barake .
38. How much do you need?	?addeš_btəntaaž ?
39. About LS 20,000.	hawaali lfašriin ?alf leera .
present, offer	?addam
guarantee	damaan
against, covering	liqaa?
40. What collateral do you have to offer the bank against this amount?	šuu_sandak damaanaat t?addəmha ləlbənk liqaa? halmablağ ?
share (of stock)	sahm
bond, note	sanad
entrust	wada? byuuda?

41. I have stocks and bonds with value of LS 5,000 I'll leave with you as surety.	fii_sandi ?ashom ṣsanadaat b?iimet xams_taalaaf leera buudašha_sandkon .
mortgage, pawn	rahan (o)
42. And I have a three-story house I'll mortgage to you.	^w /fandi_binaaye bətlet_ṭawaabe? bərhənha_sandkon kamaan .
43. But all that isn't enough.	bass haada kello maa_bikaffi .
jewelry	siiga
be worth	sewi (a)
44. All right. I also have my wife's jewelry worth about LS 5,000.	ṭayyeb ^w /fandi_kamaan šiiget_saa?elti bteswa šii_xams_taalaaf leera .
period of time	mədde
45. And how long do you want the loan to run?	ṭla?addeš bəddak_tkuun məddeṭ_lqard ?
depend	twa??af
condition, term	šart
46. It depends on your terms.	btətwə??af šala_šruuṭkon .
47. On loans of this kind we take 10%.	qruud_mən_hannoo? mnaaxod_šaleeha šašra_bəlmiiyye .
48. But that's a little high.	bass_haada ktiir_šwaaṭye .
regulation, law	qaanuun
49. That's our rule.	lqaanuun heek_šanna .
waiting period	məhle
consider, think over	fakkar
subject	mawduu?
50. Give me some time to think the subject over and I'll let you know.	šaṭiini_məhle fakker_bəlmawduu? wəbrəddelkon_xabar .

PART THREE

HOLIDAY

UNIT 17

SECTION A. BASIC SENTENCES

1. Good morning, momma.
safe
2. (Holiday greeting)
3. (reply)
certificate, diploma
4. I hope you'll have your certificate this time next year.
wish holiday greetings
holiday gift
5. Where's daddy so I can wish him happy holiday and get my gift?
pray
prayer
fitra (alms given at end of Ramadan)
6. Daddy went to pray the holiday prayer and pay the fitra.
cannon
end
7. A little while ago I heard the cannons that mark the end of the prayer.
8. And he hasn't come yet!
while
suit
9. And by the time you put on your new suit daddy will be here.

ṣabaan_lxéer máama .
saalem
káll_sène u'anti_sáalme .
w
u'ente_sáalem .
š(a)haade
nšáalla sséne_žžáaye mētl_hal'iyjáam
btáaxōd_ššaháade .
faayad
fiidiyye
féen_ḡaaba hatta_faayad_falée
w
u'axōd_fiidiiti ?
ṣalla
ṣalaa
feṭra
báaba raan_isállī_salaat_lfiid
w
u'yēdfaṣ_lfēṭra u'yēži .
w
madfaṣ
nihaaye
ʔabl_šwáyye sméṣt_lmadaafeṣ halli_
beddáll_fala_niháayt_ṣṣalaa .
w
u'húwwe_ṣṣáa máa_ʔəža !
labéen_maa
badle
w
u'labéen_maa talbes badltak žždiide
bikuun_ḡaaba weṣel .

- I0. Why does daddy pay fitra?
become happy
butcher
- I2. And you'll see how happy they get when the butcher comes.
slaughter
separate, distribute
yearling, ram
- I3. and he slaughters the ram and we distribute it to them.
holiday
rich
- I4. So that they eat like the rich during the holiday time.
dressing
eating
- I5. I finished dressing and eating and daddy isn't back yet.
holiday greetings (visit or card)
president or chairman
republic
- I6. Maybe he went with his friends to pay his respects to the president of the Republic.
custom, habit
- I7. Because it's the custom after the prayer to go greet the president.
"big shots"

lééš baaba-byēdfaṣ feṭra ?
fereh (a)
lanhaam
u'hállāʔ_bēṭṣuuf ʔaddeēš_byēframu
waʔt_byēži_llanhaam...
daban (a)
farraʔ
xaaruuf
wēbyēdhan_lxaaruuf umēnfārʔo
falēehon .
fiid
ḡani
lanatta_yáaklu_bʔiyyáam_lfiid
mētl_maa_byáaklu_lʔáḡniya
lebs
ʔakl
xaláṣṣt_lēbs_uʔakl uḡaaba_
lessa_máa_ʔəža .
mfaayade
raʔiis
žamhuriyye
yemken raan maṣ rēfaʔaato
lamfaayadet raʔiis žžamhuriyye .
faade
laʔanno_báṣd_ṣṣalaa lfáade_
biruunu_bifáaydu_rraʔiis
ʔakaaber

18. And the cabinet ministers
will be there and the
officers and big shots.
19. And then where will daddy
go?
break the fast
20. He'll come back home, wish
us holiday greetings and
break his fast with us.
cemetery
21. And after that he'll go and
visit the cemetery.
turn, go around
relative
22. And he'll come back and go
around calling on relatives
and friends.
23. And where am I going today?
breaking the fast, lunch
neighbor
24. After lunch Miriam will take
you with the neighbors'
children and take you around
the suk.
toy, game
fireworks
25. And you'll buy toys and
fireworks.
mount, ride
merry-go-round
ferris-wheel
- ^Wɸbikúun_hniik hee?et_lwazáara
welmwazzaffin wal?akáaber .
- ^Wɸbaɸdéen féen_bàaba_birúun ?
faṭar (a)
- byéržaf_ɸalbeet biɸáayed_ɸaléena
webyeṭtar_máina .
terbe
- ^Wɸbáɸdha birúun bizúur_ttérbe .
daar (u)
- wemyéržaf bidúur ɸal?araaybiin_
weṣṣháab .
?araayeb
- ^Wɸ?ána féen_beddi_rúun lyóom ?
ftuur
- baɸd leftúur máryam_btáaxdak maɸ_
^Wɸláad_žžiráan_ɸbeddawwarkon_bessúu? .
žaar
- leɸbe
- fetteeš or fattaaš
- webteštèru_léɸab_ɸfetteeš
- rekeb (a)
- duwweexa
- ?allaabe

26. And you'll ride on the
merry-go-round and the
ferris-wheel.
decorations
street
27. And you'll look at the
decorations and the people
on all the streets.
rugs
hang
28. And the rugs spread out
and hanging up on both
sides(of the street).
happy
laughing
29. And all the people happy
and laughing wishing one
another holiday greetings.
wake up, recover. guard
against
get lost
30. Be careful Ziyad not to let
go of Miriam's hand, so
you won't get lost.
world
crowd
31. Because it(the world) is
crowded and all the
children are celebrating.
foot or leg
crowd
- ^Wɸbterkabu bedduwweexa_ɸbel?allaabe .
ziine
- šaareɸ
- ^Wɸbtetfarražu ɸazziine_ɸɸannaas
bkell ššawaareɸ .
sežžaad
- ɸalla?
- wessežžaad mafruuš wemɸalla?
ɸaṭṭarafeen .
farhaan
- daṅkaan
- wennaas kəlha farhaane uṅkaane
ɸamma tɸaayed ɸala baɸdha .
sehi (a)
- daaɸ (i)
- ?eṣhak yaa ziyaad tetrok ?iid
maryam hatta maadɸdiis .
dənye or dənya
- ɸaž?a
- la?anno ddənye ɸaž?a ktiir
^Wɸkəl(1) lɸlaad mɸaydiin .
režl or ?əžr
- zahme

32. And it'll be so crowded
you won't be able to find
room to put your foot in.
- run rakad (o)
kiss baas (u)
33. Here comes your father, run
over and kiss his hand and
wish him happy holiday.
- Islam ?eslaam
34. There are two important
Moslem holidays:
- Ramadan ramadaan
Shawwal šawwaal
35. Lesser Bairam comes after
the last day of Ramadan,
i.e. on the first of Shawwal
- fall
Dhu'l Hijjah
36. Greater Bairam falls on the
tenth of Dhu'l Hijjah.
- Christian
37. There are three important
Christian holidays.
- birth miilaad
December kaanuun l'awwal
38. Christmas comes on the
twenty fifth of December.
- January kaanuun ttaani
39. New Year's Day comes on
the first of January.
- Easter fəʃh
date taariix
- ʔamaa bətlaaʔi maʔraħ tħətt rəʒlak
fii mən kətr zzaħme .
hayy ʔabuuk ʔəʒa . rkood buus
ʔiido ʔaayəd ʔalee .
ʔayaad l'ʔeslaam ləmhəmmin tneen .
ʔiido ʔəʒgiiir ʔaw ʔiido lfətr byənkəmm
baʔd ʔaaxer ramadaan yaʔni biʔawwal
šawwaal .
wəʔəf (byuuʔaf)
zəlħəʒʒe
ʔiido ləkbiir ʔaw ʔiido l'adħa
byuuʔaf bifašara zəlħəʒʒe .
masʔiini
ʔayaad lmasʔiiniyye ləmhəmmin tlaate .
ʔiido lmiilaad byəʒi bxamsaa
ʔəʒriin kaanuun l'awwal
ʔiido raas ssəne biʔiir bwaahəd
kaanuun ttaani .

40. Easter-this has no definite
date
- Jews
Passover
Sukkoth
41. The Jews have two important
holidays: Passover and
Sukkoth.
- January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December
- ʔiido ləkbiir ʔaw ʔiido lfəʃħ ʔħaada
maalo taariix mʔayyan .
yahuud
ʔtiir
mdalle
lyahuud ʔandħon ʔiideen mhəmmin :
ʔiido ləʔtiirwəlmədale .
kaanuun ttaani
šbaat
ʔaadaar
niisaan
ʔayyaar or nawwaar or maayez
hzeeraan
tammuz
ʔaab
ʔeeluul
tašriin l'awwal
tašriin ttaani
kaanuun l'awwal

THE ARAB RENAISSANCE

1. Introduction. mʔaddame .
2. There is a strong national renaissance in the Arab World today. fii lyoom bəlfəalam lʔarabi nahda qawmiyye ʔawiyye .
3. And this renaissance covers all the Arabic peoples, extending to all sects and classes. uhannahda haadi ʔaamme ššufuub lʔarabiyye kəlha, uməntəšre bkəll tʔawaayef wəttabaqaat .
4. The causes and origin of the renaissance. ʔasbaab nnahda unušuʔha .
5. This renaissance originated in the last century in Lebanon among certain poets, men of letters, and journalists. .. našʔet hannahda bəlgarn lmaadi bləbnaan been baʔd ššəfara wəlʔədaba wəššahaafiyyiin .
6. ... who began to restore and revivify ancient Arabic culture. halli badu yənʔšu uyənyu lʔadab lʔarabi lʔadiim .
7. And naturally the political conditions in the days of the Ottomans were a very powerful factor... utabʔan kaanet lʔawdaaf ssiyaasiyye bʔiyyaam lʔəsmaaniyyiin sabab ʔawi ktiir...
8. ... in arousing the Arab peoples to a demand for independence. litanmiis ššufuub lʔarabiyye liṭalab lʔəstəqlaal .
9. And on the other hand, foreign learned institutions were also nourishing this spirit. umnəlʔiha ttaanye, kaanet lmafahed lʔəlmiyye lʔažnabiyye kamaan ʔamma tğazzi halhamaas .
10. It is certain that these external reasons would not have created a national renaissance... mʔakkad ʔənnə ^{hal} ~~ka~~ ʔasbaab lxaaržiyye haadi maa kaanet btəxleʔ nahda qawmiyye...
11. ... if there had not been among the people a psychological readiness for the renaissance. laww maa kaan fii ʔand ššaʔb lʔəstəfdaad nnaʔsaani lənnuhuud .
12. The first stage - feeling lmarhale lʔuula lʔaatfiyye .
13. From the middle of the nineteenth century the Arabic renaissance spread and grew stronger. mən ʔawaaset lqarn ttaaseʔ ʔašar twassaʔet nnahda lʔarabiyye uʔuwyet .
14. Even defeats kept strengthening it. uhatta lʔənkisaaraat tʔawwiha .

15. Because it was gathering together the feelings of the Arabic peoples and making them one feeling... liʔannha kaanet təžmaʔ ʔawaatef, ššəfuub lʔarabiyye utəʔməlha ʔaatfe waande .
16. ... and creating a sense of brotherhood and cohesion which had not existed in the past. utəxleʔ šufuur bəlʔəxuwwe wəlʔərtibaat maa kaan mawžuud bəlmaadi .
17. The second stage - action lmarhale ttaanye lʔamaliyye .
18. But all these developments of feeling remained limited in their influence... laaken kəll hattatəwwuraat lʔaatfiyye haadi dallet manduude ktiir bitəʔsiirha
19. ...until the first world war broke out, hatta ʔəlʔet lharb lʔaalamiiyye, lʔawwalaaniyye .
20. and King Husei proceeded to bring together the Arab peoples and armies, uʔaam lmalek hseen užamaʔ ššufuub wəlžuyuuš lʔarabiyye .
21. and led them in a revolution against the Turks. uqaadha bisawra dədd lʔatraak .
22. But the results of the war were not very good. laaken nataayež lharb maa kaanet ktiir mniina .
23. Because the allies divided the Arabs into many countries. laʔanno lmulafa qassamu lʔarab laduwal ktiire .
24. And they placed a number of them under mandate or protectorate. uwadaʔu ʔadad mənha taht lʔəntidaab ʔaw lħimaaye .
25. And for this reason the second stage came to consist of attempts to free these countries and bring them together by action. ulahassabab ʔaaret lmarhale ttaanye kinaaye ʔan munaawalaat ʔamaliyye latahriir hadduwal užamʔha maʔ baʔd .
26. And from this the Arab League originated during the second World War. umən hoon našʔet lžaamʔa lʔarabiyye bməddet lharb lʔaalamiiyye ttaanye
27. The third stage - reform lmarhale ttaalte lʔəslaaniyye .
28. The third and final stage is the shift of the Arab peoples toward internal reforms. wəlmərhale ttaalte wəlʔaxiire hiyye tanawwol ššufuub lʔarabiyye namu lʔəslaanaat ddaaxliyye .

29. ... in social systems, political conditions, law, equality and justics,
 30. ... freedom of thought and opinion, abolition of sectarianism and feudalism, and in many other areas.
 31. And with this reform there came also a renewal in culture, art, science and thought.
 32. And the Arab peoples today feel that independence and unity will not benefit them at all if this fundamental reform is not accomplished with them.
 33. Conclusion
 34. And thus we see that the Arab national renaissance has three aims: independence, unification and internal reform.
- bennəzom l'əžtimaafiyye, bəl'awdaaf ssiyaasiyye, bəlmuquuq, bəlmusaawaat wəlfadaale,
 bhəriyyet lfəkr wərra'i, b'əlgaa' ṭtaa'ifiyye wəl 'igṭaafiyye
 umaŋ hal'əşlaan naša' kamaan taždiid bəssaqaafe, bəlfann wəlfəlm wəlfəkr .
 wəşşuuf l'arabiyye lyoom bəhəss 'ənno l'əstəqlaal wəlwənde maa bifiiduuha šii 'iza maa tamm maŋha hal'əşlaan l'asaasi haada .
 xaatme .
 uheek mənşuuf 'ənno nnaħda lqawmiyye l'arabiyye 'əlha ṭlət 'ahdaaf: l'əstəqlaal, wəttawhiid, wəl'əşlaan ddaaxli .

SPOKEN SYRIAN ARABIC

Supplementary Unit: Politics

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|
| present | 'addam |
| ambassador | safiir |
| credentials (letter of credence) | 'awraaq l'əstimaad |
1. Has the Ambassador presented his credentials? 'addam ssafiir 'awraaq 'əstimaado ?
2. Yes, he did today. naŋam . 'addamha lyoom .
- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| translation | taržame |
| life | hayaat |
| biography | taržamet hayaat |
3. What is his background? šuu taržamet hayaato ?
- | | |
|--------------------|-----------|
| study | daras (o) |
| university, league | žaamfa |
4. He studied at the American University of Beirut. daras bəlžaamfa l'amərkiyye fii beeruut .
- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| obtain | haŋal (a) |
| degree | daraže |
| science | fəlm |
| political science(s) | ləfluum ssiyaasiyye |
5. And received his doctor's degree in political science from the University of Chicago. uhaŋal ŋala daražet doktöör fəlfuum ssiyaasiyye mən žaamfet šiikaago .
- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| deputy, representative | naa'eb |
| House of Representatives, Chamber of Deputies | lmažles nniyaabi or mažles nnuwwaab |
6. And became a deputy in the Chamber of Deputies in the year such-and-such. ušaar naa'eb bəlmažles nniyaabi bsənt kaza .

appoint	ḡayyan
delegate	manduub
envoy	muṣtamad
extraordinary	fawq lḡaade or fooḡ lḡaade
minister	waziir
plenipotentiary	mfawwad
7. And was appointed Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary to London.	wetḡayyan manduub fawqlḡaade uwaziir mfawwad fii london .
number	ḡadad
official	mwazzaf
embassy	safaara
legation	mfawwadiyye
8. How many are on the staff of the Embassy (Legation)?	ṣuu ḡadad mwazzafiin ssafaara (lḡmfawwadiyye) ?
diplomatic service	ssḡlk ssiyyaasi
accountant	mḡaaseb
clerk	kaateb
9. There are ten in the Diplomatic Service, two accountants and four local clerks.	fii ḡaṣara beṣṣlk ssiyyaasi wḡmḡaasbeen uḡarbaḡ kettaab maḡalliyyiin .
rank	retbe
10. What are the ranks in the Diplomatic Service?	ṣuu retab ssḡlk ssiyyaasi ?
11. Counsellor	mustaṣaar
(First, Second, Third) Secretary	sḡkreteer (ḡawwal, taani, taalet)
Cultural Attache	mulḡaq ḡaḡaafi

Press Attache	mulḡaq ḡanaafi
Commercial Attache	mulḡaq tiḡaari
Military Attache	mulḡaq ḡaskari
Air Attache	mulḡaq leṡṡayaraan
Naval Attache	mulḡaq baḡri
Chairman	raḡiis
delegation	wafd
body	heeḡa
nation	ḡumme
assembly, council	maḡles
12. Who is the Chairman of your delegation to the General Assembly of the United Nations?	miin raḡiis wafdkon fii heeḡet (or maḡles) lḡumam lmḡttahide ?
13. Our Ambassador is the Chairman.	safiirna huwwe rraḡiis .
security	ḡamn
14. And at the same time he's our delegate on the Security Council.	ubinaḡs lwaḡt huwwe manduubna bimaḡles lḡamn .
form	ḡallaf
member	ḡḡdu
adviser	mustaṣaar
15. The delegation consists of four members and two Advisers.	lwafd byḡetḡallaf men ḡarbaḡ ḡaḡḡaaḡ umustaṣaareen .
16. How is the situation at home?	kiif lḡaale ḡanna belblaad ?
elect	ntaxab
17. The Chamber elected the President of the Republic and a new cabinet has been formed.	lmaḡles ntaxab raḡiis lḡamhuuriyye wetḡallafet wazaara ḡḡdiide .

18. Premier, Prime Minister

ra'iis lwazaara

or ra'iis lwuzaraa?

or ra'iismažles lwuzaraa?

Minister of Foreign Affairs

waziir lxaaržiyee

Minister of Finance

waziir lmaaliyye

Minister of Agriculture

waziir zziraaſa

Minister of National Economy

waziir l'eqtiſaad lwaſani

Minister of Public Instruction

waziir lmaſaaref

Minister of Defense

waziir ddifaaſ

Minister of Public Works

waziir l'aſſgaal lſaamme

Minister of Justice

waziir lſadliyye

waziir lhaqqaaniyye (in Egypt)

Minister of Supply

waziir l'iſaaſe or waziir ttamwiin

Minister of Health

waziir ſſaħħa

Minister of State

waziir ddawle

party (political)

ħezb

support

ʔayyad

19. What are the parties which supported the Cabinet?

ſuu l'axzaab yalli ʔayyadet lwazaara ?

coalition

ʔeʔtilaaf

20. It's a coalition cabinet.

haadi wazaara ʔtilaafiyye .

program

bernaamež

government

ħ(u)kuume

21. What is the program of the new government?

ſuu bernamež lħukuume žždiide ?

4

5

include

dđamman

improvement

taħsiin

economic

ʔeqtiſaadi

combat

kaafaħ

illiteracy

ʔummiyye

finding

ʔiižaad

solution

ħall

refugee

laažeʔ

22. Its program includes:

bye dđamman bernamežha :

The improvement of the agricultural and economical situation,

taħsiin lħaale zzira^ufiyye wəlʔeqtiſaadiyye,

combatting the illiteracy,

wəmkaafanet lʔummiyye,

and finding a solution to the refugee problem.

uʔiižaad ħall laqadiyyet llaažiʔiin .

party (social)

ħafle

consulate

qənſliyye or ʔənſliyye

general

ſaamm

23. What is the occasion for the Consulate General's party?

ſuu mnaasabet ħaflet lqənſliyye lſaamme ?

farewell

wadaaſ

consul

qənſol or ʔənſol

24. It's a farewell party in honor of the Consul.

ħaadi ħaflet wadaaſ ſala ſaraf lqənſol .

transfer

naʔal

promote

raffaſ

25. The Department has transferred him to Baghdad and promoted him to the rank of Consul General.

lxaaržiyee naʔalto labağdaad uraffaſeto laretbet qənſol ſaamm .

People's Party	həzb ššafb
Nationalist Party	lhəzb lwaṭani
Nationalist bloc	lkətle lwaṭaniyye
National Resurrection Party	həzb lbaʃθ lʃarabi
The Wafd Party	həzb lwafd
Liberal Party	həzb lʔanraar
Liberal Constitutional Party	həzb lʔanraar ddastuuriyyiin
Unionist Party	həzb lʔəttinaad
Communist Party	lhəzb ššuyuuʃi
Moslem Brotherhood	lʔəxwaan lmuslimiin
Arab League	lʒaamʃa lʃarabiyye

Supplementary Unit: In the Classroom

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. It's hot in here; let's open the window. | fii šoob hoon xalliina nəftan ššəbbaak . |
| 2. Can you see well or shall I turn on the light for you? | šaaʔef mniin wella ʔəftanlak ddaʔw ? |
| 3. Pull down the shade; the sun's in my eyes. | ʔərxi lberdaaye ššams ʒaʔye ʔala ʃyuuni . (or bəʃyuuni) |
| 4. Where is a good piece of chalk?
These are too small. | ween fii ṭabšuura mniina haššəʔaf ʒḡaar ktiiir . |
| 5. I forgot to bring my notebook. | nsiit ʒiib daftari . |
| 6. We need a map today to follow the discussion. | byəlzamna xariita lyoom lanəfham lmunaaqaše . |
| 7. Repeat the sentences after Mr. So-and-so. | ʃiid ʒʒəmal baʔd maa biʔuulhon ssayyec flaan . |
| 8. Don't look at ("read") the paper before you hear the sentence. | laa təʔra lwaraʔa ʔabl maa təsmaʃ lʒəmle . |
| 9. Say it faster so that it sounds natural. | ʔuulha bʃaʒale ʔaktar lateʒhar ṭabiiʃiyye . |
| 10. Memorize these new words by tomorrow. | hfaʒ halkəlmaat ʒʒdiide mən hoon labəkra . |
| 11. Double the "d". | šadded ddaal . |
| 12. That noun is feminine, so the adjective must be feminine too. | halʔəsm muʔannas wəṣṣifa ṭabaʔo laʔzen təʒi bəlmʔannas kamaan . |
| 13. We'll discuss that question later. | mnebnas halməʔale baʔdeen . |